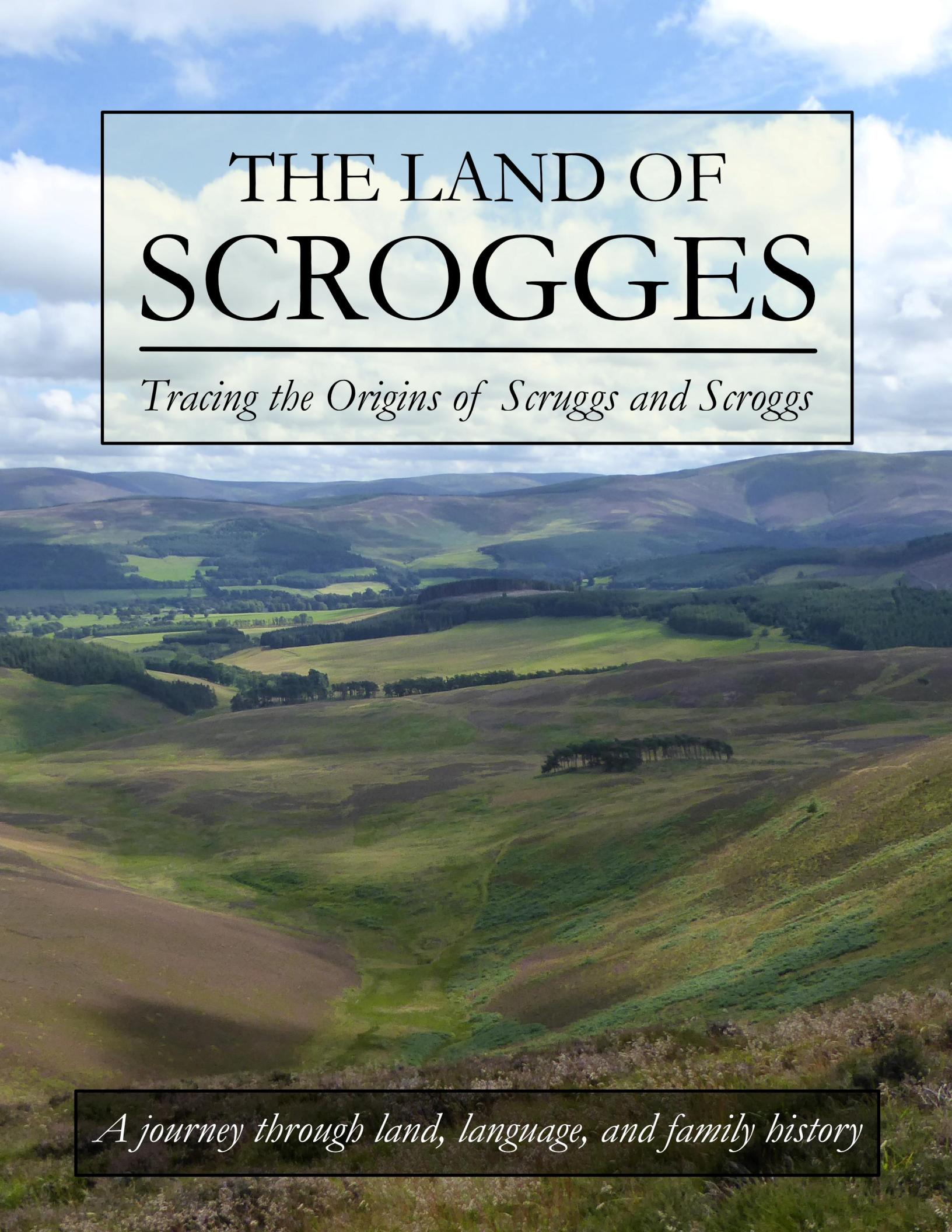


THE LAND OF SCROGGES

Tracing the Origins of Scruggs and Scroggs

A journey through land, language, and family history

THE LAND OF
SCROGGES

Tracing the Origins of Scruggs and Scroggs

BY BRANDON TAYLOR SCRUGGS

Text © 2026 by Brandon Taylor Scruggs

Except where otherwise noted, the **text** of this work is hereby freely licensed under the

Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International license

CC BY-SA 4.0 – See: https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/deed.en

You are free:

- **To share** – to copy, distribute, and transmit the **text** of the work
- **To remix** – to adapt the **text** of the work

Under the following conditions:

- **Attribution** – You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.
- **Share alike** – If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same or comparable license as the original.

This Creative Commons license applies to the **text** of this work **only** and does ***not*** apply to photographs, maps, illustrations, aerial imagery, or other third-party materials unless specifically stated otherwise.

Photos and Images: used here under a variety of permissions, licenses, and public-domain sources.

Many of the images that appear in this book are freely available for use, either through their own Creative Commons license or because they are in the Public Domain.

However, please note that some of the photos in this book appear by express permission of the photographer and are ***not*** freely available through a Creative Commons license.

Also, certain maps, aerial imagery, and geospatial visualizations were reproduced here pursuant to the terms and conditions of their respective providers (including Google Earth, Airbus & other satellite data providers, the James Hutton Institute, the Scottish Remote Sensing Portal, and others). These are ***not*** freely available for use without meeting their terms and conditions for use or acquiring a separate license.

See Image Attributions section towards the end for information on each photo / image.

Product names, trademarks, and registered trademarks mentioned in this work remain the property of their respective owners.

Cover Photograph:

"Huskie Rig and Pear Burn, Penvalla" by photographer Alan O'Dowd (cropped by the Author).

See Image Attributions section for more information.

DEDICATION

To my parents, grandparents, and all my ancestors.

To my daughters and all my descendants.

To everyone who shares the surname Scruggs or Scroggs or a related surname,

whether by birth, biology, adoption, marriage, partnership, or shared interest.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction 1

Part 1: What on Earth Are Scrogs? 4

- Where Can We Find Scrogs Today? 5
- What Kind of Plants Are in the Scrogs? 8
- What Kind of Animals Are in the Scrogs? 21
- The Hidden Work of the Scrogs 28
- How Did Humans & Farm Animals View Scrogs? 30
- How Do Scrogs Reflect Scottish Border History? 32
- What Qualities Do Scrogs Have? 34

Part 2 (Intermission): Scrogs in Scottish Song, Poetry, and Story 37

Part 3: The Land of Scrogges 45

- Where Does Our Surname Come From? 45
- When First We See the Land of Scrogges 46
- A Landscape of Deep Time 61
- The Four Charters 68
- The Story Told by the Four Charters 75
  - Surname Origin Theory 1: Land-First 81
  - Surname Origin Theory 2: Family-First 87
- Life on the Land of Scrogges 92
- Enduring Mysteries 118
- Beyond the Land of Scrogges 126

Part 4: The Many Faces of British Scrogs 128

- Scroggs Wood, Bridge, Farm, & Lane (near Staveley, Cumbria) 133
- Scroggs Wood & Lane (Helsington/Kendal, Cumbria) 144
- Scrogg House Farm (near Sedbergh, Cumbria) 148
- Scroggs Wood (near Burnley, Lancashire) 155
- Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs (near Raywell in the East Riding of Yorkshire) 161
- Scrog Wood & Scrogg House Farm (near Constable Burton, North Yorkshire) 169
- Long Tongue Scrog Lane (near Kirkheaton, West Yorkshire) 172

The Scrog (near Castleside, County Durham) 181

Part 5: Scroggs Around the World 195

Part 6: Family History in the Age of AI 202

Part 7: Acknowledgements 213

Image Attributions 217

Appendix:

The Four Charters 263

GPS Coordinates (and notes) 268

The "Lost" Footnotes 276

KEY MAPS AND FIGURES

Distribution of Scrog Place Names in Northern Britain 8

Distribution of Scrog Place Names in England 132

Figure 1: Map of the Land of Scrogges 54

INSET FEATURES

Scrog Flora (Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, Bramble, Gorse, Juniper, Heather, Crab Apple).... 10-14, 17-18, 20

Scrog Fauna (Dunnock, Yellowhammer, Linnet, Whitethroat) 23-26

Gilnockie Tower 33

Preservation of Folk Songs 40

Jock o'Braidislee & the Scruggs Coat of Arms 42

Morton Castle 43

The Lyne Water 47

Hopes and Denes and Burns 48

The Land of Scrogges on the Map (1654 Blaeu Atlas) 49

Gilmimenerdene 51

Roy Military Survey 57

Standing Stones 61

Hamildean Hill 62

Roman Fort at Lyne 64

Lyne Kirk 65
How Did Robert de Scrogges Die? 70
Dating the Charters 72
Glasgow Cathedral 76
Soil Maps 83-84
Sigurd in Mythology 88
Lyne Mill 94
Lynesmill Bridge 95
Drochil Castle 97
The House of Scrogges 98
If These Walls Could Talk 101
Larch Wood Square & the Birches of Lyne 107
Scotland's Birch Trees 108
The Feast of Saint Martin 111
The Knights Templar in Scotland 112
Kelso Abbey 116
"View of Scrogg's Farm, Staveley" by William Taylor Longmire 138
What is a Wood Pasture? 182
Ruins of West Goldhill 188

SELECTED PHOTO SPREADS

Valley of the Lyne Water 3
Castle Hill Scrogs 4
Dunstanburgh Castle with Gorse in Bloom 15
Heather in the Highlands 19
Badger in Blooming Gorse 22
Tweed Valley 27
Woodland Edge near Ellon in Aberdeenshire, Scotland 36
Morton Castle 37
Lyne Water at Hamildean 44
Hagging Hope 53

Lyne Water Valley with the Land of Scrogges....59
Deep Hope & Wide Hope Shank....60
Lyne Roman Fort....66
Standing Stones & Sheriff Muir....67
Hamildean Hill from the Land of Scrogges....69
Riding Hill....78
White Meldon....90-91, 213
Viking Longhouse (Exterior & Interior)....99-100
Lyne Kirk....113-115, 211
Scrog Hill (near Stuartfield in Aberdeenshire)....121-122
Saint Machar's Cathedral in Old Aberdeen....122
Black Meldon....63, 124-126
Scrogs Wood (Sand Hutton)....127
Dunstanburgh Dawn....128
The River Kent running through Kendal....131
Scroggs Wood (Staveley)....133-134
Scroggs Bridge (Staveley)....135-136
Scroggs Farm (Staveley)....139
Scroggs Lane (Staveley)....141-142
Staveley (with Reston Scar, Hugill Fell, Scroggs Farm, Scroggs Wood)....143
Scroggs Wood Sunset (Helsington / Kendal)....146
The Howgills....150-154
Scroggs Wood (Burnley)....156-157, 159-160
The River Brun & River Don....158
Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs....163-168
Scrog Wood (Constable Burton)....169-170
Views around Long Tongue Scrog Lane....176, 179-180
The Scrog (near Castleside)....181, 183-185, 194
Areas around The Scrog (near Castleside)....189-192
Scroggs Hill (New Zealand)....195
Brighton with Brighton Road & Scroggs Hill Road (New Zealand)....199

Dunedin & Saddle Hill (New Zealand)....200
Otago Peninsula (New Zealand)....201
Lynesmill Bridge....210

INTRODUCTION

The Origin Story for Scruggs and Scroggs

A mystery lies at the heart of this story: where did the surnames Scruggs, Scroggs, and all their spelling variants come from? The mystery unfolds through a landscape – a specific place – and the people who lived there.

Scruggs, **Scroggs**, **Scrogges**, and some similar surnames probably share the same origin. Surname spellings did not stabilize in Britain & America until the mid to late 1800s – driven by increased literacy rates, mandatory education, and record-keeping standardization.[1]

In our case, the Scrugges / Scruggs spelling first appeared in southeast England around 1601-1605. That time frame coincides with a family feud lawsuit, ***Scrugges v. Scrogges***, that started in Bedfordshire and reached the London Court of Star Chamber. The Scruggs Family Association (SFA) has discussed that lawsuit in *Selections from 'Searching for Scruggs' 1982-2012*.[2]

How does Scruggs relate to the Scroggs and Scrogges surnames? We do not really know with any certainty whether the Scruggs spelling variation emerged *because* of the family feud in the *Scrugges v. Scrogges* lawsuit or if the timing was just coincidental. We do know that Scrogges, Scroggs, and even Skrogges and Skogges appear in historical records from the late 1100s to the 1400s. And we know that Scrugges and Scruggs emerged later, in the early 1600s, *probably* as a spelling variant of earlier forms.

With that in mind, the sections that follow will explore the common origin of these surnames. What do they mean? Where did they come from?

(1) **COAT OF ARMS** attributed to the **Scroggs** family of **Hertfordshire (Modernized).**

In **Part 1: What on Earth are Scrogs?**, we will unlock the Scots language dictionary definition of "scrogs" to help us understand the nature of scrogs.

What world waits for us behind our surname? Scrogs are not some single thing. Rather, the scrogs represent a living spectrum: an entire ecosystem of different plants, including shrubs and small trees, that make up the wild pioneers of the woodlands. They host a multitude of animals and songbirds. And as an ecosystem, they fit snugly between other ecosystems like forests and farmland.

---

[1] *See, e.g.,* "Surname Spelling in Early America" (2023) by John Barrett Robb, available at https://www.johnbrobb.com/Content/SurnameSpellingInEarlyAmerica.pdf ; "Genealogical Problems: Surname Spellings" (2009) on Tracing Ancestors In The UK, available at https://tracingancestors-uk.com/indexes/genealogical-problems-surname-spellings

[2] *Selections from 'Searching for Scruggs' 1982-2012* (2012), edited by C. Eugene Scruggs and Mary Beth Scruggs Rephlo. The sections at pages 17-38 discuss the *Scrugges v. Scrogges* lawsuit.

Then, focus shifts from just understanding scrogs intellectually to bringing these scrogs to life through all our senses – visually through photography, but also using words and common connections to fully engage our other senses: hearing, smell, and even taste.

This lays the foundation for understanding the following sections. With that groundwork in place, we begin to build more layers.

In **Part 2 (Intermission): Scrogs in Scottish Song, Poetry, and Story**, Scottish artists and writers will lead us through the landscape of scrogs in their poems, stories, and songs. Their art will breathe life into the previous section. From there, we move into the core of this inquiry.

(2) **COAT OF ARMS** attributed to the **Scrugges** and **Scroggs** family of **Bedfordshire (Modernized).**

Part 3: The Land of Scrogges goes to the *heart of this investigation*. Here, we turn to the Land of Scrogges and use it as a springboard to uncover its people, its history, and the likely origins of our surname.

Four surviving charters in medieval Latin for this Land of Scrogges will unlock the key pieces of the puzzle. They will help us reconstruct the exact property lines of the Land of Scrogges with high confidence. Then, we can literally stand in the shoes of the people who lived there and explore the land and its history visually through photographs, maps, satellite images, and even LiDAR topography and soil maps.

From there, the investigation turns to evaluating theories of where our surname of Scruggs or Scroggs may have come from.

Did the family get its surname from the land?

Or did the land get its name from the family's surname?

We will also explore what life was like for the de Scrogges family living on the land and appearing in the charters. We will take a tour of their farm, the crops they grew, the mill they used, the house where they lived, and the animals they raised. We will see how the seasons shaped their lives. We will search the land for the woods that once supported them.

We will also learn about how they fit into the world around them. The charters reveal a system of feudal obligations, authority, and cooperation tying the de Scrogges family together with the local lords: the de Lyne family. The charters also show us how both families related to the Church that played a dominant role in medieval life.

Our journey through the Land of Scrogges then reaches its end. From this summit viewpoint, we begin to reflect on our journey. What mysteries have we solved? What mysteries remain for us to explore?

In **Part 4: The Many Faces of British Scrogs**, we journey beyond the medieval Scottish Borders and explore living scrog landscapes across Britain where surviving "Scrog" place-names still remain. From across Yorkshire to Lancashire, Cumbria, County Durham, and Northumberland, we find scrogs flourishing in between wild nature and human development: riverbanks, lanesides, woodland edges, and even an ancient wood pasture. Along the way, modern ecology, photography, and Woodland Trust management records help reveal just how diverse and adaptable these landscapes truly are – a rich and varied ecological world hiding behind a single old word.

Part 5: Scroggs Around the World will follow "scrogs" across oceans and generations. The story of scrogs did not end in Scotland or England. As the migrants from England and Scotland spread across the globe, they carried with them more than just their surnames and traditions. These settlers carried old landscape words into new lands where rough hillsides, scrub country, and pastoral frontiers still felt strangely familiar. They left traces of scrogs from Britain to the hills of New Zealand.

Part 6: Family History in the Age of AI lays out the methodology used for the research here. Modern Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Large Language Models (LLMs) supercharged this research. In this section, I discuss the promise, perils, and lessons learned from using AI and LLMs for this project.

And finally, **Part 7: Acknowledgements – Standing on the Shoulders of Giants** gives thanks and credit to some of the key people and technology that made this project possible.

The **Image Attributions** section lists each owner, photographer, artist, or creator for all of the images that appear in this book, along with details relevant to copyrights, licensing, and permissions. The Image Attributions section lists this information by the number that leads the caption title for all of the images. Some of the photographers' notes and the Author's notes also appear here.

The **Appendix** at the end features: 1) a copy of the four **charters** from Medieval Scotland; and 2) the **GPS coordinates** for all the Scrog place names in this book (including a few not discussed or pictured in the main text), with notes on some of the sites.

What begins as a simple question about our shared surname becomes a journey: through land, language, and the lives of those who came before. As we follow in their footsteps, the past comes into clearer view – not as something distant, but as something we can see, understand, and share. I invite you to walk that path with me.

(3) VALLEY OF THE LYNE WATER. Southward view of the Lyne Water Valley from near Newlands and the Romanno Bridge, on the way to the town of Peebles, Scotland. Drochil Castle can be seen in the clump of trees near the center. The Land of Scrogges lies off in the distance beyond the background hills, about 2 miles (3 km) past Drochil Castle.

WHAT ON EARTH ARE SCROGS?

The Wild Woodland Pioneers of Scotland & Northern England

(4) CASTLE SCROGS ON THE EAST SIDE OF CASTLE HILL, NORTH OF LANGHOLM, SCOTLAND. A thick mix of shrubs and small trees called the Castle (Hill) Scrogs run in a dark band along the hillside in the center of this photo.

> "What's in a name? That which we call a rose
>
> By any other name would smell as sweet."
>
> – Juliet Capulet,
>
> from Act II, Scene 2 of *Romeo and Juliet*
>
> by William Shakespeare

What's in Our Surname?

Locked behind our distinctive surname lies a wild world bursting with life, beauty, and meaning. For most of my life, I never understood or appreciated the rich history and vivid meaning of my own last name. But once I began to open that lock, I found a much deeper connection to family, history, the Earth, and life itself than I had ever imagined. Here, I want to share a few of the keys that can unlock that world for all of us.

Our first lock: a very dry dictionary definition. According to the *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue* (*DOST*), the noun **scrog(g)** or **skrog(g)** means "a piece of land covered with scrub or brushwood, a thicket; a bush."[3] In the plural, **scrog(g)s** refers to "an area of brushwood or scrub, thickets of bushes and small trees," or to brushwood cut or gathered for fuel.

Like many dictionary entries, this one manages to translate the word accurately without really breathing any life into it. The goal of this section is to open that lock – to transform a dry linguistic definition into something gloriously alive, something that connects us to family, landscape, and the living world around us.

A following section will focus on opening the second lock: a cluster of four charters in medieval Latin.[4] The same *DOST* entry notes that the word **scrog(g)** first appeared in place-names. It cites a charter dated around 1208 confirming a land grant to Simon, son of Robert de Scrogges, for the **terram de Scrogges** – the land of Scrogges – as the earliest known recorded appearance of the word. This *DOST* entry marks the genesis of both the word scrogs and the surname Scrogges.

From the very beginning, the history of our surname and this old Scots word weave together like a vine climbing a tree branch. But which is the vine and which is the branch? Did the landscape give birth to the surname? Or did the family impart its pre-existing surname onto the landscape?

Where Can We Find Scrogs Today?

Several places in Scotland and northern England still bear "Scrogs" as part of their name today. These places help visually illuminate the meaning of an old Scottish word that has largely faded from our memory in modern America. These Scrogs place names persist mostly in northern Britain.

The **Land of Scrogges** (Latin: "Terra de Scrogges"), including **Scrogs Field**, **Scrog Hope**, and **Scrog Dene**, gently rises from the Lyne Water about 4-5 miles (5-8 km) west of the town of Peebles in historic county Peebleshire (which is now the Scottish Borders council area), in southern Scotland. Robert de Scrogges and his son Simon de Scrogges once held this land in the late 1100s and early 1200s.[5] We will discuss this land extensively in **Part 3: The Land of Scrogges** that follows this section and the next.

(5) LOOKING DOWN THE LYNE WATER TOWARDS THE LAND OF SCROGGES. Near Drochil Castle, a southeasterly view of sheep grazing along the Lyne Water as the river flows towards the Land of Scrogges, which lies just beyond the hills about 2 miles (3k) away.

The **Castle Scrogs** (pictured on the previous page) rest just north of Langholm in Dumfries and Galloway, southwestern Scotland.[6] The Castle Scrogs grow along the east side of Castle Hill. Any literal castle or fortress that may have once stood on Castle Hill has long since faded away.

---

[3] "Scrog," *A Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/scrogg

[4] ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis****: Munimenta Ecclesie Metropolitane Glasguensis a Sede Restaurata Seculo Ineunte XII Ad Reformatam Religionem* (1843) (hereinafter abbreviated to "***REG***" or "the ***REG***"), compiled and edited by Cosmo Nelson Innes, at pages 73-77, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft

[5] ***REG***, see n.2, at pages 73-77.

[6] "Castle Scrogs" on Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/179373

The **Scrogs of Drumruck** grow near Gatehouse of Fleet in Dumfries and Galloway, southwestern Scotland.[7] (**See photo: The Scrogs of Drumruck**, below.) These scrogs form a dense strip along the east side of the Rig (Ridge) of Drumruck near the Little Water of Fleet and Drumruck Farm.

(6) THE SCROGS OF DRUMRUCK IN DUMFRIES AND GALLOWAY, SCOTLAND. The woodland band of shrubs and small trees pictured here form the Scrogs of Drumruck on the edge of the field that borders this hillside ridge.

Scroghill (Scrog Hill) lies just about a mile (1-2 km) west of Stuartfield in Aberdeenshire, northeast Scotland.[8] (**See photo: Scrog Hill, Aberdeenshire**, below.) A dark green, woodsy patch of scrogs grows on the southeast side of this low hill.

Interestingly, this site is only about 20 miles (30 km) north of Aberdeen, home to a prominent de Scroggs family documented in the civic records from Aberdeen in the late 1300s into the 1400s.[9]

(7) SCROG HILL IN ABERDEENSHIRE, SCOTLAND. Scrog Hill sits in the background center and center-left of this picture, past the field. Peak elevation of Scrog Hill: about 133 m above sea level.

[7] "Scrogs of Drumruck" on Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/177108

[8] "Scroghill" (in Aberdeenshire) on Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/266682 ; *see also* "Gazatteer of British Place Names: Scrog Hill, Aberdeenshire", at https://gazetteer.org.uk/place/Scrog_Hill,_Aberdeenshire_230919

[9] *Memorials of the Aldermen, Provosts, and Lord Provosts of Aberdeen, 1272-1895* (1897) by Alexander M. Munro, available online at the Internet Archive at https://archive.org/details/memorialsofalder00munr

Another **Scrog Hill** sits near **Dunstanburgh Castle** just north of the village of Craster on the coast of Northumberland in northeastern England. (**See photos: Scrog Hill, Dunstanburgh Castle**, below.) A wide cluster of scrogs runs along the sides of this hill, facing the winds from the North Sea.

(8) SCROG HILL NEAR DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE IN COASTAL NORTHUMBERLAND, ENGLAND. The scrogs appear as the crown of mixed shrubs and low trees towards the top of the hillside.

(9) SCROG HILL, FROM DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE. Scrog Hill appears in the center of this photo, framed by the crumbling ruins of the walls near John of Gaunt's Gatehouse at Dunstanburgh Castle.

DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE

(10) THE RUINS OF DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE.

Perched above a windswept coastal grassland, the castle ruins overlook terrain shaped as much by wind and grazing sheep as by human hands.

Several other scrog place names appear throughout northern England, including:

- **Scroggs Bridge, Farm, Wood, & Lane** near the village of **Staveley** in Cumbria;
- **Scroggs Wood & Lane** on the south side of Helsington and **Kendal** in Cumbria;
- **Scrogg House Farm** near **Sedbergh** in Cumbria;
- another **Scroggs Wood** further south, near the town of **Burnley** in Lancashire;
- **Wauldby Scrogs** near the hamlet of Raywell in the East Riding of Yorkshire;
- **Scrog Wood** and another **Scrogg House Farm** near the village of Constable Burton in North Yorkshire;
- **Long Tongue Scrog Lane** on the east side of the village Kirkheaton in West Yorkshire; and
- **The Scrog** near Castleside in County Durham.

The **Many Faces of British Scrogs** section towards the end of the book will delve into each of these in more detail, with site photography to enrich the experience.

(11) RELIEF LOCATION MAP OF SCOTLAND IN THE UNITED KINGDOM (with annotations by the Author). Map showing "Scrog" place names in Scotland and part of northern England. The map is illustrative, not exhaustive. Several Scrog place names do not appear on this map due to space constraints. (A map showing the "Scrog" place names in England appears in the section entitled "The Many Faces of British Scrogs" in a later section of this book.).

Together, these places (marked on the **Map** above) paint the landscape of scrogs: a thick band of mixed shrubs and small trees, often found on a hillside or a border between woodland and pasture in Scotland or northern England. These images show us that scrogs are not a singular species of plant, but a diverse collection of plants working together to form scrogs.

What Kind of Plants Are in the Scrogs?

The individual species of plants that make up scrogs depends on the location and key factors like soil properties, climate aspects (rain, wind, sunlight), and nearby human and animal activities.

In the rolling hills of the **Scottish Borders** area, scrogs (aka scrub woodland) typically include

Hawthorn, **Blackthorn**, **Hazel**, **Bramble**, **Elder**, and **Gorse**.[10] (See **insets**: Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, Bramble, Gorse, following pages). The *Scottish National Dictionary* (*SND*) specifically calls out the **Hawthorn** as a frequent component of scrogs.[11]

These areas of scrogs in the Scottish Borders may also include some small **Rowan** and **Birch** trees.[12] Notably, the *SND* definition of "scrogs" cites some examples that specifically connect scrogs with Birch and Rowan trees. In one example, author John Buchan wrote about "a scrag of rowan like a forest tree" in his novel *Witch Wood* (1927), set in a fictional village in the Scottish Borders region.[13]

(12) ROWAN TREE (*SORBUS AUCUPARIA*). Also called "Mountain Ash" or the "Witch's Tree," Rowan trees are common throughout Scotland.

(13) SILVER BIRCH (*BETULA PENDULA*).

(14) ROWAN BERRIES IN LATE AUGUST.

In another example, dated 1948 from historic Argyll county in western Scotland, the writer uses the phrase "Down among the scrog of birch."

(15) SILVER BIRCH (*BETULA PENDULA*), common throughout Scotland, especially in central and eastern Scotland.

[10] "Woodland types: scrub" (2015) on Woodlands.co.uk, available at https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/woodland-types-scrub/

[11] "Scrog," *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

[12] "Scottish Borders UPLAND CLEUCH and SCRUB WOODLAND Habitat Action Plan," by Scottish Borders Council, available at https://www.scotborders.gov.uk/downloads/download/423/habitat-action-plans (scroll down to "Upland cleuch and scrub woodland" and download the pdf version).

[13] "Scrog" on the *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

HAWTHORN

(16) COMMON HAWTHORN. A Hawthorn tree blooming in May, earning its nickname: the "May tree."

Hawthorn (*Crataegus monogyna*) grows as a deciduous shrub or small tree, reaching up to 30 feet (10 m) high.[14] Hawthorn grows throughout the woodland edges and scrubland of southern Scotland and northern England.[15]

Younger Hawthorn stems have roughly 1/2-inch **thorns**.

(17) HAWS: the dry, berry-like fruit of the Hawthorn tree.

The Hawthorn produces dry, berry-like red **fruit** called **"haws"** for about 100 days in Fall.[16] Hawthorn berries (haws) have a tart and slightly sweet flavor.[17]

The thorns and "haw" berries give the tree its name: Haw-thorn.

In late Spring (May-June), Hawthorn **blooms** with flowers of white (pictured), although some have pink blooms.[18] Hawthorn blossoms emit a potent, bitterly-sweet aroma.[19]

Hawthorn has multiple uses for humans. Its young leaves can be eaten in a salad. The **wood** from Hawthorns makes excellent firewood; it produces good heat and little smoke. Hawthorns also provide natural fencing: their thick branches and thorns make them effectively human and livestock-proof.[20]

---

[14] "Crataegus monogyna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crataegus_monogyna

[15] "Hawthorn (*Crataegus monogyna*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/british-trees/a-z-of-british-trees/hawthorn/

[16] "Crataegus monogyna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crataegus_monogyna

[17] "Hawthorn: a Little-Known Super Fruit" (2021), available at https://www.bravotea.com/hawthorn-a-little-known-super-fruit/

[18] "Crataegus monogyna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crataegus_monogyna

[19] "The Mysteries of Common Hawthorn: Everything from luck and magic to sexy smell and death" (2021) by Ance Bogdanova-Jatniece on Medium, available at https://medium.com/weeds-wildflowers/the-mysteries-of-common-hawthorn-2b80f11df7ba

BLACKTHORN

(18) ROW OF BLACKTHORN TREES.

(19) SLOE BERRIES ON A BLACKTHORN BRANCH.

Blackthorn (*Prunus spinosa*), also called **sloe**, develops into a hardy, deciduous shrub or small tree up to about 16 feet (5 m) tall.[21] Blackthorn grows in hedgerows, woodland edges, and scrubland areas in most of Scotland and England.[22] Its signature: groups of Blackthorns forming a tight **thicket**.

In early Spring, Blackthorns **bloom** with creamy white flowers.[23] Blackthorn flowers have a light, sweet smell reminiscent of almonds.[24]

As a member of the rose family, the Blackthorn also has sharp **thorns**.

In Autumn (Oct-Nov), the Blackthorn bears a **fruit** called a **"sloe"** (pictured): black with purple-blue waxy bloom.

The black fruit and the sharp thorns give us its name: Black-thorn.[25]

Sloe has many uses. The berries have a bitter, astringent taste when eaten fresh but a sweeter, more plum-like taste after the first frost.[26] The sloe fruit goes into the flavoring for "Sloe Gin" made in Britain. The tart berries make good preserves, jam, and chutney fruit pies.

The **wood** from Blackthorns can serve several purposes. Blackthorn makes excellent firewood, producing good heat and little smoke. Blackthorns can provide natural fencing. The tendency for Blackthorn branches to tangle together make them a particularly effective barrier.

More unique to Blackthorns, humans can use their wood to make tool handles, canes, and walking sticks (including the Irish shillelagh, a combination walking-stick and cudgel weapon).[27]

---

[20] "Crataegus monogyna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crataegus_monogyna

[21] "Prunus spinosa" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prunus_spinosa

[22] "Blackthorn (*Prunus spinosa*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/british-trees/a-z-of-british-trees/blackthorn/

[23] "Prunus spinosa" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prunus_spinosa

[24] "Blackthorn Flower Syrup" (2014), on Hedgetables, available at https://hedgetables.wordpress.com/2014/03/21/blackthorn-flower-syrup/

[25] "Prunus spinosa" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prunus_spinosa

[26] "Blackthorn: the Original Sloe Food" (2021) on Fine Dining Lovers, available at https://www.finedininglovers.com/explore/articles/blackthorn-original-sloe-food

[27] "Prunus spinosa" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prunus_spinosa

HAZEL

(20) HAZEL TREE.

Hazel (*Corylus avellana*) grows as a shrub or small tree (deciduous), sometimes making its way up to 10-25 feet (3-8 m) tall.[28] A member of the Birch family, Hazel grows in areas like the edge of Birch woodlands, hedgerows, and scrub areas.[29] Hazel is famously abundant in England and on the Scottish west coast, but it also grows widely in the Scottish Borders region, especially in gullies, steep slopes, and ravines.[30]

(21) HAZELNUTS!

Hazel yields fruit in the form of a **nut**: the well-known **hazelnut**.[31] Hazelnuts have a rich, buttery flavor with hints of chocolate and earthy notes.[32] Nutella spread uses hazelnuts as a key ingredient.[33]

The **wood** from hazel makes good material for agricultural fencing.[34]

Since Neolithic times, humans have used wooden strips from hazel in a building method called **wattle-and-daub**.[35] In this construction method, people take wooden strips (waddle) and "daub" them with a sticky mix of soil, clay, sand, and straw.[36]

[28] "Corylus avellana" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corylus_avellana

[29] "Hazel (*Corylus avellana*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/british-trees/a-z-of-british-trees/hazel/

[30] "Hazel" (2022) on The Borders Forest Trust: https://bordersforesttrust.org/blog/hazel

[31] "Corylus avellana" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corylus_avellana

[32] "What do hazelnuts taste like? Exploring flavor and origin", available at https://cortaditocoffeehouse.com/news/what-do-hazelnuts-taste-like/

[33] "Nutella" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nutella

[34] "Corylus avellana" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corylus_avellana

[35] "Corylus avellana" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corylus_avellana

[36] "Wattle and daub" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wattle_and_daub

BRAMBLE

(22) BRAMBLE BLOSSOMS in shades of white and pink.

Bramble (*Rubus fruticosus*) in Scottish English, or **European Blackberry Bushes** in more Americanized English, flourishes as a hardy, thorny shrub up to 6 feet (2 m) high.[37] Brambles do well in acidic soils and grow throughout the hedgerows, woodlands, and scrublands of Scotland and England.[38]

Clusters of white **flowers** (sometimes tinged with pink) **bloom** on Brambles from late Spring to early Summer (June-July).[39] The blossoms from Brambles have a light, sweet, delicate floral scent reminiscent of honey, faint violets, or apple blossoms.

Bramble thickets often serve as **natural nurseries**, sheltering young trees from grazing animals until they grow beyond their reach.

(23) BRAMBLES AKA BLACKBERRIES.

In Scotland and England, Brambles ripen their **fruit** from July through early October.[40] The fruit tastes both sweet and tart with deep, earthy, and sometimes woody undertones.

In Scotland and some of northern England, people typically use the word "brambles" for both the plants themselves and their fruit. Where Americans would say "picking blackberries," the people in Scotland and parts of England would typically say "picking brambles."[41]

[37] "Bramble (*Rubus fruticosus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/bramble/

[38] "Bramble (*Rubus fruticosus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/bramble/

[39] "Bramble (*Rubus fruticosus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/bramble/

[40] "Bramble (*Rubus fruticosus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/bramble/

[41] "Foraging for Blackberries in Scotland" (2024) on Hamlyns of Scotland: https://hamlynsoats.co.uk/foraging-for-blackberries-in-scotland/

GORSE

(24) COMMON GORSE.

Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*) also known as "**furze**" or "**furzebush**" or "**whin**" (in Scotland) makes an extremely thorny evergreen shrub that can reach 10 feet (4.5 m) in height.[42] This prickly shrub also stands out for its very hardy, drought-resistant toughness. Gorse thrives on sunny, well-drained acidic soils and frequently grows on hillsides.[43]

In April and May, Gorse hits peak **bloom** with vibrant, bright yellow, coconut-scented flowers.[44] However, as an evergreen plant, Gorse can also bloom periodically throughout the year, especially from January to June.[45] Hence, the old Scottish saying: "When gorse is out of bloom, kissing is out of season."[46]

(25) GORSE (WHIN) IN FULL FLOWER.

The Gorse falls within the **bean** family; its fruit is a purple-brown legume.[47]

Gorse has many **beneficial properties**. It has nitrogen-fixing properties that improve the soil for other plants and helps these plants establish themselves better.[48] It can provide natural fencing or hedging. Its dense, thorny cover also makes a wonderful location for bird nests.[49] Gorse can be turned into fodder for horses & cattle by crushing and grinding it.[50] This property proves especially useful in the Winter months when other green-stuffs may turn scarce. Gorse makes a highly flammable fuel.[51] Bundles of Gorse can fire bread ovens.[52]

---

[42] "Ulex europaeus" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex_europaeus

[43] "Common Gorse – Ulex europaeus" on Bricksfield Park website: https://www.brickfieldspark.org/data/gorse.htm

[44] "Common Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/gorse/

[45] "Common Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/gorse/

[47] "Common Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/gorse/

[48] "Intercropping N-fixing shrubs in pine plantation forestry as an ecologically sustainable management option" by Vidal, Trichet, et al., in "Forest Ecology and Management," Vol. 437, 1 April 2019, Pages 175-187, available at Science Direct: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S037811271832111X

[49] "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

[50] "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

[51] "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

(26) DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE WITH BLOOMING GORSE. On the coast of Northumberland in northeast England.

The scrogs in the **Lowland Farming Plains** of northeastern Scotland (**inland Aberdeenshire**) and northern England (**across Yorkshire**) have a roughly similar mix of plant species as the Scottish Borders. This includes **Hawthorn**, **Blackthorn**, **Hazel**, and **Bramble**, with less **Gorse**.

The thin soils over sandstone and limestone in northeast England provide opportunities for thorny, climbing vine species like **Dog Rose**[53] to make more frequent appearances in those areas.[54]

The winds in the **Coastal Hils** of northeastern England (**Northumberland**) and in northeastern Scotland (**coastal Aberdeenshire**) tend to shift a similar scrog plant population towards smaller trees and low-growing, wind-resistant plants like Gorse.

Coastal scrogs are wind-shaped woodlands in miniature – held low by salty winds, but persistent all the same. Pressed low by the elements, coastal scrogs spread sideways rather than upwards, clinging to the land.

[51] "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

[52] "December: Gorse" (from 2013) on Game & Wildlife Conservation Trust: https://www.gwct.org.uk/wildlife/species-of-the-month/2013/december/

[53] "Dog Rose (*Rosa canina*)" on Woodland Trust UK: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/plants/wild-flowers/dog-rose/

[54] "Dog-rose" on The Wildlife Trusts: https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife-explorer/trees-and-shrubs/dog-rose

In the **Scottish Highlands**, colder temperatures and more acidic soil result in scrogs (aka "montane scrub" habitat) populated more heavily by Dwarf or Prostate **Juniper**, Dwarf **Birch**, Willow shrubs (like **Downy Willow** and **Mountain Willow**),[55] **Heather**,[56] and some **Gorse**. (**See insets: Juniper, Heather**, following pages).

(27) DWARF BIRCH (*BETULA NANA*). Some people call dwarf birch the "wee trees."

(28) DOWNY WILLOW (*SALIX LAPPONUM*).

(29) MOUNTAIN WILLOW (*SALIX ARBUSCULA*).

These Highland areas may also have some small **Rowan** trees[57] and **Scots Pine** regeneration.[58]

(30) SCOTS PINE (*PINUS SYLVESTRIS*) AMONG BLOOMING HEATHER.

The *Scottish National Dictionary* (*SND*) specifies that "**Juniper bushes**" are "brush-wood" that "in the old dialect of the country, received the general denomination of scrogs."[59]

[55] "Mountain Woodlands: Best Practice Handbook" by Tamsin Morris for Action for Mountain Woodlands, on Montane Scrub Action Group: https://www.msag.org.uk/uploads/4/0/7/3/40732079/mountain_woodlands_best_practice.pdf

[56] "Plants for Scottish Slopes" by Katrina Flad on Scotland Grows Magazine (including Willow shrubs and Heather): https://scotlandgrowsmagazine.com/2020/10/05/plants-for-scottish-slopes/

[57] "Missing Link" (2021) by Izzy Filor on John Muir Trust: https://www.johnmuirtrust.org/resources/996-missing-link

[58] "Scotland's missing habitat – restoring montane woodlands at Mar Lodge Estate" (2021) by Shaila Rao on National Trust for Scotland: https://www.nts.org.uk/stories/scotlands-missing-habitat-restoring-montane-woodlands-at-mar-lodge-estate

[59] "Scrog," *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v (citing a source attributed to "Peb." [Peebleshire] from about 1795).

JUNIPER

(31) JUNIPER.

Juniper (*Juniperus communis*) thrives as an evergreen with size ranging anywhere from a low, prostrate, spreading shrub to a tree up to 15 feet (5 m) high.[60]

Junipers yield berries called **juniper berries**. These berries have a flavor described as citrusy and evergreen with overtones both bitter and sweet.[61] Gin uses juniper berries for flavoring[62]. The name "gin" itself comes from either "*genièvre*" (French) or "*jenever*" (Dutch), both of which mean "juniper."[63]

Juniper **wood** makes good firewood.[64] When burning, juniper has a distinct, highly aromatic scent that mixes cedar, spice, and earthy notes.[65]

(32) TWISTED JUNIPER TREE.

The *SND* defines "scrog(g)" as a "stunted crooked bush or low tree."[66] When we look at the photo of the twisted juniper tree (above), we can see why. Although the definition is accurate, words fail to adequately convey the rugged beauty of plants like the juniper that inspired it.

Low, tough, and long-lived, juniper endures where wind, poor soils, and grazing defeat other plants.

[60] "Juniperus communis" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Juniperus_communis

[61] "All About Juniper Berries: a Very Tasty Spice" (2017) by Ellen on Backyard Forager, available at https://backyardforager.com/juniper-berries/

[62] "Juniper" (2007) on Woodlands UK: https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/juniper/

[63] "Juniper berry" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Juniper_berry

[64] "Juniper" (2007) on Woodlands UK: https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/juniper/

[65] "Is Juniper Good Firewood? A Guide to Heating & Cooking with Juniper Wood" (2020) by Jordan Quinn Farkas on Backyard Boss, available at https://www.backyardboss.net/juniper-firewood/

[66] "Scrog" on the *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

HEATHER

(33) LING HEATHER (*CALLUNA VULGARIS*), in the Highlands of Scotland, growing wild.

Ling Heather (*Calluna vulgaris*), also called Common Heather, is a hardy, evergreen, low-growing shrub just 8-20 inches (20-50 cm) high.[67] Heather has adapted well to acidic soil and cool, wet climates, including parts of England & the Scottish Highlands and Borders region.[68, 69, 70]

Blooming heather explodes into fireworks of purple, pink, and mauve in late Summer and early Autumn (July-Sept) with a peak in August.[71] Blooming heather has a subtle, refreshing, and earthy aroma, mixing scents of floral honey and lavender with sweet, musky notes.[72]

(34) BELL HEATHER (*ERICA CINEREA*).

Bell Heather (*Erica cinerea*) also grows in Scotland and some of England, preferring dry, acidic, nutrient-poor soils.[73] Bell heather yields vivid, dark purple-pink, bell-shaped flowers.[74]

Heather is more than just one of Scotland's most emblematic plants. It is often what remains when grazing, wind, and soil have pushed back against woodland. In these conditions, it forms wide, resilient carpets that persist for generations, holding the ground where trees struggle to return. Where heather dominates, it marks a landscape shaped and held in balance by pressure.

Few plants are as widespread in Scotland as heather. It thrives from lowland heaths to high, windswept hills.

---

[67] "Calluna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Calluna

[68] "Heather Facts" on Trees for Life: https://treesforlife.org.uk/into-the-forest/trees-plants-animals/plants/heather/heather-facts/

[69] "Best Places to See Heather in Aberdeenshire, Scotland (with Photography Tips)" by Katrina Stewart, https://www.katrinastewart.com/blog/2025/8/4/best-places-to-see-heather-in-aberdeenshire-scotland-with-photography-tips

[70] "Calluna Vulgaris – 6th September 2021 – Heather" by John Grace on Societas Botanica website: https://botsoc.scot/2021/09/05/plant-of-the-week-6th-september-2021-heather-calluna-vulgaris-l-hull/

[71] "Calluna" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Calluna

[72] "A guide to Scottish heather" (2026) by Chris Thornton on Live Breathe Scotland, available at https://www.livebreathescotland.com/scottish-heather/

[73] "Erica cinerea" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Erica_cinerea

[74] "Bell Heather" on The Wildlife Trusts: https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife-explorer/wildflowers/bell-heather

(35) HEATHER IN THE HIGHLANDS. Heather blooms on Ben A'an, Trossachs, in the Stirling council area of Scotland.

The blooming heather of the Scottish Highlands gives the region its iconic rugged beauty. It has sparked awe and wonder in people for centuries or millennia.

In poetry and song, the blooming heather of Scotland symbolizes love, untamed nature, and late Summer or early Autumn.

The chorus of the Scottish/Irish folk song **"Wild Mountain Thyme (Will Ye Go, Lassie, Go)"** sings about two lovers going "To pull wild mountain thyme / All around the bloomin' heather."[75]

In **"Now Westlin Winds,"** Scottish national poet **Robert Burns** writes about a Moorcock (a game bird, specifically a male red grouse) rising among blooming heather, setting a scene of romantic Autumn wanderings.[76]

[75] "Wild Mountain Thyme" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wild_Mountain_Thyme . To make the familiar tune in the 1950s, Irish musician Francis McPeake adapted "The Braes of Balquhither" by Scottish poet Robert Tannahill and Scottish composer Robert Archibald Smith. *Id.*

[76] "Now Westlin' Winds" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Now_Westlin%27_Winds

CRAB APPLE (WILD APPLE)

(36) CRAB APPLE TREE IN BLOOM. Late May.

One of the entries in the *Scottish National Dictionary* for "scrog" specifies the "**crab apple** tree or its fruit."[77]

European Crab Apple (*Malus sylvestris*) grows natively in Scotland and northern England. Today, many apparent Crab Apple trees (also called **Wild Apple**) are actually a hybrid between Wild Apples and domestic apples. However, more or less pure Wild Apples can still be found in Loch Lomand and the Trossachs, Galloway, Highland Perthshire, and the Lake District. By contrast, in Aberdeenshire nearly half of apparent Wild Apple trees were actually hybrids.

Crab Apple trees appear in **woodlands, wood pastures,** and **hedges**. They can also be found in **uplands gulley** and **riparian (riverside) woodlands** They are most common in Oak-Birch woodland, but also appear in Ash woods and Alder wet woodland.

They can grow up to 26-46 feet high (8-14 m), often a bit taller than Hawthorn trees.

They are hardy, resilient trees. They can blow over and resprout freely as **"phoenix trees."**

(37) FRUIT ON A CRAB APPLE TREE. Early August.

Today, Wild Apple trees are relatively **rare** in Scotland. In several European countries, Crab Apple trees are considered **threatened**. The main threat is **hybridization**, with threats to woodland habitat also factoring in.

They **bloom** in May, about a week before the Hawthorn trees. They have blossoms of pink and white.

The **fruit** from Wild Apple trees is much smaller than fruit from domestic apple trees. Wild apples average only about 1.1 inches (28 mm) in diameter.

Crab (wild) apples make excellent **jellies** and **jams**, in vibrant hues of blush pink and ruby red.

Evidence suggests humans have been using them in **food** for centuries or millennia.

Fifty-four crab apples were found in a bucket from a Viking ship dating to 820 AD.

The "crab fair" for wild apples in Egremont, Cumbria, northwest England began in 1267 and continues today.[78]

---

[77] "Scrog" in *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, at definition no. 4, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

[78] "The Ecology and Genetics of Scotland's Wild Apple: Malus sylvestris" (2018) by Worrell, Ruhsam, Renny, Jessop, and Findlay, at pages 2, 29, 31, 33-35, available at https://www.scottishforestrytrust.org.uk/userfiles/file/projects/p16_263_crab_apple_project/ecology-and-genetics-of-scotlandas-native-wild-apple-malus-sylvestris_finalv3.pdf

Where the scrogs grow thickest, they do not stand alone. They become shelter, feeding ground, and hidden roads for the animals that move through them.

What Kind of Animals Are in the Scrogs?

A wide range of animals inhabit the scrogs, from small mammals to large deer.

Squirrels love to nest in scrogs and eat the fruit and nuts abundant there.[79]

(38) RED SQUIRREL (*SCIURUS VULGARIS*). Scotland's only native squirrel species, inhabiting the region since the last Ice Age.

Rabbits and hares also use scrogs as cover for the entrances to their burrow homes (warrens).[80] The **Brown Hare** (*Lepus europaeus*) was introduced to Britain during the Iron Age and quickly established itself in lowland agricultural areas. They live near farms and grasslands for food, but use hedgerows, scrogs, and woodlands to hide from predators.[81]

(39) BROWN HARE (*LEPUS EUROPAEUS*). Also known as the European Hare, they have been common in Scotland's Border regions since the Iron Age.

Mid-size mammals like the badger,[82] red fox,[83] and various martens, stoats, and weasels roam the scrogs, eating smaller mammals and sometimes nuts and berries.[84] **Badgers** especially thrive where scrub and woodland meet pastures. They favor the same thorny margins that define scrogs. (**See photo: Badger**, next page.)

---

[79] "Red squirrel (Sciurus vulgaris)" on Forestry and Land Scotland, available at https://forestryandland.gov.scot/learn/wildlife/red-squirrel

[80] "Rabbit," on The Wildlife Trusts (UK), available at https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife-explorer/mammals/rabbit

[81] "Hares and Rabbits" on NatureScot (Scotland's Nature Agency), available at https://www.nature.scot/plants-animals-and-fungi/mammals/land-mammals/hares-and-rabbits ; *see also* "The NHBS Guide to UK Rabbit and Hare Identification" (2022) by Hana Ketley, available at https://www.nhbs.com/blog/the-nhbs-guide-to-uk-rabbit-and-hare-identification

[82] "Badger" on NatureScot (Scotland's Nature Agency), available at https://www.nature.scot/plants-animals-and-fungi/mammals/land-mammals/badger

[83] "Red fox," on the Wildlife Trusts (UK), available at https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife-explorer/mammals/red-fox

[84] "Stoats Weasels & Pine Martens," on the Scottish SPCA website, available at https://www.scottishspca.org/advice/stoat-weasel-and-pine-martens/

(40) EUROPEAN BADGER (*MELES MELES*), framed by blooming Gorse in Scotland. Photo by **Caroline Legg**.

Large mammals like **Red Deer**[85] and **Roe Deer**[86] also use scrogs for cover and food.[87]

When snow covers the ground, higher plants like Heather turn into critical food sources for deer to survive the Winter.[88]

Deer are quiet architects of the scrogs, browsing young shoots and shaping which shrubs survive to become thicket or woodland. Where deer linger, they help decide whether a hillside fills with open Heather, Bramble, or Birch. This subtly alters the cover and nesting places used by birds in the scrogs.

(41) RED DEER (*CERVUS ELAPHUS*).

[85] "Red deer (Cervus elaphus)" on Forestry and Land Scotland, available at https://forestryandland.gov.scot/learn/wildlife/red-deer

[86] "Roe deer," on the Mammal Society (UK) website, available at https://mammal.org.uk/british-mammals/roe-deer

[87] "Deer," on NatureScot (Scotland's Nature Agency), available at https://www.nature.scot/plants-animals-and-fungi/mammals/land-mammals/deer

[88] "Red Deer Diet & Feeding Behaviour," Wildlife Online (UK), available at https://www.wildlifeonline.me.uk/animals/article/red-deer-diet-feeding-behaviour

Birds love scrogs. The plants there provide both **nesting** cover and abundant **food** sources (berries, insects, caterpillars, etc.) for birds.[89]

Whitethroats, Linnets, Goldfinches, Dunnocks, Bullfinches, Yellowhammers, and many other birds all live in or visit the scrogs.[90] (**See insets: Dunnock** (below), **Yellowhammer**, **Linnet**, & **Whitethroat**, following pages.)

DUNNOCK

(42) DUNNOCK (*PRUNELLA MODULARIS*) ON A FROSTY, THORNY BRANCH.

Dunnock (*Prunella modularis*). The shy Dunnock often hops around under hedges, earning it the nickname "Hedge Sparrow." It frequently inhabits scrub, woodland edges, farmland, and other areas throughout Scotland and the UK year-round. Dunnocks nest in shrubs and feed on insects, worms, and seeds.[91]

(43) DUNNOCK (HEDGE SPARROW) NEST. Dunnocks lay distinctive light blue eggs.

Dunnocks sing a squeaky warbling **song** – a warbling "peep."[92]

Though small and often overlooked, the Dunnock is one of the quiet constants of hedgerows and scrogs. It slips through Bramble and thorn where larger birds keep their distance. Its habit of staying low and hidden makes it far more often heard than seen, a fitting bird for scrubby margins and tangled woodland edges.

[89] "Birds of Shrubs and Scrub," on Barnsley Biodiversity Trust, available at http://www.barnsleybiodiversity.org.uk/birds_shrubs_scrub.html

[90] *See, e.g.,* "Birds of Shrubs and Scrub," on Barnsley Biodiversity Trust, available at http://www.barnsleybiodiversity.org.uk/birds_shrubs_scrub.html

[91] "Dunnock" on the Wildlife Trusts (UK), available at https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife-explorer/birds/larks-sparrows-pipits-wagtails-and-dunnock/dunnock ; *see also* "Dunnock" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dunnock

[92] "Dunnock" on RSPB (Royal Society for the Protection of Birds, a UK charity), available at https://www.rspb.org.uk/birds-and-wildlife/dunnock

YELLOWHAMMER

(44) YELLOWHAMMER MALE.

Yellowhammer (*Emberiza citrinella*). This bright-yellow bird lives in the woodland edges, hedgerows, heath, and farmland of Scotland and the UK year-round, feeding on invertebrates and seeds.

These birds often perch on top of bushes and sing their signature **song**: "a little bit of bread and NO cheese."[93]

Yellowhammers appear in Scottish poems, sometimes alongside the scrogs where they often nest.

The Yellowhammer (also called a **"Yorlin"** in Scots) inspired Scottish poet Robert Burns to write "The Yellow, Yellow Yorlin."[94]

The *SND* definition for "scrog" cites a poem where Yorlins fly in clouds from among the scrogs (discussed more in the next section).[95]

The Yellowhammer is a bird of edges – where open fields meet hedgerow, scrub, and pasture. It thrives in the kind of half-wild margins that define scrogs, feeding in stubble and nesting low in thorny cover. Bright in color but often perched quietly on a fence post or Hawthorn branch, it is one of the most familiar voices of the Scottish Borders countryside.

Scrogs benefit from birds. In return for shelter and food, the **birds spread seeds** from scrog plant species.[96] When birds eat the berries in the scrogs, they eat the seeds, too. The seeds pass through the birds and the bird droppings deposit them across the landscape. The birds can potentially **spread** those **seeds for miles** around.[97]

[93] "Yellowhammer: Emberiza Citrinella," on Scottish Wildlife Trust, available at https://scottishwildlifetrust.org.uk/species/yellowhammer/

[94] Yellowhammer" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yellowhammer

[95] "Scrog" on the *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

[96] "Woodland types: scrub" (2015) by Chris on Woodlands.co.uk, available at https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/woodland-types-scrub/

[97] "How far can frugivorous birds disperse seeds during migration?" by Bracho-Estevanez, Morales, et al., in Proc Biol Sci. 2025 Nov, abstract available on NIH/PubMed at https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/41290158/ (frugivorous birds can disperse seeds over tens to hundreds of kilometers, depending on the plant species).

LINNET

(45) COMMON LINNET (*LINARIA CANNABINA*). Male in breeding plumage.

Linnet (*Linaria cannabina*). Linnets call the heathland, scrub, and farmland of Scotland and England home year-round.

Linnets feed on seeds and build bowl-shaped nests in areas like Gorse bush or hedgerow plants.

The melodious **song** of the Linnet made it a popular cage bird in the past.[98] This bird's musical warble has been described as a joyful mix of trills, chirps, and sweet whistles.[99]

More than just songbirds frequent the scrogs. Birds like the **Common Buzzard**, **Kestrel**, and Tawny Owl all hunt for prey among the scrogs.[100]

(46) COMMON BUZZARD (*BUTEO BUTEO*).

The **Common Buzzard** thrives where pasture meets woodland, circling above the same rough edges and scrogs that shelter rabbits, voles, and smaller birds below.

Kestrels patrol the wild edges of field and scrog alike, hovering virtually motionless above pastures before dropping suddenly on voles, mice, and other small prey hidden below.

(47) KESTREL (*FALCO TINNUNCULUS*), also called the "windhover," hunting its prey.

[98] "Linnet: *Carduelis Cannabina*," on Scottish Wildlife Trust, available at https://scottishwildlifetrust.org.uk/species/linnet/ ; *see also* "Common linnet" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Common_linnet

[99] "Sounds of… Farmland" on RSPB (Royal Society for the Protection of Birds, UK charity), available at https://www.rspb.org.uk/birds-and-wildlife/sounds-of-spring/sounds-of-farmland ; *see also* "Linnet" on RSPB, available at https://www.rspb.org.uk/birds-and-wildlife/linnet

[100] "August's Birds of the Month: iconic birds of prey in the UK" on RSPB, available at https://www.rspb.org.uk/birds-and-wildlife/birds-of-the-month/august-birds-of-the-month

WHITETHROAT

(48) COMMON WHITETHROAT.

(49) LESSER WHITETHROAT (*SYLVIA CURRUCA*), perched on a thorny branch.

Common Whitethroat (*Curruca communis*) **& Lesser Whitethroat** (*Curruca curruca* or *Sylvia curruca*).

Perhaps unsurprisingly, the Common and Lesser Whitethroat share a distinctive feature: a white throat.

As migratory birds, they usually arrive in the UK around April.

The **Common Whitethroat** prefers low, somewhat open, scrubby areas with Brambles and low hedgerow plants.

Its **song** is a distinctive, hard-to-describe 3-4 second burst that blends elements of sweet, scratchy, and throaty.

The more introverted **Lesser Whitethroat** prefers taller, thicker hedges and often sings from deep inside of the Hawthorns and Blackthorns common to the scrogs, hidden safely in the dense tangle of twigs and branches.

Its distinctive **song** has a one-noted, rhythmic burst j-j-j-j-j-jut with a deep, hollow, ring.[101]

Whitethroats are true birds of the Bramble edge, favoring the tangled, thorny scrub where pasture gives way to woodland. They nest low in Hawthorn, Blackthorn, and Bramble thickets, darting out with quick bursts of song before they disappear back into cover. In places like the scrogs, they form part of the living soundtrack of the Summer hedgerow.

Various insects, moths, and butterflies also call the scrogs home.[102] The **small tortoiseshell (*Aglais urticae*)** is a butterfly that loves the hedgerows, patches of nettles, and scrubby field edges – the same half-wild places that define scrogs. Its caterpillars feed on nettles, turning the overlooked corners of pasture into vital nurseries for both insects and the birds that feed on them.

(50) SMALL TORTOISESHELL

[101] "Common and Lesser Whitethroats" (2010) in Bird Guides: First for Bird News, available at https://www.birdguides.com/articles/identification/common-and-lesser-whitethroats/

[102] "Woodland and scrub," on Butterfly Conservation (UK), available at https://butterfly-conservation.org/our-work/habitat-management/woodland-and-scrub ; *see also* "Scrubland," on Canal & River Trust, available at https://canalrivertrust.org.uk/things-to-do/canal-and-river-wildlife/canal-habitats-for-nature/scrubland

(51) TWEED VALLEY, SCOTTISH BORDERS. Gorse in bloom marks the rough edges where pasture turns to scrub and woodland – a familiar Borders landscape where scrogs form and persist.

(52) LYNE WATER FLAT LANDS. Along the Lyne Water in the Scottish Borders, Alder and Willow trees line the wetter banks, while rough pasture and thorny scrub rise behind them – the layered edge habitat of scrogs.

(53) YELLOWHAMMER ON A HAWTHORN IN BLOOM. Perched on a Hawthorn, the Yellowhammer is a bird of the margins, where pastures collide with scrub and the wild world of the scrogs begins.

The Hidden Work of the Scrogs

Scrogs are more than just a random collection of shrubs and small trees. They represent a specific stage in the natural life cycle of woodland landscapes. Ecologists call this process **ecological succession** – the gradual transformation of open ground into a mature forest over time.[103]

When land lies open – whether because of storm damage, fire, grazing, farming, or abandonment – the first plants to arrive are hardy **pioneers**. The pioneer species can tolerate wind, poor soils, and various harsh conditions.[104] Many of the plants that make up scrogs fall into this category: Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, Juniper, Gorse, Bramble, and Elder.[105]

Birds often play the role of unwitting **gardeners** in this process. As they feed on berries and fruits, they carry seeds across the landscape and deposit them in their droppings.[106] A hedgerow here, a hillside there – soon the seeds of thorny shrubs begin to sprout. These young plants grow quickly and densely, forming the tangled thickets we call **scrogs**.

Once established, scrogs begin to change their surroundings. Their branches slow the wind. Their roots stabilize the soil. Their leaves and fallen branches enrich the ground with organic matter. Over time, the scrogs create a sheltered, nutrient-rich environment where new plants can take hold.[107, 108]

This shelter allows slightly larger trees such as **Birch** and **Rowan** to begin growing among the thicket.

(54) BIRCH GROVE IN AUTUMN.

Scientists have dubbed **Birch trees "pioneer trees."**[109] They produce many tiny, lightweight, winged seeds that float and glide on air currents.[110] Most of these windborne seeds land within about 100 meters of the parent tree,[111] but a few windborne

[103] "Woodlands: The Big Picture" from Scotland: The Big Picture, available for download at https://www.scotlandbigpicture.com/store/ebooks/rr-woodlands

[104] "44: Succession – from rock to forest" (2020) on Notebook from the North (an academic working in the fields of ecology & geography), available at https://notebookfromthenorth.com/2020/05/17/44-succession-from-rock-to-forest/

[105] "Woodland types: scrub" (2015) by Chris on Woodlands.co.uk, available at https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/woodland-types-scrub/

[106] "Woodland types: scrub" (2015) by Chris on Woodlands.co.uk, available at https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/woodland-types-scrub/

[107] "Scrub encroachment promotes biodiversity in temperate European wetlands under eutrophic conditions," by Brunbjerg, Flojgaard, et al., Ecol Evol. 2022 Nov 1; 12(11), available on NIH/PubMed at https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC9627074/

[108] "Scrub and its management" by Suffolk Wildlife Trust (UK), available at https://newton-pc.gov.uk/assets/Newton-Green-Trust/Trust-Other-Papers/Scrub.pdf

[109] "Birchwood," on Nature Scot (Scotland's Nature Agency), available at https://www.nature.scot/landscapes-and-habitats/habitat-types/woodland-habitats/birchwood

[110] "Seed Dispersal: 5 Ways Trees Spread Their Seeds" (2019), by Amy Lewis, on Woodland Trust (UK), available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/blog/2019/08/seed-dispersal/

[111] "Seed Dispersal and Distribution of Silver Birch (*Betula pendula*) Naturally Regenerating Seedlings on Abandoned Agricultural Land at Forest Edges" (2002) by Vytautas Suchockas, Lithuanian Forest Research Institute, *Baltic Forestry*, 8 (2):

seeds can sail over a mile away.[112] Birch grow quickly and tolerate difficult conditions,[113] rising above the scrub and spreading light shade beneath their branches.[114]

Given enough time and protection from heavy grazing, the Birch woodland may eventually pave the way for slower-growing trees such as **Ash** or **Oak**.[115, 116] In this way, the scrogs serve as the **advance guard of the forest**, preparing the land for the next stage of woodland development.

But succession does not always run its full course. In the working landscapes of Scotland and England, the process sometimes pauses at the scrogs stage. **Farmers** often **clear** scrub from pasture.[117] **Wind** and harsh weather keep trees from growing too tall in exposed places.[118] **Sheep** and **cattle graze** young tree seedlings.[119] The result is a balance between open farmland and advancing woodland.[120]

In the hills of the Scottish Borders, sheep have long suppressed the spread of scrogs. They often leave behind only scattered, wind-shaped survivors of what may once have been denser scrogs along the margins of field and streams. (**See photo: A wind-swept tree on Hogg Hill**, below.)

(55) A WINDSWEPT TREE ON HOGG HILL. Historic county Peeblesshire, Scotland.

The small tree in this photo, likely a Hawthorn, stands alone near the summit of Hogg Hill in the hill farming countryside of the Scottish Borders region. The photo site is about 1 km west of the Land of Scrogges (discussed more in the next section.) **Sheep** graze the surrounding area. Photographer Walter

71-77, at pages 73-75, available at https://balticforestry.lammc.lt/bf/PDF_Articles/2002-8[2]/Seed%20dispersal%20and%20distribution%20of%20Silver%20Birch[Brief%20report].pdf

[112] "Seed Dispersal By Wind – How Far Can Seeds Travel?" (2016), available at https://arboriculture.wordpress.com/2016/01/12/seed-dispersal-by-wind-how-far-can-seeds-travel/ (citing "Modelling Seed Dispersal and Forest Island Dynamics" (1981) by W. Johnson, D. Sharpe, et al. in *Forest Island Dynamics in Man-Dominated Landscapes* (1981) by R.F. Whitcomb, with editors R.L. Burgess, D.M. Sharpe, et al.).

[113] "Birch as a Model Species for the Acclimation and Adaptation of Northern Forest Ecosystem to Changing Environment" (2021) by Elina Oksanen (University of Eastern Finland), Frontiers in Forests and Global Change, available at https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/forests-and-global-change/articles/10.3389/ffgc.2021.682512/full

[114] "Forestry Commission Bulletin 109: The Value of Birch in Upland Forests for Wildlife Conservation" (1993) by Gordon Patterson, available at https://cdn.forestresearch.gov.uk/1993/03/fcbu109.pdf

[115] "Types of Broadleaf Woodland" on CountrysideInfo (UK), available at http://www.countrysideinfo.co.uk/woodland_manage/broadlf2.htm

[116] "The Birch: a Pioneer Plant and Its Role in Ecosystems" (2024) by Chiara Pertile on 3Bee, available at https://blog.3bee.com/en/birch-pioneer-plant-degraded-ecosystems/

[117] "Lovely scrubbly – what scrub is and why we manage it" by Jim Horsfall on Yorkshire Wildlife Trust (UK), available at https://www.ywt.org.uk/blog/jim-horsfall/lovely-scrubbly-what-scrub-and-why-we-manage-it

[118] "How high can a tree grow?" (2023) by Dan Watson, National Trust for Scotland, available at https://www.nts.org.uk/stories/how-high-can-a-tree-grow

[119] "Wood Wise – Woodland Conservation News" (Autumn 2012) by Woodland Trust (UK), at page 3, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/1824/wood-wise-woodland-conservation-grazing.pdf

[120] "Ancient Wood Pasture in Scotland: Classification & Management Principles" (2002) by K. Holl and M. Smith, *Scottish Natural Heritage Commissioned Report F01AA108*, at 3, 7, available for download at https://www.nature.scot/doc/naturescot-commissioned-report-f01aa108-ancient-wood-pasture-scotland-classification-and-management

Baxter commented that this Hawthorn tree has done well to survive and escape the jaws of the **"woolly locusts"** (*i.e.*, the sheep).[121]

In this dynamic balance, the scrogs occupy a unique ecological niche. They form a **living frontier between pasture and forest**, between cultivated land and wild nature. Their tangled branches shelter birds and animals, enrich the soil, and quietly prepare the ground for whatever landscape may come next.

Seen from this perspective, scrogs are not simply scrubby patches of brush. They are **living engines of renewal**, constantly reshaping the borderlands between field and forest.

How Did Humans & Farm Animals View Scrogs?

Farm animals enjoyed a positive experience with scrogs. Sheep could eat scrog seedlings and Birch seedlings – much to the consternation of any territorial aspirations of the scrogs and Birch. **See photo: Scottish Blackface sheep on Black Hill**, at upper right.)

The sheep could not eat the established thorny scrog plants, but they could take shade from the hot sun[122] and shelter from wind, rain, and the cold by gathering at the edge of the established scrogs.[123] (**See photo: Dartmoor ponies sheltering behind Gorse**, at center right.)

(56) SCOTTISH BLACKFACE SHEEP ON BLACK HILL, grazing within the Pentland Hills in Midlothian, Scotland, southwest of Edinburgh. Sheep: the arch-nemesis of scrogs – woolly locusts!

(57) DARTMOOR PONIES SHELTERING BEHIND GORSE.

Humans had a more complex relationship with the scrogs. Scrogs gave some benefits to humans.

The scrogs could provide **firewood** for heating and cooking. One *DOST* definition emphasizes "**scrog(g)s**" as a "commodity … for use as **fuel**."[124] Species like Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Birch, Juniper,

[121] "NT1642: A windswept tree on Hogg Hill," by Walter Baxter, on Geograph Britain and Ireland at https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/1489100

[122] "Trees for shade, shelter, survival and body maintenance" (2018) by L. Whistance, available at https://agricology.co.uk/resource/trees-shade-shelter-survival-and-body-maintenance/

[123] "Case study: Tree shelter for livestock" (April 2017), by the Woodland Trust (UK), available for download at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/search/?q=benefits+of+tree+shelter under "Benefits of tree shelter for livestock farming" (specifically discussing hedgerows and hedgerow/boundary trees).

[124] "Scrog," *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, at definition 2.b., available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/scrogg

and Gorse all made excellent firewood and kindling for fuel.[125, 126, 127]

In modern America, we rely largely on electricity for power – fueled mostly by natural gas, renewable energy (solar, wind, hydropower), nuclear energy, and coal.[128]

But before electricity, people depended on fire and firewood.[129] To us, firewood may seem quaint and old-fashioned. For pre-modern farm societies, it held the power of life and death. Without firewood, they faced starvation and freezing to death in the Winter.

The **wood** from plants in the scrogs also offered **materials** for tool handles,[130] baskets,[131] agricultural fencing rods,[132] and utensils.[133]

The scrogs produced **food: berries** and **nuts**. Scrogs also attracted **game**. Humans could hunt the deer and trap the hares that roamed through the scrogs, putting some extra meat and much-needed protein on their table.[134]

The dense, thorny thicket of the scrogs made for excellent **natural fencing**.[135] In the days before barbed-wire fence, this provided an inexpensive way to keep valuable livestock from wandering too far away. (**See photo: Coastal thicket of Blackthorn, Hawthorn, and Gorse**, below.)

(58) COASTAL THICKET: BLACKTHORN, HAWTHORN, AND GORSE.

A wall of that tangled thicket could serve as an impenetrable barrier.

---

[125] "Best Burning Woods for Your Fires," by Teresa O'Connor, for Fiskars (Finnish company that makes axes, hatchets, and consumer products), available at https://www.fiskars.com/en-us/gardening-and-yard-care/ideas-and-how-tos/wood-preparing/best-burning-woods-for-your-fires

[126] "Firewood BTU Ratings Chart," by Michael Wilson, available at https://wilsonforest.com/firewood/btu/

[127] "10 Benefits of Gorse" (2025), by Rachel Lambert, available at https://wildwalks-southwest.co.uk/10-benefits-of-gorse/ ; *see also* "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

[128] "Electricity explained: Electricity in the United States" (2024), U.S. Energy Information Administration, available at https://www.eia.gov/energyexplained/electricity/electricity-in-the-us-generation-capacity-and-sales.php

[129] "Wood as fuel: from cooking to electrical energy," a chapter from *Trees of the People*, by Alan R. Walker (science writer), available for download at https://alanrwalker.com/trees/trees-of-the-people/

[130] "Blackthorn (*Prunus spinosa*)," on The Conservation Volunteers (England and Scotland), available at https://www.tcv.org.uk/i-dig-trees-tree-library/blackthorn/

[131] "Hazel," on Woven Communities: Basketmaking Communities in Scotland (University of St. Andrews and Scottish Basketmakers' Circle), available at https://wovencommunities.org/material/hazel/

[132] "Woodland management in medieval Scotland" (2017) by John M. Gilbert, *Proceedings of the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland*, *146*, 215-252, at pages 216-218, available for download at https://journals.socantscot.org/index.php/psas/article/view/9851

[133] Example: Gorse. *See* "Ulex" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ulex

[134] "10.4.1 Farming, Fishing, Husbandry, Hunting and Gathering," on ScARF (Scottish Archaeological Research Framework), available at https://scarf.scot/regional/higharf/post-medieval/10-4-daily-life/10-4-1-farming-fishing-husbandry-hunting-and-gathering/

[135] "Woodland types: scrub" (2015) by Chris on Woodlands.co.uk, available at https://www.woodlands.co.uk/blog/flora-and-fauna/woodland-types-scrub/

The scrogs could even thwart would-be human intruders.[136]

For humans, the scrogs had their **downsides**. The shrubs giveth, but the shrubs also taketh away. Humans may enjoy the nuts and berries from the scrogs. But the same food source also attracts **deer**, **rabbits**, **squirrels**, and other animals that can eat farmers' crops.[137] Scrogs also attracted **predators** like **red foxes** that could kill young lambs,[138] piglets, and sometimes even full-grown sheep.[139] If the scrogs tried to expand into farmland, farmers could perceive them as a nuisance.

Despite the downsides, our **myths and legends** suggest that on balance humans held a positive view of the scrogs. People revered **Hawthorn** as a symbol of hope and protection.[140] They used it as a charm to protect against witchcraft and vampires.[141] The Celts believed that eating **hazelnuts** gave people wisdom and inspiration.[142] In Celtic mythology, **Birch** trees represented renewal and purification.[143] In Celtic and Scandinavian lore, the **Rowan** tree held magical powers that granted protection and resilience.[144] In Scottish and Gaelic folklore, smoke from burning **Juniper** could cleanse, bless, and protect a house and its inhabitants, including by keeping evil spirits away.[145] The role of scrogs as a natural fence grew from literal protection to figurative protection in the minds of the ancient people who lived near them. A halo effect seemed to keep a net positive view of the scrogs rooted in the minds of humans.

How Do Scrogs Reflect Scottish Border History?

For thousands of years, humans have fought over the fertile valleys in the Scottish Borders region. Tribes in the Bronze Age and Iron Age built hilltop forts to watch over and defend their territories.[146] The Roman Empire clashed with the Caledonians (Picts) over these lands.[147] Brittonic Celtic tribes (Votadini,[148] Selgovae),[149] Angles of Northumbria,

[136] "Eight of the best defensive plants to keep thieves out of your garden" (2025) by Seamus Doherty, on London Loves Property, available at https://londonlovesproperty.com/eight-of-the-best-defensive-plants-to-keep-thieves-out-of-your-garden/ (including Hawthorn and Blackthorn for their dense, thorny branches, and Gorse for its dense, vicious spines).

[137] "Managing the Six Worst Garden Animal Pests," by Elisabeth Ginsburg on Fafard, available at https://fafard.com/managing-the-six-worst-garden-animal-pests/ (#1: deer; #3: rabbits; #6: squirrels)

[138] "Lamb Predation: Who Dunnit?" (2023) by Henny Martineau, on Royal Veterinary College, University of London, available at https://www.rvc.ac.uk/clinical-connections/lamb-predation-who-dunnit

[139] "Red Fox Interaction with Other Species – Livestock" (2018) on Wildlife Online (UK), available at https://www.wildlifeonline.me.uk/animals/article/red-fox-interaction-with-other-species-livestock

[140] "Crataegus monogyna," on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crataegus_monogyna

[141] "Hawthorn: Medicinal Ally and Sacred Guardian," by Em Draiocht, on Living through Nature, available at https://www.livingthroughnature.com/blog/hawthorn-folklore-magic

[142] "Hazel mythology and folklore," on Trees for Life, available at https://treesforlife.org.uk/into-the-forest/trees-plants-animals/trees/hazel/hazel-mythology-and-folklore/

[143] "Birch mythology and folklore," on Trees for Life, available at https://treesforlife.org.uk/into-the-forest/trees-plants-animals/trees/birch/birch-mythology-and-folklore/

[144] "The Rowan Tree: a Historical and Cultural Perspective," by Logan Dyer, available at https://www.kevindyerart.com/stories/the-rowan-tree-a-historical-and-cultural-perspective

[145] "The Folklore of Plants: Juniper" (2022) by Lisa Karen Miller, on Bowling Green Daily News, available at https://bgdailynews.com/2022/01/30/the-folklore-of-plants-juniper/

[146] "Hillforts in Scotland" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hillforts_in_Scotland

[147] "Did the Romans Conquer Scotland?" by Amy Baker (PhD student), on Dig It! Discover Scotland's Stories, available at https://www.digitscotland.com/did-the-romans-conquer-scotland/

[148] "Votadini Celtic Tribe" on Romain Britain, available at https://www.roman-britain.co.uk/tribes/votadini/

[149] "Selgovae Celtic Tribe" on Roman Britain, available at https://www.roman-britain.co.uk/tribes/selgovae/

Gaels (Scots), and even the Norse (Vikings) all vied for these lands.[150] Border reivers skirmished through the land from roughly 1350 to 1600.[151] (**See inset: Gilnockie Tower**, below.) England and Scotland struggled back and forth over the land for centuries, including famous (or infamous) figures like William Wallace and Robert the Bruce of Scotland and King Edward I "Longshanks"[152] and King Henry VIII of England – the latter of whom spearheaded the "Rough Wooing."[153] Throughout all this history, the Scottish Borders region served as the front lines in long-running wars for control over the borders area and Scotland itself.

GILNOCKIE TOWER

(59) "**BORDER REIVERS AT GILNOCKIE TOWER**." Illustration by George Cattermole (1800-1868).

Of all the Border reiver tower houses, **Gilnockie Tower** is perhaps the most iconic.

Famous border outlaw **Johnny Armstrong** originally built Gilnockie Tower as Hollows Tower in 1520. It served as the stronghold of the Armstrong Border Reiver clan in the Esk Valley.

In 1530, King James V of Scotland had Johnny Armstrong and 50 of his followers hanged, an event recorded in the Scottish folk ballad "Jonny Armstrong."

Gilnockie Tower stands guard over the west bank of the River Esk just north of Canonbie in Dumfries and Galloway, southwest Scotland.[154]

---

[150] "The history of Scotland" by the National Trust for Scotland, available at https://www.nts.org.uk/schools/adult-learning/the-history-of-scotland

[151] "Border reivers" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Border_reivers

[152] "The history of Scotland" by the National Trust for Scotland, available at https://www.nts.org.uk/schools/adult-learning/the-history-of-scotland

[153] "Rough Wooing" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rough_Wooing

[154] "Gilnockie Tower" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gilnockie_Tower

Similarly, the scrogs of Scotland serve as the front lines in a long-running war between natural forest and the farmland development of humans and their grazing animals. The scrogs sit watching over the stalemate from the hillsides, harkening back to the Iron Age humans peering at their foes from the safety of their hillforts. The scrogs lie in wait for the humans or grazing animals to falter or even abandon the farm fields and pastures outright. And if that happens, the scrogs will sweep across the lands like a wild green wave. They will march forward, paving the way for the pioneer Birch forest behind them, and the slower-growing Ash and Oak trees that trail the Birch. From this perspective, we see the scrogs as perhaps one of the best symbols of the Scottish Borders region.

What Qualities Do Scrogs Have?

With our improved understanding of the scrogs, we see how that one-syllable word "scrogs" bursts at the seams with meaning.

Wildness. Scrogs grow wild and untamed. As the edge of the woodlands, they form the boundary area between civilization and the wild forests of nature.

Pioneering. Ecologists call Birch trees "pioneer trees." Scrogs pave the way for these Birch pioneers. Scrogs: the pioneer's pioneer.

Beauty. The scrogs teem with **visual** beauty of all kinds: white blooms on Hawthorn & Blackthorn, white and pink flowers on Brambles (Blackberry bushes), vibrant yellow flowers on the Gorse, violet and purple waves of blooming Heather across the land, shades of brown and amber in the Fall, and shades of green on all the plants ranging from sage and mint to a deep emerald.

The **fragrances** of the scrogs can delight, like the coconut scent of the Gorse in bloom. Other smells of the scrogs include the musky-sweet smell of Hawthorn, the light floral-honey scents from the blossoms of Blackthorn and Bramble, the crisp, pine-scented aroma of Juniper, and the more earthy-mossy tones from Heather.

(60) BLACKTHORN IN BLOSSOM.

The scrogs even ***sing*** to us through the birds they host. The light twitter of the Goldfinch playfully sings a melodic "tickle-it" tune.[155]

(61) EUROPEAN GOLDFINCH (*CARDUELIS CARDUELIS*). Goldfinch live almost everywhere in England and Scotland except the mountains.

The Dunnock sings a sweet, fast, high-pitched warbling song.[156] Yellowhammers sing an iconic, high-pitched "a little bit of bread and NO cheese" melody, often ending in a long, drawn-out note.[157]

[155] "Goldfinch: *Carduelis carduelis*)," on Scottish Wildlife Trust, available at https://scottishwildlifetrust.org.uk/species/goldfinch/

[156] "Birdsong identification for beginners: 20 common songs and calls," by Paul Teasdale and Lisa Hendry on UK's Natural History Museum, available at https://www.nhm.ac.uk/discover/bird-song-identification-common-garden-birds.html

[157] "Sounds of… Farmland" on RSPB (Royal Society for the Protection of Birds, a UK charity), available at https://www.rspb.org.uk/birds-and-wildlife/sounds-of-spring/sounds-of-farmland

Whitethroats produce a fast, scratchy, warbling song as they rise from the scrogs.[158]

Abundance. Scrogs yield a cornucopia of berries and nuts for animals and humans alike: haws from Hawthorn, sloe from Blackthorn, blackberries, elder berries, juniper berries, and hazelnuts from the Hazel trees. The scrogs do more than just sustain us with good nutrition; they provide delicious sweet, tart, and buttery-rich flavor that enriches our lives.

(62) JUNIPER BERRIES. Humans use juniper berries for a tart, spicy flavor. They give gin its distinctive taste.[159]

Warmth. Many of the plant species in the scrogs provide excellent kindling and firewood. This meant warmth in the Winter and bread on the table for our ancestors.

Practical. Scrogs may not have the glamorous ring of "Vanderbilt" or "Fontaine," but they pack a powerful practical punch that gold and fountains cannot match. In pre-modern times, nothing said "practical" quite like a fire. Before electricity, fires heated our homes and cooked our food. Controlled fires prevented freezing to death or starvation.

Beyond just fire, the wood from various scrogs species could provide tool handles, utensils, walking sticks, and wattle-and-daub construction materials. Simple, humble items that quietly made life better.

Toughness. Scrog plants include hardy plants that flourish where other plants fail. Scrogs stand strong where some animals fear to tread. And scrogs arm themselves with thorns.

(63) OVER THE COQUET VALLEY FROM ABOVE THE BARROW SCROGS. Hardy scrogs thrive on a rugged hillside near Alwinton, Northumberland, northeast England.

Protection. Scrogs provided natural fencing to keep domesticated animals in and unwanted visitors out. In myths and legends, plants like the Hawthorn could even provide supernatural protection from evil spirits.

Resilience. Nothing bounces back from defeat quite like scrogs. Every twist of their branches bears witness to their resilience: if the wind breaks a branch, they just re-grow in a new direction. Humans and grazing animals can clear scrogs from a farm field and keep it clear for centuries. But there sit the scrogs along the hillside, biding their time. And if those humans and their animals get lazy or leave, the scrogs will re-take the land and bring the forest with them.

[158] "Common and Lesser Whitethroat: Hedgerow R2D2 versus mystery rattler" (2021) on "Shriek of the Week" Substack, available at https://shriekoftheweek.substack.com/p/shrieks-of-the-week-common-and-lesser

[159] "Juniper berry" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Juniper_berry

(64) A WINDSWEPT TREE ON HOGG HILL. Likely a Hawthorn tree, waiting for the woolly locusts to pass so it can re-take the fields for the scrogs and then the forest.

Teamwork. The scrogs represent a vibrant ecosystem, not one individual species. In the scrogs, a diverse array of plants and animals of all different shapes and sizes come together in relative harmony to make life work.

Transformation. Scrogs can convert quiet fields, pastures, and meadows into a forest brimming with life. Scrogs transform landscapes.

Just as the scrogs can represent transformation, so has this journey transformed us. We started with a dry, uninspiring Scots dictionary definition that suggested a surname without much real emotional resonance. But now, we see that definition had bided its time like a seed from the scrogs, just waiting to unfold into a world of striking beauty.

(65) WOODLAND EDGE NEAR ELLON IN ABERDEENSHIRE, SCOTLAND. At the woodland edge, thorn scrub & Bramble shelter young Birch trees, showing how scrogs can gradually pave the way for new woodland when grazing pressure eases.

SCROGS IN SCOTTISH SONG, POETRY, AND STORY

How a Wild Landscape Word Found Its Way into a Scottish Border Ballad

(66) MORTON CASTLE, NEAR THORNHILL IN DUMFRIES AND GALLOWAY, SOUTHWEST SCOTLAND. Scrogs flank the ruins of this Scottish castle. Scrogs – and stories – thrive in this landscape.

Distinctive Scots words for the rugged landscape of Scotland naturally found their way into Scottish songs, poems, and stories. For centuries, the rhythms of daily life – farming, herding, hunting, traveling – tangled inseparably with the Scottish terrain: green braes, winding burns, deep lochs, and the glens and corries carved by long-vanished glaciers.[160] Flowing naturally from this, landscape terms such as "scrogs" appear in the living literature of the Scottish people, not just in place-names and charters.

The *Scottish National Dictionary* (covering from 1700 onward) preserves numerous examples of the word "scrog" or "scrogs" used to describe tangled scrub, thorny bush, or rough woodland in poetry, songs, and literature.[161]

Some poetry highlights the wild, untamed nature of scrogs and even their frequent presence on hillsides.

---

[160] "Why Nature is at the Heart of Scottish Gaelic Language," (27 Nov 2020) by Iona Macritchie and uTalk (The Language Learning Specialists), available at https://utalk.com/news/why-nature-is-at-the-heart-of-the-scottish-gaelic-language/ ; *see also* "The Language of the Landscape" at Loch Lomand & the Trossachs National Park, available at https://www.lochlomond-trossachs.org/discover-the-park/our-heritage-culture/our-gaelic-culture/the-language-of-the-landscape/ ; "Gaelic Place-Names: 'Dun' and 'Casteal'" (2017) by Alison Grant, available at https://www.thebottleimp.org.uk/2017/11/gaelic-place-names-dun-caisteal/

[161] "Scrog," *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

(67) THE SCROGS OF DRUMRUCK IN DUMFRIES AND GALLOWAY, SCOTLAND. The scrogs here persist on a hillside of a ridge called the Rig of Drumruck, near Drumruck Farm.

Scottish poet **Allan Ramsay** imagined the rough landscape of Scotland transforming in his vision of agricultural development and modernization titled **"On the Prospect of Plenty."** Two lines from the poem stand out:

*On **scroggy braes** shall akes and ashes grow,*

And bonny gardens clad the brecken how.[162]

In other words, Oak and Ash trees will grow on the **hillsides** (braes) where **scrogs** once grew, and beautiful gardens will cover the hollows that once were filled with ferns (bracken) and wild growth.

This emphasizes two themes we saw in the last section:

1) scrogs growing wild on hillsides; and

2) the long-running tension between nature and agricultural development.

Some poems even highlight the thick, tangled character of scrogs that made them useful as natural fencing.

(68) BLACKTHORN TUNNEL. Blackthorn shrubs and trees like these frequently form thickets in scrogs.

Ulster-Scots poet **Robert Huddleston** describes a rural journey through the countryside as:

*Ower the dyke an' through the **scrogs**.*[163]

"Ower the dyke" means over a low wall of stone or turf used to divide fields or make enclosures.

These lines reflect scrogs as the border between cultivated farmland and wild wooded areas beyond.

Some writings associate the scrogs with the birds or other animals often found there. Scottish writer **David Davidson** of Galloway waxes poetic in his prose about the beauty of the seasons.[164] In one line, he writes:

---

[162] "On the Prospect of Plenty," in *The Works of Allan Ramsay* (1853) Vol. 1, at pages 163-171, "scrog" reference at page 170. Available on the Internet Archive: https://dn790002.ca.archive.org/0/items/worksofallanrams01rams/worksofallanrams01rams.pdf

[163] "Doddery Willowaim" in *A Collection of Poems and Songs, on rural subjects* (1844) by Robert Huddleston, pages 13-51, at page 24, available at https://www.ulster.ac.uk/__data/assets/pdf_file/0009/609345/Huddlestone-a-collection-of-poems-and-songs-on-rural-subjects-web.pdf

[164] *Thoughts on the Seasons, etc.* (1789) by David Davidson.

*Frae 'mang the **scroggs**, the **yorlins** fly in cluds.*[165]

In modern terms, this means that from among the scroggs, the Yorlins [Yellowhammers] fly in clouds.

(69) YELLOWHAMMER (*EMBERIZA CITRINELLA*). Known as the Yorlin in old Scots, these birds love to nest in scrogs.

The thick, thorny branches abundant in scrogs make great nesting areas for Yellowhammers and other birds. Birds' preference for scrogs as nesting sites did not escape the notice of Scottish poets.

Not to be outdone, **Robert Huddleston**'s poem uses "scrog" twice in one poem. After describing a journey into wildness – over the dyke and through the scrogs – he turns to people pursuing another classic resident of the scrogs:

> *They beat the fern, the **scrog**, an' scaur,*
>
> *And tae the summit o' the rocks,*
>
> *They on pursued the midnight **fox**:*[166]

This image of people beating through ferns and scrogs highlights how foxes sneak through the cover of scrogs both to hunt their prey and to escape their pursuers. Scottish writers appreciated how the scrogs gave cover to wildlife as part of a larger ecosystem.

(70) ADULT RED FOX (*VULPES VULPES*). Foxes lurk through the scrogs!

In these examples, we see how the word "scrogs" evokes wild, untamed places where animals or even people could hide. These brief references remind us that the word was part of everyday speech and life across Scotland and northern England. However, these scattered uses of "scrogs" pale in comparison to our showcase example.

Perhaps the richest, most vivid example comes from song. It combines language, landscape, and a powerful human experience.

The traditional Scottish Border ballad **"Jock o' Braidislee"** (aka "**Johnie Cock**") offers one of the most intriguing examples of "scrogs" in song. Like most true folk songs, we do not know who wrote it or exactly when it first appeared; we know only that this Scottish Border ballad likely grew out of a long oral tradition.[167] Fortunately, several writers wrote it down as part of their efforts to preserve traditional folk songs. (**See inset: Preservation of Folk Songs**, next page.)

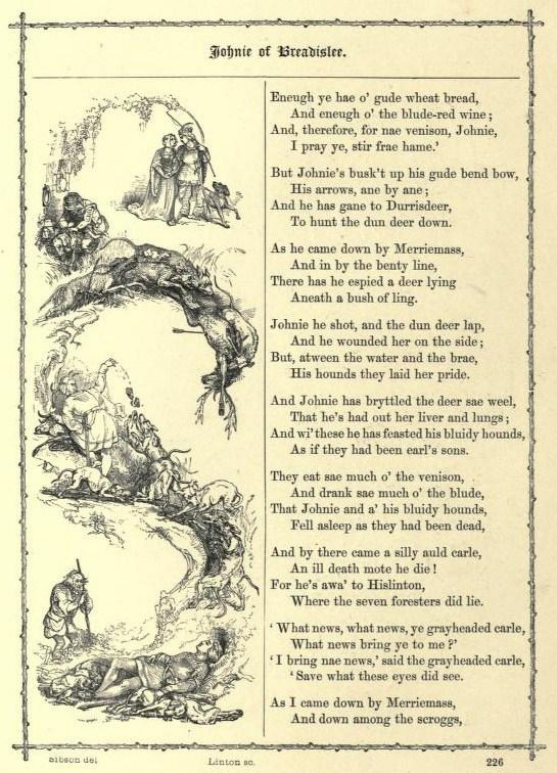
---

[165] *See, e.g.,* "Scrog" on the *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://www.dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v (citing *Thoughts on the Seasons, etc.* (1789) by David Davidson).

[166] "Doddery Willowaim" by Robert Huddleston, *see* prior fn.163, at page 36.

[167] "Johnie Cock / Johnny the Brine / Johnny o' Bredislee" on Mainly Norfolk: English Folk and Other Good Music, available at https://mainlynorfolk.info/june.tabor/songs/johnnyobredislee.html

PRESERVATION OF FOLK SONGS



Johnie of Breadislee.

Eneugh ye hae o' gude wheat bread,
And eneugh o' the blude-red wine;
And, therefore, for nae venison, Johnie,
I pray ye, stir frae hame.'

But Johnie's busk't up his gude bend bow,
His arrows, ane by ane;
And he has gane to Durrisdeer,
To hunt the dun deer down.

As he came down by Merriemass,
And in by the benty line,
There has he espied a deer lying
Aneath a bush of ling.

Johnie he shot, and the dun deer lap,
And he wounded her on the side;
But, atween the water and the brae,
His hounds they laid her pride.

And Johnie has bryttled the deer sae weel,
That he's had out her liver and lungs;
And wi' these he has feasted his bluidy hounds,
As if they had been earl's sons.

They eat sae much o' the venison,
And drank sae much o' the blude,
That Johnie and a' his bluidy hounds,
Fell asleep as they had been dead,

And by there came a silly auld carle,
An ill death mote he die!
For he's awa' to Hislinton,
Where the seven foresters did lie.

'What news, what news, ye grayheaded carle,
What news bring ye to me?'
'I bring nae news,' said the grayheaded carle,
'Save what these eyes did see.

As I came down by Merriemass,
And down among the scroggs,

sibson del Linton sc. 226

(71) "**JOHNIE OF BREADISLEE,"** illustrated by Thomas Sibson and engraved by William James Linton, from **The Book of British Ballads (1842)**, edited by Samuel Carter Hall.

The earliest efforts to preserve "Jock o'Braidislee" in writing spanned the late 1700s and early 1800s. **Joseph Ritson** provided the first known mention of it as "Johny Cox" in *Scotish Songs,* Vol. 1 (1794).[168] In the early 1800s, famous Scottish novelist, poet, and historian **Sir Walter Scott** published it in his book titled *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border.*[169] **Robert Chambers** recorded it in *The Scottish Ballads* (1829).[170]

Later, more comprehensive efforts to collect folk songs like the **Child Ballads** and the **Roud Folk Song Index** also included "Jock o' Braidislee."

Harvard professor **Francis James Child** (1825-1896) published a scholarly collection of 305 ballads in ten parts between 1882 and 1898 as *The English and Scottish Popular Ballads.*[171] "**Jock o' Braidislee**" appears as **Number 114** in the **Child Ballads**.[172]

Steve Roud, a former librarian, began his **Roud Folk Song Index** in the 1970s. His index works as an aid that groups all known variants of a song under a single unique identifier, known as the Roud Number.[173] "**Jock o'Braidislee**" is **Roud Number 69** in the Roud Folk Index.[174]

---

[168] "A Historical Essay on Scotish Song" by Joseph Ritson, in *Scotish Song in Two Volumes* (1794), Vol. 1, at n.25 on page xxxvi, available at https://archive.org/details/scottishsongsiv100ingl/mode/2up

[169] "Johnie of Breadislee" in *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border* (1849 edition; first published 1802), by Sir Walter Scott (b. 1771, d. 1832), at Vol. 3, pages 114-121, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/minstrelsyofscot03scot/page/114/mode/2up . This was first published in 1802-1803, with multiple editions later. This song version also refers to **"hazel bush"** and **"slae-thorn tree" (Blackthorn)** at p. 120.

[170] *The Scottish Ballads* (1829), by Robert Chambers, at pages 181-186, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/scottishballads01cham/mode/2up?ref=ol

[171] "Child Ballads" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Child_Ballads

[172] *English and Scottish Popular Ballads* (c1904) by Francis James Child, available at https://archive.org/details/englishscottishp1904chil (No. 114, "Johnie Cock," at pages 240-244).

[173] "Roud Folk Song Index" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roud_Folk_Song_Index

[174] The Roud Folk Song Index can be found online on the Vaughan Williams Memorial Library (VWML) website, maintained by the English Folk Dance and Song Society (EFDSS). Help page for Roud Indexes: https://www.efdss.org/vwml-catalogues-and-indexes/vwml-help/roud-indexes-help . The results for Roud No. 69 include many variants of "Jock o'Braidislie" and "Johnie Cock": https://archives.vwml.org/search/all:single[folksong-broadside-books]/0_50/all/score_desc/extended-roudNo_tr%3A69

(72) "JOHNNY OF BRAIDISLEE" (1872) by English painter Samuel Edmund Waller (1853-1903).

"Jock o' Braidislee" tells a classic border outlaw tale: a bold young hunter kills a deer in a nobleman's forest, blatantly disregarding strict laws against poaching.

In the song, the outlaw hero (Jock or Johnnie) kills a deer with his trusty bow and arrow, assisted by his two loyal greyhounds. After the hunt, he and his dogs eat the venison from the deer. He hunts deer for food, not for sport. Then, he lays to sleep beside his greyhounds.

An old man spies him sleeping between his two dogs. The old man reports Jock to the foresters charged with law enforcement for the landowner. Outraged, the foresters leap into action.

The foresters arrive on the scene and get into a deadly fight with Jock. The outlaw hero kills all but one of the foresters. The last forester manages to survive, but Jock gives him several broken bones to take back home as "tidings."

By the end of the fight between Jock and all the foresters, both of Jock's greyhounds die, Jock's bow is broken, and Jock sustains serious wounds from the foresters' arrows.[175] The song variants differ on whether Jock dies.

(73) THE LYNE WATER VALLEY. This view to the south captures the rugged mystique of the Scottish Borders. The Land of Scrogges sits about 2.5 miles (4 km) southeast of the camera (forward and to the left, out of frame).

Like many Scottish Border ballads, it combines vivid landscape imagery with themes of defiance, loyalty, and the harsh realities of frontier life. Its dark intensity can be heard in recordings such as Scottish folk group **The Corries**' performance of "Jock O' Braidislee" on their album "Barrett's Privateers" (1987).

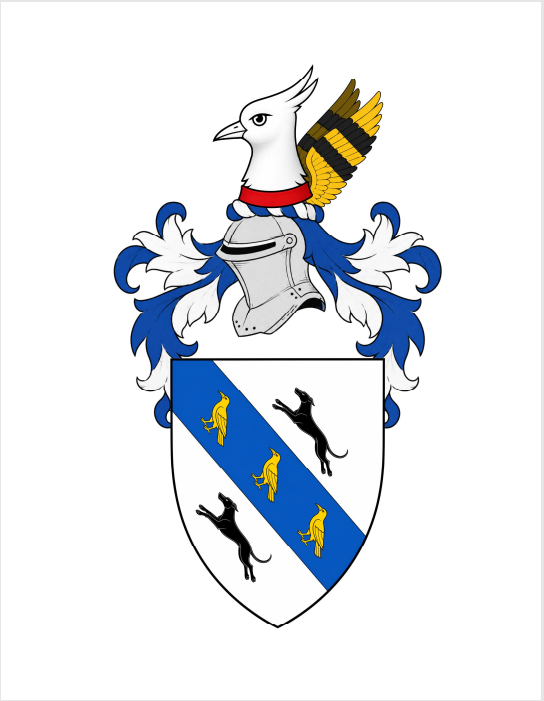
In one verse, the ballad places the hero resting quietly among the brush, between his two dogs:

> *Doun among yon* ***scroggs***
> *Well, there I spied the bonniest youth*
> *Lyin sleepin atween twa dugs, twa dugs*

This verse gives us a striking image. The tangled scrub provides shelter and concealment while Jock lies sleeping between his two faithful greyhounds. Curiously, the image of two greyhounds also evokes thoughts of the Scroggs/Scruggs coat of arms. (**See inset: Jock o' Braidislee & the Scruggs Coat of Arms**, next page.)

[175] "Jock O' Braidislee" as played by The Corries on their 1987 album "Barrett's Privateers," from Genius Lyrics: https://genius.com/The-corries-jock-o-braidislee-lyrics

JOCK O'BRAIDISLEE & THE SCRUGGS COAT OF ARMS



(74) COAT OF ARMS attributed to the Scrugges and Scroggs family of **Bedfordshire (Traditional).**

The ballad presents some intrigue for those of us with the Scroggs or Scruggs surname.

The traditional coat of arms associated with the Scroggs and Scrugges family features **two greyhounds** – an image that echoes the scene in the song.

Even more intriguingly, the same coat of arms also features **three birds** on the shield and **one bird** on the crest,[176] while one alternate title of the ballad refers to its hero as **"Johnnie o' Cock."**

At present, there is **no historical evidence linking the Scroggs family, the coat of arms, the ballad, or its characters**. The parallels may be entirely coincidental.

Still, such echoes are difficult not to notice, and they add a touch of mystery to the cultural landscape surrounding the word "scrogs."

The word "scroggs" here[177] in "Jock o' Braidislee" perfectly reflects the ecological meaning discussed in the previous section: rough brushwood or young woodland growing thick enough to conceal a hunter and his dogs. These tangled patches of scrub – what modern ecologists might call an edge habitat or pioneer woodland – were common in the working landscapes of the Scottish Borders.

[176] In the **Bedfordshire** version, the three birds on the shield are **Cornish Choughs** (members of the crow family) and the bird on the crest is a **Pewit (Northern Lapwing).** In the **Hertfordshire** version, the three birds on the shield are **Pewits (Northern Lapwings)** and the bird on the crest is a **Stork**. *See, e.g.*; ***The Visitations of Bedfordshire****, Annis Domini 1566, 1582, and 1634* (1884) by William Harvey, Robert Cooke, George Owen, Sir Richard St. George (Publication of the Harleian Society), at pages 154 and 195, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/visitationsofbed1921harv/mode/2up ; ***The Visitations of Hertfordshire****, 1572, 1634, with Hertfordshire Pedigrees* (1886) by Robert Cooke and Sir Richard St. George (Publication of the Harleian Society), at page 163, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/visitationsofher222732cook/mode/2up ; ***Fairbairn's*** *Book of Crests of the Families of Great Britain and Ireland* (4th ed. 1905) by James Fairbairn, Volume 1, at page 497, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/fairbairnsbookof01fair/mode/2up . *See also* ***Scruggs Genealogy*** *with a Brief History of the Allied Families Briscoe, Dial, Dunklin, Leake and Price* (1912) by Ethel Hastings Scruggs Dunklin, at pages 7-9, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/scruggsgenealogy00dunk/mode/2up and, more generally, *The* ***General Armory*** *of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales* (1884) by Sir Bernard **Burke**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/generalarmoryofe00burk/mode/2up

[177] In some variants, the transcription records **"scruggs"** rather than "scroggs." *See, e.g.,* "Jock O' Braidislee" on King Laoghaire Irish Ballads and Tunes, available at https://kinglaoghaire.com/lyrics/jock-o-braidislee/?srsltid=AfmBOooXS0iDMPN35iXFvY4biR60JbCASzKXfXUTfc-XvA8eL6FmHWik

MORTON CASTLE

(75) MORTON CASTLE.
DUMFRIES AND GALLOWAY, SOUTHWEST SCOTLAND.
Some versions of the ballad place Jock's home here.

The song "Jock O' Braidislee" sets the scene among the scrogs of Scotland. The exact location within Scotland, however, varies by song version.

In some traditions, outlaw hero Jock o' Braidislee possessed the old **castle of Morton** in the **Dumfries and Galloway** council area of Scotland.[178]

The castle ruins match the romantic yet tragic nature of the song.

Other traditions set the events of the song in **Aberdeenshire**, northeast Scotland. The version sung by the Corries places Jock at **Monymusk** and the foresters' headquarters at **Esslemont** (Castle).[179] The ruins of the medieval Esslemont Castle still stand today **near** the town of **Ellon** in Aberdeenshire.[180] Monymusk is in the Marr area of Aberdeenshire.[181]

Wherever the ballad sets the stage, the heart of the song and the scrogs it sings about remain the same.

[178] "Roud 69: Johnny O 'Breadislee" (2023) by Karl Sinfield on Sing Yonder: A Practical Guide to Traditional Song, available at https://singyonder.substack.com/p/roud-69-johnny-obreadislee

[179] "Jock O' Braidislee" by The Corries on Genius Lyrics, available at https://genius.com/The-corries-jock-o-braidislee-lyrics ; *see also* prior fn.177.

[180] "Castle of Esslemont (Medieval)" on Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/20361

[181] "Monymusk" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monymusk

Whether appearing in medieval charters, place-names, or ballads, the word "scrogs" reminds us how closely language, landscape, and culture intertwined in Scotland. These references offer a glimpse into how people once spoke about the wild edges of their world.

In the sections that follow, we will return from imagination to reality. We now move from reveries of song and story to the firm, rooted landscape of the Scottish Borders – where a place once called the Land of Scrogges still stands, and where the meaning of this old word becomes vividly real.

(76) LYNE WATER AT HAMILDEAN. Northward view upstream along a bend in the Lyne Water, with Hamildean Hill in the background and the Land of Scrogges just barely visible on the west (left) side.

THE LAND OF SCROGGES

Exploring the Mysterious Roots of Our Surname

(77) THE LYNE WATER, LOOKING UPSTREAM NEAR HAMILDEAN. Part of the Land of Scrogges appears in the background to the north (right) of the river, beginning about 300 meters upstream of this photo.

THE FIRST CHARTER

Carta Simōis de Sc°ggis

(Charter of Simon de Scrogges)

To…

Simōi fit Robi de Sc°ggas

(Simon, son of Robert de Scrogges)

For…

tram de Sc°ggef

(the Land of Scrogges)

> "Families are like branches on a tree. We grow in different directions yet our roots remain as one."
>
> – Unknown

Where Does Our Surname Come From?

Our shared interest in family and genealogy springs forth from humanity's essential questions: Who are we? Where do we come from? Where are we going? People have asked themselves these key questions since the dawn of humanity itself. The question "where does our surname come from?" taps into this sacred query into the mysteries of life.

For the Scroggs and Scruggs surnames, our origin story runs like a river through the rugged Highlands, verdant glens, and rolling hills of Scotland – land of mist and mystery.

The first known written record of Scrogges arose during the High Medieval Era in the historic county of Peeblesshire, Scotland (now the Scottish Borders council area). George F. Black's *Surnames of Scotland* offers us this first glimpse of our origins through the mist: a land grant for the Land of Scrogges from

David de Lyne to Simon, son of Robert de Scrogges – the first known mention of Scroggs in recorded history.[182]

As the potential headwater source for the river of our Scroggs and Scruggs surname, Black points us to the ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis*** (aka the ***REG***).[183] The *REG* contains foundation documents, property charters, and legal records for the Diocese of Glasgow, Scotland from the 1100s to the Scottish Reformation in the 1500s. The vast majority of those were written in medieval Latin. And here we find our second lock.

In the first section, we unlocked a dry dictionary definition for "scrog" to discover a vivid landscape teeming with magnificent flora and fauna. Here, we find something similar. On the surface, four charters in medieval Latin seem so uninviting. But if we can open that lock, we can find a common origin story bursting with life, beauty, and meaning. We can find one of the earliest families to bear the surname of Scrogges. We can transform them from dull names on a page to real people living in a real landscape. We can appreciate the beauty and challenges of where they lived and how they lived.

When First We See the Land of Scrogges

Before we delve into the charters, the people, or the name Scrogges, we will benefit by simply finding our feet and using our eyes to view the lay of the land itself.

(78) DOWN THE LYNE. In this downstream view, the Land of Scrogges, including Scrogs Field, gently slopes upward from the north (left) bank of the Lyne Water.

The Land of Scrogges lies in the historic county of Peeblesshire in southern Scotland, today part of the Scottish Borders council area. This is a landscape shaped by water, wind, and time – filled with rolling hills, narrow valleys, and quiet streams weaving through pasture and woodland. It is not a dramatic Highland wilderness, but something more subtle and no less beautiful: a working landscape, long inhabited and carefully used, where natural features and human activity have been intertwined for centuries.

At the heart of this landscape runs the **Lyne Water**, a modest but defining river that flows gently through the valley. (**See inset: the Lyne Water**, next page)

The Land of Scrogges sits at a bend in the Lyne Water, along its eastern and northern bank, on a stretch of ground that rises gradually from the river toward the surrounding hills. Even today, standing by the river and looking downstream, we can see the contours of the land much as they would have looked 800 years ago. (**See photo: Down the Lyne**, above.)

[182] *The Surnames of Scotland: Their Origin, Meaning, and History* (1946), page 716 (of the later 1962 edition); the 1962 edition is available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/surnamesofscotla00geor/page/n5/mode/2up

[183] ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis****: Munimenta Ecclesie Metropolitane Glasguensis a Sede Restaurata Seculo Incunte XII Ad Reformatam Religionem* (1843), aka the "***REG***", compiled and edited by Cosmo Nelson Innes, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up

THE LYNE WATER

(79) BY THE LYNE WATER. View from near Lyne Kirk, looking upstream towards the Land of Scrogges, which lies about 1.2 miles (2 km) forward and to the right of this photo (out of frame).

This river represented the waters of life for the de Scrogges and de Lyne families.

The **Lyne Water** (written **"aquam Line"** in the charters) gave them drinking water, powered the de Lyne family mill, and watered their crops and livestock.

The Lyne Water also provided a key property line for the charters: it bounded the Land of Scrogges on that land's **south** side and **west** side.

The Lyne Water runs about 16 miles (25 km) from the **Pentland Hills** of southern Scotland, just southwest of **Edinburgh**, before flowing into the **River Tweed** about 3 miles (5 km) west of the town of **Peebles**, near the villages of Lyne and Lyne Station about 1-2 miles (2-3 km) east of the Land of Scrogges.

The Lyne Water **floods** regularly in **Winter** and occasionally in Summer. It brings life and abundance to the Lyne Valley, attracting human inhabitants for thousands of years.

The medieval charters reveal the boundaries for the Land of Scrogges.

The **Lyne Water** forms a natural edge, both a source of life and a defining limit.

A deep-cut valley once known as **Gilmimenerdene** marks another clear division in the terrain.

Another valley once known as **Westerdene** forms the last key natural boundary.

Between these features lies a coherent unit of land in the Scottish Borders.

To understand Scottish land feature names like **dene**, **hope**, and **burn**, **see inset: Hopes and Denes and Burns, Oh My!** (next page).

HOPES AND DENES AND BURNS, OH MY!

(80) MELDON BURN, SOUTHWEST OF WHITE MELDON. Picture taken about 2 miles (3 km) east of the Land of Scrogges.

Key Scottish Borders Region Landscape Terminology:

HOPE: a **small valley**, often enclosed at its upper end by hills.[184]

DENE (or DEAN): a **small valley** with **sloped sides**, as in a wooded ravine, usually with a stream running through it.[185]

BURN: a brook or **stream**.[186]

Typically, a **Hope** runs into a **Dene**. We often find a natural spring in the Hope that feeds a **Burn** (stream) flowing through the Hope and Dene into a nearby river.

Maps help us understand property lines much better than words ever can. We have the critical names and boundaries in text. But how can we locate ancient places like Gilmimenerdene and Westerdene on a map today?

The earliest known map featuring the Land of Scrogges came from the 1600s. (**See inset: The Land of Scrogges on the Map**, next page.) The 1654 Blaeu Atlas map places the Land of Scrogges right between two landmarks that still stand today: **Lyne Kirk** and **Drochil Castle**. At about 2.5 miles (4 km) apart, those two goalposts give a general sense of the location for the Land of Scrogges.

[184] "Hope" on *A Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://www.dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/hope_n_2

[185] "Dene" on *A Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://www.dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/dene_n_1

[186] "Burn" on *A Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://www.dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/burn

THE LAND OF SCROGGES ON THE MAP

(81) SNAPSHOT FROM THE 1654 BLAEU ATLAS OF SCOTLAND.
This map features "Skroggs" towards the right of center,
between Hammeltown and Birks of Lymm,
with Deepup hill to the right.

The Land of Scrogges (marked "**Skroggs**") and nearby sites all appear on this early map of Scotland. Dutch cartographer **Joan Blaeu** made this map based in part on earlier work by Scottish cartographer **Timothy Pont**.

Towards the bottom and left-of-center, the "Brig of Lym" (**Bridge of Lyne**) crosses the Lyne Water (highlighted in yellow) and the "Mill of Lym" (**Lyne Mill**) sits just on the other side.

The "Mill of Flemingtoun" at top right and the "Millsyid Mill" at top left reveal that this trio of mills formed a network.

The Lyne Mill has since vanished, but a newer iteration of the Bridge of Lyne still stands in roughly the same spot: **Lynesmill Bridge**.

Traveling upstream (upward in this snapshot) from the Bridge of Lyne along the Lyne Water, we find "Lymn" (the **Village of Lyne**), followed by the "K. of Lymm" (**Lyne Kirk**), and then "Hammeltown" (**Hamildean**), "**Skroggs**" (the Land of Scrogges), the "Birks of Lymm" (**Birches of Lyne**), "Haggin B." (Hagging Hope/Burn), "Steenflou" (now Stevenson Burn), and finally "Drocchill" (**Drochil Castle**) up and to the left. "Deepup Hill" (**Deep Hope Hill**) stands tall, just to the right of the Land of Scrogges.

These places still exist today in some form – nearly 400 years after that map. And all except Drochil Castle existed over 800 years ago when the de Scrogges family lived in the area.

Older maps like this still leave a lot to be desired. They give a general sense of location within about a mile or so. And they establish the **Lyne Water** as one of the key boundaries. (See photos below.)

(82) THE LYNE WATER. Near its source in the Pentland Hills of Scotland, southwest of Edinburgh.

(83) THE LYNE WATER WITH HAMILDEAN HILL IN THE BACKGROUND. The Land of Scrogges lies on the north bank (left side) of the river in this photo.

The charters refer to this river as the Water Lyne (in Latin: **aquam Line** or similar variants).

However, the charters do not place names like **Gilmimenerdene** or **Westerdene** on a map. And without knowing exactly where those are, we wander in a cloud of uncertainty.

Then came Great Britain's **Ordnance Survey** (**OS**), born out of the aftermath of the 1745 Jacobite rising in Scotland.[187] The military wanted more precise, modern maps. And ***this is where things start to click.***

The Ordnance Survey map from the mid-1800s cracked the case for the Land of Scrogges property lines. (**See First Edition Ordnance Survey (OS) map**, below.)

(84) FIRST EDITION ORDNANCE SURVEY (OS) MAP (six-inch, 1840s-1880s), Peeblesshire, showing Hamildean Hill, Scrog Hope, and Scrog Dene.

Hamildean Hill sits near the center of this portion of the OS map.

On the west (left) side of Hamildean Hill, "Scrog Dean" and "Scrog Hope" stretch vertically from the bottom to the top.

Underneath Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene, in smaller letters: "**Anciently Gilmimenerdene**." This unravels the mystery of Gilmimenerdene's location. (The origin of the name "Gilmimenerdene" remains a mystery, however. **See inset: Gilmimenerdene**, next page.)

This discovery from the First Edition OS Map establishes that **Gilmimenerdene** – the name used in the four charters – equates to present landscape names Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene, located on the western slope of Hamildean Hill. That aligns the old charter language with the land today.

[187] "Ordnance Survey" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ordnance_Survey

GILMIMENERDENE

(85) KILMUN PARISH CHURCH WITH ARGYLL MAUSOLEUM AND HOLY LOCH, in the Argyll and Bute council area of western Scotland. A partly ruined tower from the medieval period still stands to the west of the present building.

The earlier name **Gilmimenerdene** appears to be a compound of multiple linguistic layers, which reflects the mixed cultural landscape of medieval southern Scotland.

The first portion, "**Gilmimener–**," is the most complex and likely the oldest.

The prefix **"Gil–"** probably derives from the **Gaelic** term "**Gille**" ("servant" or "follower"),[188] a common element in medieval Scottish personal names (e.g., *Gillebrìde*, *Gillemuire*). In some places, the charters even spell Gilmimenerdene with "Gille" as the prefix: **Gille**mimenerdene.

The final element, **"dene"** (or *dene/dēn*), is Old English and, as in Scots, it means valley or hollow, a common land feature name across the Scottish Borders.[189]

Gilmimenerdene could refer to followers of a saint, such as **Saint Munnu**.

Saint Munnu (in Ireland and Scotland), also known as **Saint Fintán** (in Ireland), preached in Ireland and Scotland before his death in 635 AD. He founded a monastic community at the site of the modern **Kilmun Church (pictured)**.[190] The current Kilmun Church was built around 1841 on the site of an older, medieval church.[191]

In medieval Gaelic naming, **Gille** (servant / devotee) **+ mo** (meaning "my" – an affectionate, devotional prefix used with sants)[192] **+ [saint's name]** was common in Scottish place-names and personal names.[193]

With phonetic drift over 300-500 years, **Gille Mo Munnu Dene** (Valley of the Servant(s) / Devotee(s) of Saint Munno) could potentially evolve into **Gilmimenerdene**.

This presents an interesting possibility – not proven, but linguistically possible.

Whatever the true origin of the name **Gilmimenerdene**, it hints at an earlier layer of cultural or religious influence in the valley.

---

[188] "Gillie" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gillie

[189] "Dene (valley)" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dene_(valley)

[190] "Fintán of Taghmon" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fint%C3%A1n_of_Taghmon

[191] "Kilmun Parish Church and Argyll Mausoleum" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kilmun_Parish_Church_and_Argyll_Mausoleum

[192] *See* LearnGaelic at https://learngaelic.scot/dictionary/ (type in "mo" or any other Gaelic word in the search bar).

[193] "Meaning of the name Gille" on Wisdom Library, available at https://www.wisdomlib.org/names/gille ; see also *Scottish Personal Names (Draft)* (2023) by Iain Taylor, at pages 6, 28, 39, 101, 127, available at https://www3.smo.uhi.ac.uk/gaidhlig/faclair/cuspair/Ainmean_Pearsanta.pdf and *The Placenames of Scotland* (revised edition 2022) by Iain Taylor.

FROM JACOBITES TO ORDNANCE SURVEY

After the **Jacobite uprising of 1745**, the British government realized how poorly mapped the Scottish Highlands and Borders were.

Military movement, roads, bridges, hills, valleys, and even basic geography were often uncertain.

To solve that problem, **Major-General William Roy** began the **Military Survey of Scotland** (1747–1755), creating the first large-scale map of much of the country. His work later became the foundation of the **Ordnance Survey** maps that still help guide historians today.[194]

Perhaps sadly, not much in the way of woodland or scrogs remains in Scrog Dene now. (**See photo: Scrog Dene**, below.) The agricultural development envisioned by Scottish poet Allan Ramsay in the last section came to pass in the 1700s and 1800s. This removed many scrogs from the terrain.

(86) SCROG DENE, ANCIENTLY CALLED GILMIMENERDENE. An unnamed stream flowing through Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene forms the **eastern boundary** of the Land of Scrogges.

With those two boundaries staked out – the Lyne Water and Gilmimenerdene – everything else falls into place.

On the western slope of Hamildean Hill, Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene (anciently known as **Gilmimenerdene**) form the **eastern** property line.

On the **south** and the **west**, the **Lyne Water** forms the property line. (**See photo: Lyne Water**, below.)

(87) LYNE WATER. View downstream of the river with the Land of Scrogges and Scrogs Field rising gently from the river's north bank (left side). The Lyne Water forms the **southern & western boundary** for the Land of Scrogges.

Westerdene, meaning simply the Western Dene, is then obviously the next dene to the west, marking the **(north)western** property line. That dene forms what modern maps call Hagging Hope and How Burn. (**See photo: Hagging Hope**, next page.)

Critically, this connects the medieval charter text to the real, modern terrain. It eliminates the earlier uncertainty about the precise location. And it serves to validate the reconstruction.

[194] "Roy Military Survey of Scotland, 1747-1755: Background to the Survey and William Roy," National Library of Scotland, available at https://maps.nls.uk/roy/background.html

(88) HAGGING HOPE, ONCE CALLED WESTERDENE.
This forms the **northwestern boundary** for the **Land of Scrogges**.
Stevenson Hill ridge runs along the west side (left) of this photo,
an unnamed hill ridge runs along the east side (right) in the Land of Scrogges,
and the stream known as **How Burn** runs between these hill formations.

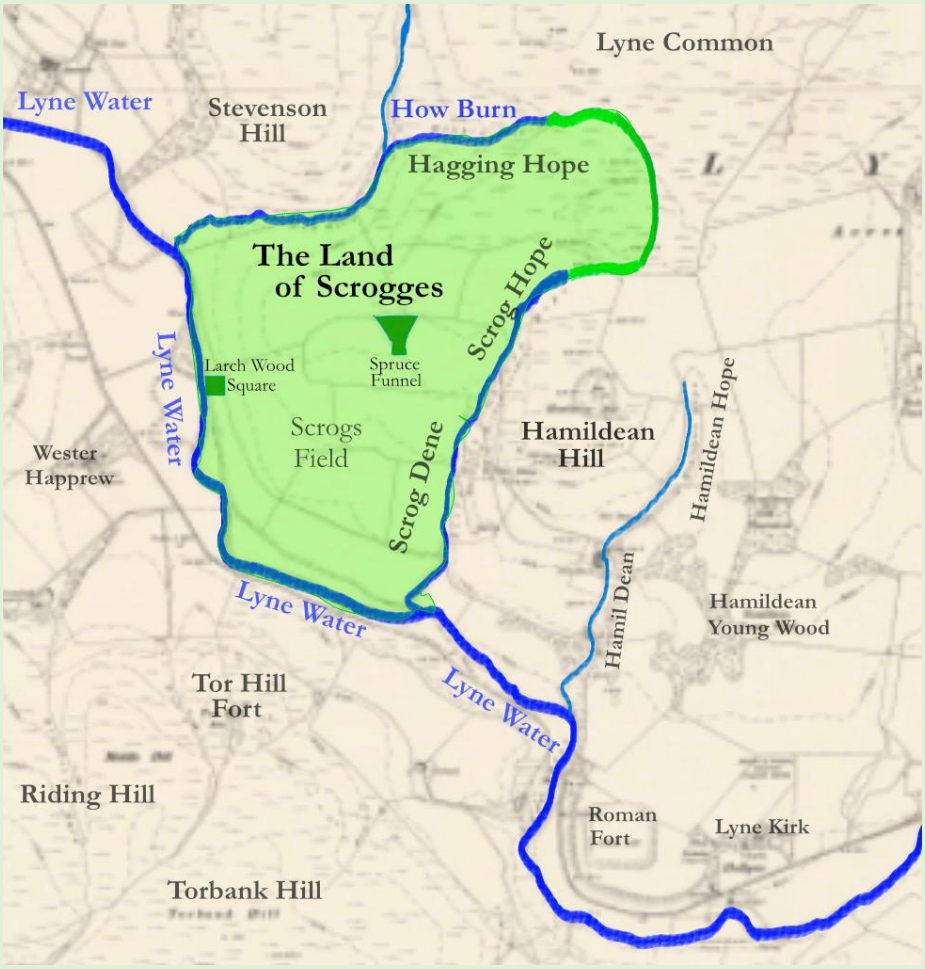
(89) WALL JUNCTION ON STEVENSON HILL. Heather is visible above this stone wall on the north side of Stevenson Hill, marking the rougher, less cultivated ground. Stevenson Hill stands to northwest of the Land of Scrogges.

(90) HAMILDEAN HILL. Southward view of Hamildean Hill from the northeast corner of the Land of Scrogges. Hamildean Hill stands watch to the east of the Land of Scrogges. Its slopes help define the landscape of pasture, meadow, and dene described in the earliest records.

Now, the Land of Scrogges comes into full view – as highlighted on a version of the OS map. (**See Figure 1: Map of the Land of Scrogges**, below.)

FIGURE 1.

MAP OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES



Historic county Peeblesshire, Scotland

Reconstructed from medieval charter boundaries and overlaid on the Ordnance Survey 2nd Edition map (c. 1888–1915). The tract lies between the Lyne Water, Scrog Dene and Scrog Hope (Gilmimenerdene), and Hagging Hope / How Burn (Westerdene), with adjacent features including Stevenson Hill and Hamildean Hill.

The property lines form a slightly **misshapen piece of pie**, with a sheep track on an unnamed hilltop forming the northeast corner boundary. This sheep track falls between the beginning of Scrog Hope and the beginning of Hagging Hope.

A photograph gives us the westward view from this **sheep track** on the **northeast boundary**. (**See photo: Above Hagging Hope**, below) The rock pile in the photo falls within the Land of Scrogges. Beyond the rockpile and foreground hills lies Hogg Hill and some other areas on the west side of the Lyne Water, neighboring the Land of Scrogges. The residents on the Land of Scrogges had a similar view whenever they stood on the hilltops there.

(91) ABOVE HAGGING HOPE. A view to the west across the valley of the Lyne Water to Hogg Hill and the forestry on Woolshears Hill, seen from the hilltop sheep track that marks the **northeast corner boundary** of the Land of Scrogges.

Modern tools like **LiDAR** and **satellite imagery** depict the topography of the Land of Scrogges. (**See Figure 2: Topographic Setting of the Land of Scrogges (overhead view)**, on right, and **Figure 3: Oblique Topographic View of the Land of Scrogges**, next page.) Natural features like the river and burns (streams) form the property lines. The land's contours explain why: the hills drive the water drainage, which in turn drives water flow at the burns (streams) and the Lyne Water.

FIGURE 2.

TOPOGRAPHIC SETTING OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES (OVERHEAD VIEW)

LiDAR-derived visualization showing the natural basin defined by the Lyne Water, Scrog Dene, and Hagging Hope/How Burn. The terrain illustrates how the land holding forms a coherent agricultural unit bounded by watercourses and slopes.

FIGURE 3.

OBLIQUE TOPOGRAPHIC VIEW OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES

Angled LiDAR visualization highlighting the slopes, denes, and watercourses that define the natural boundaries of the land holding. The terrain shows how the Land of Scrogges sits within a shallow basin draining toward the Lyne Water.

Modern satellite images reinforce this view of the land's morphology. (**See modern satellite oblique view**, below.)

(92) MODERN SATELLITE OBLIQUE VIEW OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES & SURROUNDING FEATURES (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

These visuals also clarify the northeast boundary between the beginning of Hagging Hope and Scrog Hope. The **northeast sheep track boundary** links Hagging Hope and Scrog Hope. The sheep track runs along the **crest of a hilltop**, allowing rainwater to flow down on either side of the track, keeping the track relatively dry.

Natural water flow defines the northeast boundary just as much as it forms the other property lines. The natural flow of the streams forms the northwest boundary (Hagging Hope, How Burn) and the eastern boundary (the stream through Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene). The flowing waters of the river forms the southern and western boundary (Lyne Water).

Modern photos also confirm this understanding of the topography of the Land of Scrogges. (**See photo: Scrogs Field**, below.)

(93) SCROGS FIELD AND SURROUNDING HILLS ON THE LAND OF SCROGGES. View from Riding Hill in July 2015.

In this photo of the **Land of Scrogges**, a **ridge** with multiple humps runs like a **lumpy, tilted boomerang** along the edge of the west, northwest, and northeast property lines. It begins in the left-side foreground and bends around towards the right-side background. Scrogs Field sits nestled inside the boomerang's bend at center frame. A funnel-shaped cluster of trees stands at the edge of Scrogs Field – probably Sitka Spruce planted in the 1800s, discussed later.

LiDAR images and satellite images reveal the same unnamed, lumpy, tilted, boomerang hill range running along the west, northwest, and northeast property lines. (**See Figure 4**, on right.)

ROY MILITARY SURVEY

(94) EXCERPT FROM ROY MILITARY SURVEY OF SCOTLAND (1747-1755).

This marked a leap forward in mapping the hills of Scotland, laying the foundation for the OS map.

Drochil Castle sits at top left, between the **Tarth Water** and the **Lyne Water**, just before they converge.

Stevenson Farm, marked "**Stevenstown**," lies just to the right of Drochil Castle.

Hamildean Hill, marked "**Homelston hill**," appears at the bottom right.

The **Land of Scrogges** is not marked on this map, but it falls between Stevenson Hill (also not marked, but to the right of Stevenson Farm) and Hamildean Hill.

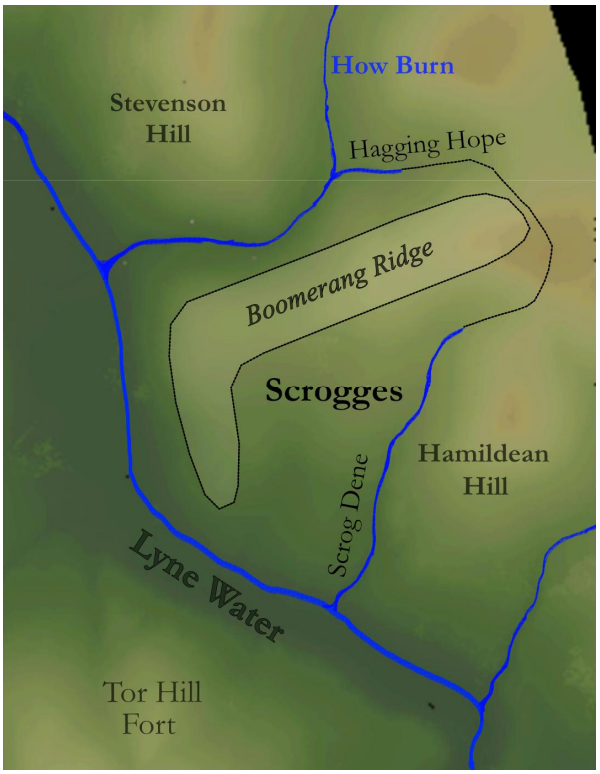


FIGURE 4.

BOOMERANG OVERLAY ON LAND OF SCROGGES TOPOGRAPHY

LiDAR-derived visualization overlaying a boomerang shape on the hill and ridge formations running across the Land of Scrogges.

Photography from Riding Hill, southwest of the Land of Scrogges, confirms the terrain. (**See photo: View from the north slope of Riding Hill**, next page.) Stevenson Hill and Hamildean Hill frame the Land of Scrogges in this photo. The lush green of Scrogs Field lies on an upward slope that runs from the Lyne Water up to the distinctive funnel-shaped tree formation and the unnamed hill ridge. The lighter green of the unnamed hill ridge forms an L shape or boomerang (albeit a lumpy, tilted one) that runs from the left side (west) of the bottom of Scrogs Field towards the left (north) along the Lyne Water, bending rightward (northeast) at Stevenson Hill, then running diagonally up and back towards the back side (north) of Hamildean Hill.

(95) VIEW FROM THE NORTH SLOPE OF RIDING HILL (cropped and labeled by the Author).

In these maps and photos, **Hamildean Hill** stands out as a prominent feature that rises above the Lyne Water Valley and anchors the surrounding land. From its slopes, the terrain falls away toward the river and the denes, creating a patchwork of rough ground, pasture, and meadow. The charters refer to Hamildean Hill as ***Holmedun*** – "meadow hill" – a name that still feels apt when viewing it in the modern landscape. (**See photo: View of Hamildean across the Lyne Water**, below.)

(96) VIEW OF HAMILDEAN HILL ACROSS THE LYNE WATER: Hamildean Hill (back left) overlooks sheep grazing on Hamildean Farm (center), while the Lyne Water runs across the foreground. The Land of Scrogges lies just out of frame to the west (left).

This area distinguishes itself not just by its form, but with its continuity. Over millennia, the river still flows along the same course. The hills still rise in the same shapes. The valleys still cut into the land in the same places. Buildings have come and gone, fields have shifted with time, but the essential structure of the landscape remains remarkably stable.

This continuity allows us to do something quite unusual in family history research: to literally stand in the same place as the people we are studying. The men named in the charters – Robert de Scrogges and his sons Simon, William, and Uhting – would have walked these same slopes, crossed these same streams, and worked this same ground. (**See photo: Scrogs Field**, below.)

(97) SCROGS FIELD IN THE LAND OF SCROGGES. A temporary burn (stream) drains excess water from Scrogs Field during a rainy spell.

The sections that follow will turn to the medieval charters that describe this land. But before opening those documents, we pause to recognize that they are not abstract legal records. They are descriptions of a real place – one that still exists, still breathes, and still carries the imprint of the people who lived there more than eight centuries ago.

(98) THE LAND OF SCROGGES AND THE LYNE WATER VALLEY.
The farm settlement of **Wester Happrew** sits by a cluster of trees near the center of this photo.
The **Lyne Water** runs through the center and right into the distance.
On the north (left) and east (upward) side of the Lyne Water, we see **The Land of Scrogges** and **Scrogs Field** rising from the banks of the Lyne Water, with **Hamildean Hill** just to the east (behind it).
A square of Larch trees (discussed later) stands in the middle of the left edge of this photo, along the western border of the Land of Scrogges.

(99) ARABLE LAND BESIDE THE LYNE WATER. A meadow makes hay in **Wester Happrew** while shadows darken the top of **Stevenson Hill** in the background (center and left). The northwest edge of the **Land of Scrogges** is visible as the background hill on the far right.

(100) HILL PASTURE NORTH OF HAGGING HOPE. Southeast view from about 300 m northeast of the start of Hagging Hope. **The Land of Scrogges** is just out of frame, forward and to the southwest (right).

(101) DEEP HOPE.
View of **Deep Hope** from near the **northeast hilltop of Wide Hope Shank**, looking to the southeast.
Deep Hope is a valley among the hills to the north of the Land of Scrogges.
The **stream** seen cutting through Deep Hope flows into **Lyne Burn**,
which flows into **Meldon Burn** before it joins the Lyne Water.
The **Land of Scrogges** is somewhere off in the distance in this photo to the right,
about 1.2 miles (2 km) southward.

(102) FROM THE SOUTHWEST HILLTOP OF WIDE HOPE SHANK. At 462 m elevation, looking to the southwest. The hill now called Wide Hope Shank helps to form Deep Hope. Wide Hope Shank may have once been called **Deep Hope Hill**, pictured on the 1654 Blaeu Atlas map.

(103) FROM THE NORTHEAST HILLTOP OF WIDE HOPE SHANK. At 465 m elevation, looking to the southwest. The **Land of Scrogges** is off in the distance (around center frame), out of view.

The Land of Scrogges did not spring forth out of nothingness, nor did it disappear into a void. It is one layer among a series of layers formed over thousands of years of history. The de Scrogges family saw some of those layers as they walked over the land. Even today, those layers still mark the terrain.

A Landscape of Deep Time

Long before the name Scrogges appeared in any charter, long before Robert, Simon, William, and Uhting walked these slopes, this land had already been woven into the fabric of a much older human story.

The Lyne Valley has attracted people for at least a few thousand years. Gently flowing waters, fertile soils, and natural shelter made it an appealing place to live, farm, and travel through. Archaeological finds across the wider Scottish Borders region all suggest human presence here dating back to at least the Bronze Age,[195] and likely earlier.[196] (**See inset: Standing Stones**, at right.)

The Land of Scrogges still holds some historical mystery, but the surrounding landscape offers ample visible signs of its long-running role in history.

One of the most visible traces of this deep past rises above the land itself: **Hamildean Hill**. Today it appears as a quiet, grassy elevation overlooking the Lyne Water. But at its summit lie the remains of an ancient fort that has been reduced to earthworks, faint ridges, and trenches that only hint at a long-vanished structure. Archaeologists generally attribute these remains to the Iron Age, a period when tribes across Britain fortified hilltops for both defense and visibility. (**See inset: Hamildean Hill**, next page.)

STANDING STONES

(104) STANDING STONES ON SHERIFF MUIR, LYNESMILL. The hills in the background: White Meldon (north / left) and South Hill Head (south / right).

The Scottish Borders region has many standing stones like these, which might have served as either burial markers, memorials, ceremony sites, astronomical calendars, or gathering points during the Bronze Age or earlier.[197]

These two standing stones are just about 1.2 miles (2 km) southeast of the Land of Scrogges. They sit about halfway between Lyne Kirk and the Lynesmill Bridge, on the south side of the Lyne Water.[198]

[195] "Hamildean: Cist (Bronze Age), Pottery Food Vessel (Bronze Age)" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/50043

[196] In 1990, a hill walker discovered a 6,000-year-old yew hunting bow from the early Neolithic Age near Tweedsmuir, about 9-12 miles (15-20 km) from Lyne Kirk. "The Rotten Bottom Bow" on the Borders Forest Trust, available at https://bordersforesttrust.org/wild-heart/carrifran-wildwood/rotten-bottom-bow-article

[197] "The Mystery of Scotland's Ancient Standing Stones" (2025), available at https://scotland.substack.com/p/the-mystery-of-scotlands-ancient

[198] "Sheriff Muir: Standing Stone (Prehistoric)" on Trove.Scot at https://www.trove.scot/place/51525

HAMILDEAN HILL

(105) LYNESIDE MEADOW WITH HAMILDEAN HILL IN BACKGROUND.

The remains of an old **hill fort** sit at the top of **Hamildean Hill**.[199] Archaeologists have not yet excavated it, but some observations have been recorded on the visible remains. None of the old fort's structures remain today, only earthworks: trenches and ramparts.

The prevailing theory holds that settlers from the **Iron Age** built the **hilltop fort** at Hamildean Hill. The Hamildean Hill earthworks are **oval-shaped**.[200] The fort near Lyne Kirk verifies that the Romans preferred square shapes.[201] Romans also preferred to control the movement routes by securing the valleys.[202] The Iron Age settlers opted to secure hilltops with a view of the valley floor.

Regardless of its origin, the hillfort probably existed in some form when the de Scrogges family lived nearby.

In the High Medieval Era, it may have been refurbished for use as a **lookout point**, as part of a **beacon warning system**,[203] or even as a **small wooden fort** or **lookout tower**.[204]

A hilltop "Scrogges Castle"? A fun idea, but highly unlikely: no signs of major masonry stone-work. And at about 100-200 acres, the Land of Scrogges was probably too small to support a large, stone castle.

Elevation of Hamilton Hill peak: **386 m** above sea level.

---

[199] *See, e.g.,* "Hamildean Hill" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/50071

[200] "Atlas of Hillforts of Britain and Ireland: SC3628 Hamildean Hill, Peeblesshire," by Gary Lock and Ian Ralston, available at https://hillforts.arch.ox.ac.uk/records/SC3628.html

[201] "Plan of Lyne Roman fort" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/image/1454526

[203] "Glossary: Beacon" on Keys to the Past, available at https://keystothepast.info/Glossary/?HER=2653425

[204] "Hillforts in Scotland" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hillforts_in_Scotland

(106) BLACK MELDON FROM HAREHOPE HILL. Southward view.
Black Meldon has two hilltops: the east (left) has an elevation of 407 m
and the west (right) has an elevation of 396 m above sea level.
Harehope Hill has the remains of an **ancient settlement & fort**.
The **east hilltop of Black Meldon (left)** also has the remains of a **hill fort**.
The camera for this photo is about 1.2 miles (2 km) northeast of the Land of Scrogges.

The **Hamildean Hill fort** likely formed part of an **intervisible hillfort network** atop nearby hills:[205] **Tor Hill**[206] to the south, **Harehope Hill**[207] to the northeast, **Black Meldon**[208] and **White Meldon**[209] to the east. (**See photo: Black Meldon from Harehope Hill**, above.)

From such a vantage point, the inhabitants of Hamildean Hill would have commanded a wide view of the surrounding valley. They could watch any movement along the river, monitor herds, and also observe travelers passing through the landscape below. The hill provided not just a place of refuge, but a strategic node within their broader network of settlement and communication.

The arrival of the Romans in southern Scotland added another layer to this landscape. Not far from the Land of Scrogges, near what is now Lyne Kirk, lie the remains of a Roman fort. (**See inset: Roman Fort at Lyne**, next page.) From this position, Roman forces could oversee movement through the valley and maintain control over the surrounding region.

[204] "Hillforts in Scotland" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hillforts_in_Scotland

[205] "What is a hillfort? … Why Hillforts?" by AOC Archaeology Group, available at https://www.aocarchaeology.com/callanderslandscape/what-is-a-hillfort

[206] "Tor Hill: Fort (Prehistoric)" on Trove. Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/50072

[207] "Harehope: Palisaded Settlement (Prehistoric)" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/51569 and "Harehope Rings" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/50039

[208] "Black Meldon: Fort (Prehistoric)" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/51547

[209] "White Meldon: Fort (Prehistoric)" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/51528

For a time, the Roman Empire shaped the rhythms of life in this once-quiet valley.

ROMAN FORT AT LYNE

(107) LYNE ROMAN FORT NEAR PEEBLES IN THE SCOTTISH BORDERS. In this aerial view, ditches in a square pattern are still visible.

The de Scrogges family might have walked right over the **Lyne Roman Fort** on their way to Lyne Kirk. The fort ruins sit about 300 meters (1,000 feet) due west of Lyne Kirk.[210]

The ruins of the Lyne Roman Fort can still be seen roughly two thousand years after the Romans abandoned it.[211] The buildings have disintegrated or were plundered for other construction projects. Only the outline and earth ramparts remain.

The Roman Empire built this fort along the **Roman Road** between the much larger forts of **Trimontium** and **Castledykes** during part of its Golden Age: the **Antonine Period** (142-162 AD).

The Roman **garrison** here consisted of a mixed unit of **infantry** and **cavalry** up to **1,000** men strong. **Excavations** revealed the Romans built the main buildings with **red sandstone**. These included a central **headquarters**, **granary**, **commandant's house**, and likely a **workshop**. The Romans probably built the **barracks** and **stables** with **timber**.[212] This implies the Romans aspired to a long-term occupation.

The Romans probably only occupied the fort for a few years.[213] This area sits between the quite substantial **Hadrian's Wall** to the south and the less substantial earthworks and timber palisades of the **Antonine Wall** to the north. The "buffer zone" between those two walls represented a hotly contested frontier territory for the Roman Empire. The painted **Celtic Picts** to the north did not yield the land for long.[214] This clash of empire and tribes came and went, but the land here persists.

What did the de Scrogges family think when they looked at these ruins? Did they understand them as the ruins of an ancient fort? Did they know about the crumbled empire behind it? Or did they picture legends of giants from long ago?

Even after the Romans withdrew, the landscape remained inhabited and meaningful. Over time, early Christian communities established themselves in the region, and sites like **Lyne Kirk (Church)** became focal points of spiritual and social life. (**See inset: Lyne Kirk**, next page.) Parts of the present structure

[210] *See, e.g.,* "Lyne: Roman Fort" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/place/50065

[211] "Lyne Roman Fort, nr Peebles, Scottish Borders." on The Trimontium Museum Archive, available at https://www.trimontium.co.uk/archive-item/lyne-roman-fort-nr-peebles-scottish-borders/

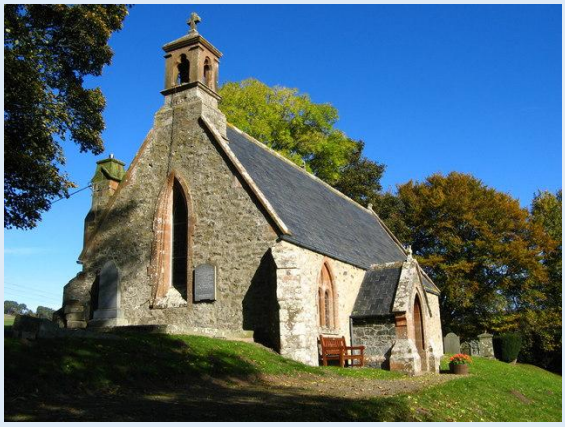
[212] "Romans in Scotland: Lyne Fort near Peebles" (2023), available at https://romansinscotland.com/peebles-lyne-fort/

[213] "Lyne Heritage Trail" on Biggar Archaeology Group, available at https://biggararchaeology.org.uk/heritage-trails/lyne-heritage-trail/

[214] "Between the Walls" on Aberlady Conservation Society, available at https://eastlothianheritage.co.uk/aberladyconservationsociety/between-the-walls/

probably reach back to the 1100s. When the de Scrogges family lived nearby, Lyne Kirk gave them a local parish church within walking distance of their land.

LYNE KIRK



(108) LYNE KIRK.

Lyne Kirk stands just about a mile (1-2 km) southeast of the Land of Scrogges.

At Lyne Kirk, the de Lyne and de Scrogges families gathered for worship, music, and key life milestones like baptisms, weddings, and funerals. The relevant parties and witnesses may have even signed one or more of the charters for the Land of Scrogges at Lyne Kirk.

The church sits atop a knoll, overlooking the Lyne Water and the rolling hills beyond.

Lyne Kirk ranks as one of Scotland's smallest churches still in use.

Lyne Kirk has probably stood here in some form **since the 1100s**, when the chapel of Lyne was recorded as a "dependency" or subsidiary of nearby Stobo Church.

By the 1600s, the building had fallen into disrepair and was described as **"ruinous."**

John Hay, the 8th Lord of Yester, erected much of the present-day building between **1640** and **1655**.

According to its inscription, the **belfry** was built in **1708**.

In **1888**, the 10th Earl of Wemyss undertook a restoration that added a **porch** across the doorway and **rebuilt the belfry**.[215]

Much of **today's exterior walls** may date back to the **1100s**. A stone church described as "ruinous" often meant a missing roof, floor, doors, windows, and interior. However, much of the structure itself might remain despite the label of "ruinous."[216]

When we look at Lyne Kirk today, we reach through eight centuries of time to see a key scene from the lives of the de Lyne and de Scrogges families.

A layered impression emerges from these traces across history. Each generation left its mark – some visible, some subtle – on the same hills, valleys, and waterways. The standing stones, the hill forts, the Roman presence near the river, the early church in the valley: all are reminders that this land has been shaped and reshaped by human hands over many centuries.

By the time the name de Scrogges appears in the medieval charters, this landscape was already ancient. The families recorded in those documents were not

[215] "History of Lyne Kirk" by Friends of Lyne Kirk, available at https://www.friendsoflynekirk.com/history-of-lyne-kirk

[216] *See, e.g.,* "Eassie Old Church" (near the village of Eassie in Angus, Scotland) on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eassie_Old_Church

pioneers entering an untouched wilderness. They were participants in a long and storied relationship between people and place.

In this way, the Land of Scrogges carries a quiet continuity. The same features that drew people here in the Bronze and Iron Ages – the water, the shelter, the workable ground – continued to shape life in the medieval period, and still do today.

(109) LYNE ROMAN FORT AND SURROUNDING AREA. The square-shaped remains of the fort's earthwork trenches are best seen from above. This photo came from a drone camera (courtesy of **John Reid** at the **Trimontium Museum**).

(110) LYNE ROMAN FORT. View from the southeast corner of the fort, where the defensive ditch is still visible. Torbank Hill stands over the background.

(111) LYNE WATER AND ROMAN FORT SITE. The Lyne Water runs through the left side and center foreground of the photo. The Roman Fort rests atop the light green, flat, grassy plateau shelf near the center left of the photo, with dark green of mostly Gorse along the plateau's slope on left.

(112) STANDING STONES ON SHERIFF MUIR. Probably from the Bronze Age or earlier. These may have been used as burial markers, memorials, ceremony sites, astronomical calendars, or gathering points.

(113) SHERIFF MUIR. The standing stones in the photo above watch over this open moorland (muir) that lies between the Lyne Water and River Tweed, about 1-2 miles (3 km) southeast of the Land of Scrogges. Sheriff Muir falls between Lyne Kirk and the Lynesmill Bridge, on the south side of the Lyne Water and the north side of the River Tweed.

(114) HILLFORT ON TOR HILL. Elevation: 325 m. The outline of an Iron Age fort can just be seen in the grass and heather. These hillfort ruins overlook the Land of Scrogges, which lies about 1,600 feet (500 m) to the north – just out of frame to the right of this picture.

With the land established in form and history, our investigation turns to the documents that first give it a name. The charters represent just one chapter in a much longer story. But now the story told by those charters unfolds.

The Four Charters

From Landscape to Document

Now we turn to the medieval charters. We have walked the land. We have seen the river, the hills, and the valleys that define the place called the Land of Scrogges. We have traced the layers of history that stretch back long before our surname appears in written records. Now, the charters that first record that name tell their tale.

(115) THE LYNE WATER NEAR LYNE KIRK. Looking downstream from the north bank, about 1,600 feet (500 m) east of Lyne Kirk. Late May.

These documents – four charters preserved in the *Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis* – could be the earliest surviving written references to Scrogges.[217] At first glance, they appear dry and distant: lines of Latin text, written in a formal legal style, concerned with land, rights, and obligations. But like the dictionary definition of "scrog" in the first section, these charters contain far more than first meets the eye. If we take the time to understand them, they allow us to glimpse real people, real decisions, and a real place in the late 1100s and early 1200s. They can bring the first known Scrogges family to life.

WHY LATIN?

The people granting the land probably spoke varieties of Northumbrian English, early Scots, Gaelic, residual Cumbric, or even some Norman French. However, the charters were written in Latin because that was the legal language of medieval era Europe.

What is a Medieval Charter?

At its core, a medieval charter is a legal document. It recorded the transfer or confirmation of land, rights, or privileges between various individuals or institutions. Long before modern deeds, registries, and standardized records, charters served as the key method of documenting ownership and authority.[218]

Most of the charters from medieval Scotland were written in Latin, the language of law and the Church.[219] While the wording often follows familiar patterns, each charter contains key elements:

- the **grantor** (the person giving land or rights);
- the **grantee** (the person receiving them);
- a description of the **land or rights involved**;
- a list of **witnesses**;
- and sometimes references to **boundaries** or **landmarks**.

Although formal in structure, these documents were rooted in everyday realities. They reflected the relationships between families, obligations to lords

[217] ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis:*** *Munimenta Ecclesie Metropolitane Glasguensis a Sede Restaurata Seculo Incunte XII Ad Reformatam Religionem* (1843), edited and compiled by Cosmo Nelson Innes, at pages 73-77, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/page/72/mode/2up

[218] "Signed & Sealed: The Rise of the Charter in Medieval Scotland" on Scottish Charters (University of Guelph), available at https://scottishcharters.lib.uoguelph.ca/exhibits/show/signedsealed

[219] "Latin Charters and the Use of Gaelic in Scotland in the Twelfth Century" (2023) by Dauvit Broun (University of Glasgow), *Cambrian Medieval Celtic Studies*, 86, pages 1-27, at page 2, available at https://eprints.gla.ac.uk/307482/4/307482.pdf

and the Church, and the practical use of land.[220] In this way, charters serve as both legal instruments and windows into lived experience.

The People Behind the Charters

Before looking at the documents themselves, it helps to know the cast of characters who appear in them.

Simon de Scrogges stands at the center of the story: one of the earliest known individuals directly associated with the land bearing the name Scrogges. He appears as the recipient of the initial land grants and plays a key role in the transactions recorded in the later charters.

Simon's father **Robert de Scrogges** died before the first charter and probably held the land before Simon. (**See inset: How Did Robert de Scrogges Die?**, next page.) Robert does not make a particularly prominent appearance in the surviving documents, but his position as father suggests he may have been the earlier head of the family associated with this land.

(116) SOUTHWARD VIEW TOWARD HAMILDEAN HILL FROM THE LAND OF SCROGGES. Photo taken at an elevation of 398 m from a spot about 100 feet (30 m) west of the sheep track that marks the northeast property boundary for the Land of Scrogges. That sheep track is out of frame to the left in this photo. Past the pile of rocks (possibly deposited by a glacier), the patchy brown and green hilltop cap of Hamildean Hill (elevation: 386 m) edges into view, with some faint lines in the earth suggesting traces of the old hill fort. Beyond Hamildean Hill, in the distance, the hills around Stobo form the horizon lines.

[220] "Medieval primary sources – Seminar II: Charters, Cartularies and Other Administrative Records," via Lancaster University, available at https://www.lancaster.ac.uk/staff/haywardp/hist424/seminars/02.htm

HOW DID ROBERT DE SCROGGES DIE?

(117). THE BATTLE OF INAB (ARD AL-HATIM), FROM ***PASSAGES D'OUTREMER*** by Jean Colombe (with text by Sebastien Momerot), dated to the 14th century. The Battle of Inab in 1149 was part of the Second Crusade.[221]

In the **first charter**, **David de Lyne declares** that he gave the Land of Scrogges to Simon de Scrogges freely, recognizing that **Simon's father lost his life in David's service.** Towards the end of the first charter, just before the witness list, he uses the phrase **Et ideo** (and therefore) **tam libe(r)e** (so freely) **hanc terram de Scrogges dedi** (I have given this Land of Scrogges) **quam** (as / just as / in proportion as) **pater suus** (his father) **vitam suam perdidit** (lost his life) **in meo servicio** (in my service).

David de Lyne's son Robert restates this with similar language towards the end of the second charter.

The charters seem to use the word **quam** here as something comparative rather than causal. They suggest an honor-based justification of the generous land grant to Simon, a recognition, but not necessarily "because" – cause-and-effect.

The charters clearly state Robert de Scrogges died in service to David de Lyne before the first charter, but the exact nature of his death remains ambiguous. Interestingly, the first two charters use the same root word **servicio** (service) to lay out Simon's military obligations: **ad forinseca regis servicia facienda** (to perform the king's foreign services). However, the broader context of "service" used for the death of Robert de Scrogges opens a wider range of possibilities. It could have been military service, but it might have been another form of service: household service, administrative duty, or escort duty.

Could Robert de Scrogges have died in the **Crusades**? Probably not. The first charter (1164-1174) falls squarely between the Second Crusade (1147-1149) and the Third Crusade (1189-1192).[222] Crusaders tended to be wealthier nobles who could afford to leave their land for months at a time.[223] As discussed later, the Land of Scrogges was a respectable holding, but not large enough to suggest such wealth.

Robert de Scrogges certainly **could have** died in **military service**. The conflict-ridden Scottish Borders area provided ample opportunities for military deaths around 1160-1175, including: the "**revolt of the earls**" against King Malcolm IV of Scotland (1160s);[224] Scottish King **William the Lion**'s ill-fated support for the 1173-1174 "**Great Revolt**" against Henry II of England, including William's defeat at the **Battle of Alnwick** (1174);[225] and ongoing Scottish Border skirmishes between the English and the Scottish in the Tweed Valley area.[226]

How did Robert de Scrogges die? The charters leave us with a mystery.

Simon's brothers, **William de Scrogges** (which the scribe Latinized to Willo/Witto) and **Uhting de Scrogges** (Latinized to Hucting), make important appearances. Their participation in the charters – in roles of consent or witness – suggests a family unit involved collectively in decisions about their land and inheritance.

UHTING

Uhting (written by the scribe as **Hucting**) may sound unusual today, but it was not so in medieval Scotland. Another Hucting appears in the same witness list, suggesting the name was familiar to the scribe.

Forms like **Huting**, **Hutting**, and **Utting** also appear in other Scottish records from the 1200s. The name probably reflects the mixed Northumbrian, Anglo-Scandinavian, & Gaelic naming world of the medieval Borders.

David de Lyne oversees this local landscape as a regional lord who holds authority over the lands nearby. He grants and confirms the Land of Scrogges, reflecting the hierarchical structure of their medieval society, where landholding was tied to a network of obligation and authority.

David de Lyne's son **Robert de Lyne** takes over his father's role in the later charters.

Together, these individuals form a small but clearly defined community: a local lord, a family of landholders, and the land that connected them.

Placing the Charters in Time

The four charters span a period from the late 1100s to the early 1200s. The charters themselves do not specify their dates. However, we can estimate the dates through careful comparison of names, titles, and witness lists. (**See inset: Dating the Charters**, next page.)

Taken together, the documents form a series of events:

- **1st Charter**: initial **land grant** from David de Lyne to Simon de Scrogges;
- **2nd Charter**: **confirmation** of previous grant by Robert de Lyne, son of David de Lyne;
- **3rd Charter**: a **land transfer to the Church**, with Robert de Lyne retaining some rights;
- **4th Charter**: a final **resolution**: Robert de Lyne grants all remaining rights to the Church.

Rather than a single moment, the charters capture a situation that evolved over time. This reflects the dynamic nature of landholding – something that was negotiated, confirmed, and sometimes redefined across years and even generations.

(118) SCOTTISH BORDERS: AUTUMN LANDSCAPE. Photo by **Caroline Legg** (cazalegg on Flickr). *See* Image Attributions.

DATING THE CHARTERS

(119) CHARTER OF ROBERT EDWARD, parson of church at Sweynesthorp (Norfolk, east England), dated 1423.

Dating these charters has come a long way.

In 1946, George F. Black collectively dated the four charters as *circa* 1208.[227]

Today, we have much more precise dates for each charter thanks in part to the work of the **People of Medieval Scotland (PoMS)** project, a research collaboration administered jointly by the University of Glasgow, King's College of London, and the University of Edinburgh.[228]

PoMS dates medieval Scottish charters by studying the parties and witnesses involved and then applying various factoids attached to each person, such as recorded dates of employment or death.[229]

1st Charter, dated **1164-1174**: David de Lyne grants land to Simon de Scrogges.[230]

- *Simon, brother of Bishop Ingram*, appears on the witness list.
- **Ingram (aka Enguerrand), bishop of Glasgow**, was elected and consecrated as bishop in 1164; he died in 1174.[231]

2nd Charter, dated ***circa* 1200**: Robert de Lyne confirms grant to Simon de Scrogges.[232]

- Between the 1st charter (1164-1174) and 3rd charter (1208-1216)

3rd Charter, dated **1208-1216**: Land of Scrogges given to the Church, some rights withheld.[233]

- Walter (*Walto*), the bishop of Glasgow, receives the land grant for the Church.
- **Walter (Capellanus), the bishop of Glasgow**, was consecrated as bishop in 1208 and received papal confirmation in 1216. He died in 1232.[234]

4th Charter, dated **1218-1219**: All remaining rights in Land of Scrogges given to the Church.[235]

- **Richard, abbot of Kelso** (died 1221), appears on the witness list. He was elected to that position in 1218.[236]
- **William de Valognes** appears on the witness list. He died in 1219 and was interred at Melrose Abbey.[237]

---

[227] *The Surnames of Scotland: Their Origin, Meaning, and History* (1962 edition) by George F. Black, at page 716, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/surnamesofscotla00geor/page/n5/mode/2up

[228] "About" page on PoMS website: https://poms.ac.uk/about/

[230] **1st Charter** on **PoMS** website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5260/

[231] "Enguerrand (bishop of Glasgow)" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enguerrand_(bishop_of_Glasgow)

[232] **2nd Charter** on **PoMS** website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5262/

[233] **3rd Charter** on **PoMS** website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5266/

[234] "Walter Capellanus" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Walter_Capellanus

[235] **4th Charter** on **PoMS** website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5270/

[236] "Richard, Abbot of Kelso (d.1221)" on PoMS website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/person/4390/

Why Four Charters?

To us, it might seem unusual that they needed multiple documents to describe what appears to be a single piece of land. But in the medieval world, this was entirely normal.

Land transactions were often recorded more than once:

- to **confirm earlier grants**;
- to secure **agreement among key family members**;
- to acknowledge **authority from a lord**;
- or to formalize arrangements with the **Church**.

Each charter represents a moment when some aspect of the land holding needed clarification or confirmation or recording. Rather than duplication, they provide multiple perspectives on the same piece of land and the people connected to it.[238]

Why Do These Four Charters Matter?

These documents are significant for one simple reason: they contain the **earliest known written** use of the name **Scrogges**.

They tie that name directly to a specific place – a tract of land along the Lyne Water, well-defined by its natural boundaries and inhabited by a small family community. This origin is not vague or symbolic. It is grounded in geography, documented in writing, and preserved across centuries.

Through these charters, the name Scrogges emerges not just as a word, but as a lived identity connected to land, family, and history.

(120) HILLSIDE WITH SHEEP NEAR NORTHEAST BOUNDARY OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES. The camera is about 1,300 feet (400 m) southeast of the beginning of Hagging Hope. View looking northwest. Part of the northeast corner of the Land of Scrogges appears on the west side (left) of this photo.

The Second Lock

But a challenge remains. These four charters are written in medieval Latin, using formal language and conventions that can feel distant from us today. At first glance, they may seem as impenetrable as the dictionary definition of "scrog" once did.

But just as we unlocked that dictionary definition to reveal a living landscape, we can open this second lock as well. (**See inset: the Keys to the Kingdom**, next page.)

By reading these documents carefully – through translating, comparing, and interpreting them – we can begin to uncover the story they contain.

In the next section, we will follow that story as it unfolds across the four charters, tracing the actions of Simon de Scrogges and his family as they lived, worked, and made decisions about this land more than eight centuries ago.

---

[236] "Richard, Abbot of Kelso (d.1221)" on PoMS website at https://poms.ac.uk/record/person/4390/

[237] "William de Valognes" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_de_Valognes

[238] "Signed and Sealed: The Rise of the Charter in Medieval Scotland" (2021) by Clark, Payer, & Wall, University of Guelph, available at https://atrium.lib.uoguelph.ca/items/1167bec6-c91a-44c5-9ef5-07f4addfaf8e

THE KEYS TO THE KINGDOM

(121) KEYS (CAST IRON).

In these sections, I referred to two "**LOCKS**": 1) the Scots language definition of "scrogs" and 2) four charters written in medieval Latin.

If those are the locks, then what is the **KEY**?

MODERN TECHNOLOGY!

The Information Age gave us the **internet**, providing fast, convenient access to vast amounts of digitized articles, books, and other records. We also have a tremendous collection of **photos** and **videos** available from websites like Geograph, Flickr, Wikimedia Commons, and YouTube that can bring everything to life in sight and sound.

Today, we have reached another level with **AI** (Artificial Intelligence), including **LLMs** (Large Language Models) with increasingly sophisticated language translation capabilities. These provided something critical: **efficiency**. They could go through vast troves of digital, online information and synthesize them within seconds. They also helped **translate** the four charters from medieval Latin into English.

Of course, these tools have their fair share of weaknesses and blind sides. These technologies are not all-knowing oracles. However, they can be powerful, collaborative partners for research.

The next section will discuss the technology I used and the lessons I learned in this project.

(122) GATE AND WALL, HAMILDEAN HOPE.

(123) BOUNDARY WALL, WIDE HOPE SHANK.

The Story Told by the Four Charters

From Documents to Story

We have now met the people. We understand the nature of the documents. We know the land where these events took place. Now, we will follow the story in the charters.

Taken individually, each charter records a specific legal action. But when read together, they transform into something much more meaningful: a sequence of decisions unfolding over time. They trace the rise, reshaping, and eventual transfer of the Land of Scrogges across what was likely a single generation.

The First Charter: Grant of Land

The story begins with a grant. Sometime around **1164-1174**, **David de Lyne**, a local lord, granted the Land of Scrogges to **Simon, son of Robert de Scrogges**.[239] This is the earliest known written reference to both the land and the family name.

Although the charter itself is relatively brief and formal, it carries significant implications. Simon is not described as acquiring new land from a distant source, but rather he receives recognition of the land already associated with his family. The reference to his father, **Robert de Scrogges**, suggests that the de Scrogges family may have held or worked this land prior to the formal grant in the first charter.

In this moment, the first charter firmly links the Land of Scrogges to a family bearing its name. The relationship between land and identity – introduced earlier – now appears clearly in the historical record.

The Second Charter: Confirmation

The second charter does not introduce a new transaction, but instead confirms the first. By this time, authority over the land has passed from David de Lyne to his son, **Robert de Lyne**. In this charter, Robert affirms the grant made by his father to Simon de Scrogges. And Simon affirms his obligations to the new local lord: Robert de Lyne.[240]

At first glance, this might seem redundant. But in this era, such confirmations were often essential. Landholding was not assumed to be permanent or uncontested. It required recognition, reaffirmation, and sometimes renewal under new authority. Feudal, social, and economic relationships depended not on a bureaucratic set of laws, but **personal**, binding **agreements**.[241]

This charter also demonstrates continuity across generations – both within the de Lyne family and in their relationship with the de Scrogges family. The charter reinforces Simon's position, solidifies his claim to the land, and sets forth his obligation to the new local lord – Robert de Lyne.

The Third Charter: Turning Point

The third charter marks a significant change. In this document from **1208-1216**, **Robert de Lyne** confirms that **Simon de Scrogges sold the Land of Scrogges to the Church** – with his consent.[242] Robert de Lyne then transfers most of ***his*** rights in the land to the **Bishop of Glasgow**, but he retains ownership of some of the land's wooded areas. (**See inset, Glasgow Cathedral**, next page.) Simon's brothers, **William** and **Uhting de Scrogges**, also give their consent, suggesting they considered the land a shared family interest.

---

[239] **1st Charter:** ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis****: Munimenta Ecclesie Metropolitane Glasguensis a Sede Restaurata Seculo Incunte XII Ad Reformatam Religionem* (1843), aka the "***REG***", compiled and edited by Cosmo Nelson Innes, at **page 73 (Charter 85)**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up

[240] **2nd Charter**: ***REG***, at **page 74 (Charter 86)**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up

[241] "Anglo-Saxon charters" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglo-Saxon_charters ; *see also* "Feudal Documents (11th-12th centuries)" on the History Muse, available at http://www.historymuse.net/readings/feudaldocuments.html

[242] **3rd Charter**: ***REG***, at **page 75-76 (Charter 87)**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up

GLASGOW CATHEDRAL

(124) GLASGOW CATHEDRAL, VIEWED FROM THE NECROPOLIS.

In the third charter, the **Bishop of Glasgow** enters the scene to purchase the Land of Scrogges for the Church. Some of his subordinates appear in the witness lists.

The **first stone church** on the current site for Glasgow Cathedral was consecrated in **1136** in the presence of King David I of Scotland. It occupied an area now covered by the nave of the current church, with parts of the earliest church probably surviving off to the side. The first stone church suffered heavy damage from a fire.

Bishop Jocelin consecrated a **new iteration** of the church in 1197.[243] Some surviving records indicate that Bishop Jocelin began "**gloriously enlarging**" the cathedral in **1181**.

A fire halted Bishop Jocelin's work. Some of his successors, including **Bishop William de Bondington** (**1233-1258**), finished the cathedral.

Glasgow Cathedral is the only cathedral on the Scottish mainland to survive the Protestant Reformation of 1560 virtually intact.

The **edifice** of today's Glasgow Cathedral dates to the **1200s**. However, parts of the building that date back to the time of Bishop Jocelin (1174-1199) and the first iteration of the church (1136) still stand today.[244]

Those ancient pieces of Glasgow Cathedral existed when the Bishop of Glasgow purchased the Land of Scrogges in the third charter. Some things have changed, but some have persisted over centuries.

[243] "Glasgow Cathedral" on Undiscovered Scotland, available at https://www.undiscoveredscotland.co.uk/glasgow/cathedral/index.html

[244] "Glasgow Cathedral" on Historic Environment Scotland, available at https://www.historicenvironment.scot/visit-a-place/places/glasgow-cathedral/history/

This moment raises important questions. Why would Simon transfer the land? Was he nearing the end of his life? Did he lack heirs? Had he fallen on hard times? Was this a spiritual decision, or a legal strategy, or part of a broader relationship with the Church?

The charter itself does not really answer these questions. What it does reveal is that control of the land shifted away from the family. The Church makes its entrance not as a distant authority, but as a direct participant in ownership and management of the land. This is the turning point in the story.

The Fourth Charter: Final Transfer

The final charter concludes the process. In this document from **1218-1219**, **Robert de Lyne** – the local lord – transfers any remaining rights he holds in the Land of Scrogges to the Church.[245] What may have been a shared or partial arrangement in the third charter resolves with full ownership by the Church. With this, the land passes out of the control of both the de Lyne and de Scrogges families.

The documents fall silent on the de Scrogges family after this point. They do not tell us where brothers Simon, William, or Uhting went, whether they had any descendants, or how life unfolded for them. But the land remains.

A Story in Four Moments

When viewed together, the four charters tell a clear and compelling story:

- A **family** associated with a piece of land;
- A formal **grant** recognizing that relationship;
- A **confirmation** securing the landholding across generations;
- A **transfer** that shifts most ownership rights **to the Church**;
- And a **final** act that **completes** the land's **transition** to the Church.

This is not a dramatic tale of conquest or conflict. It is something quieter, but no less meaningful: a record of how land, authority, and family were all connected and ultimately transformed.

What We See and What Remains Unseen

The charters give us a framework, but not the complete picture. They tell us who was involved, what actions were taken, and how the land changed hands. But they do not tell us: why these decisions were made, what the individuals felt or intended, or what became of the family afterward. We see part of this story, but its interior remains hidden.

The Land Endures

Through all this change, one constant remains: the land itself. The river continues to flow. The hills remain. The denes still mark the boundaries. The same landscape that shaped the lives of the de Scrogges family continues to exist today.

(125) THE LYNE WATER WITH TORBANK HILL IN BACKGROUND. Torbank Hill stands on the south bank of the Lyne Water, about a mile (1-2 km) from Hamildean Hill and the Land of Scrogges on the north bank.

The charters capture only a brief snapshot in that long history. They show us one chapter in a long, ongoing relationship between people and place – a relationship that stretches far beyond the limits of any single document.

[245] **4th Charter: *REG***, at **page 76-77 (Charter 88)**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up

(126) RIDING HILL FROM PENVALLA. **Riding Hill** (peak: 478 m) is southwest from the Land of Scrogges by about 1.5 miles (2.5 km). **Penvalla** (peak: 537 m) is about 2.2 miles (3.5 km) southwest of the Land of Scrogges. On the far left, near the horizon, we can see **Stevenson Hill**. Part of the **Land of Scrogges**, including the top of the funnel-shaped cluster of Sitka Spruce, can just barely be seen near the horizon, to the right of Stevenson Hill.

(127) VIEW FROM THE NORTH SLOPE OF RIDING HILL. Near the horizon, **Stevenson Hill** appears on the left. The **Land of Scrogges** can be seen towards the horizon, right of center. **Hamildean Hill** sits towards the right side of the horizon.

(128) VIEW WESTWARDS FROM RIDING HILL. Slopes of Penvalla on the left. Slopes of Ladyurd Hill (peak: 525 m) on the right. Broomy Side (peak: 502 m) is the hilltop in the horizon center.

Looking Ahead

Now that we have followed the sequence of events recorded in the charters, we can begin to ask a deeper question: What do these documents really tell us about the Land of Scrogges – and about the origin of our surname?

The next section looks at the evidence, exploring what inferences we can draw from these charters, what remains uncertain, and how they fit into the larger question of whether the name Scrogges came from the land, or the land from the name.

What Do the Charters Really Tell Us?

Returning to the Central Question

We have followed the land, walked along its boundaries, and traced its history across centuries through four surviving charters. Now we return to the central question at the heart of this investigation:

> *What do these documents really tell us about the origin of the name Scrogges?*

Is this a case where a family gave its name to a place? Or did the land itself give rise to the surname?

The charters do not answer this question directly. But they do provide something almost as valuable: a set of **clues**, grounded in real geography, real people, and real transactions.

(129) CLUES.

The Historical Context of Surnames and the Charters

Surnames as we now know them began to form and solidify in Scotland around the same time as the charters.

During the previous **Viking Age** (*circa* 800-1050 AD), some of the Norse who had settled in parts of Britain used **patronymic surnames**.[246] For example, Sigurd Olafson meant Sigurd, son of Olaf.

However, these surnames did not pass down from father to son over multiple generations. Sigurd Olafson's son could be Bjorn Sigurdson and Sigurd's grandson could be Harald Bjornson.[247]

After the **Normans** defeated the Anglo-Saxons at the **Battle of Hastings** in **1066**, they introduced Britain to **surnames** as a **hereditary** name that could pass from fathers to sons over many generations.[248]

(130) "THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS IN 1066," an 1814 oil painting by Francois Hippolyte Debon (1807-1892).

Permanent, **hereditary surnames** began to gain traction in **Scotland** around the **1100s**, starting with the upper echelons of Scottish society and trickling

[246] "Viking surnames: Does your surname show Viking ancestry?" (2026) by Molly McGee, on "Who Do You Think You Are? Magazine," available online at https://www.whodoyouthinkyouaremagazine.com/feature/viking-surnames

[247] *See* "Scandinavian family name etymology" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scandinavian_family_name_etymology ; *see also* "Viking Names and Naming Conventions: How Did They Work?" on History on the Net, available at https://www.historyonthenet.com/viking-names-and-naming-conventions

[248] "Scottish Surnames Meanings and Origins: What Does Your Scottish Last Name Mean?" (2019) by Kimberly Powell on ThoughtCo., available at https://www.thoughtco.com/scottish-surnames-meanings-and-origins-1422406

down over time.[249] The first **Scrogges** charter dates to **1164-1174** – just as hereditary surnames began to crystallize in Scotland.

Most of the Scottish hereditary surnames come from the following sources:

- **Patronymic ("son of")**: Wilson, Williamson for William's son, Anderson for Andrew's son, Johnson for John's son, etc.
- **Territorial / Topographical**: Burns (living near a "burne" or "burn," Scots for a stream), Wood (living or working near a woodland), Shaw (living or working near a "shawe," Scots for a small wood, grove, copse, or thicket), etc.[250]
- **Occupational**: Smith for blacksmith or goldsmith, Clark for a clerk, Cooper for a barrel-maker, etc.
- **Descriptive/Nickname**: Brown (from the color), Young, Bell (beautiful), etc.[251]

In Scotland, geography determined which of these sources dominated the region.

Patronymic surnames dominated the clans of the **Scottish Highlands** ("Mac" means "son of").

In the **Scottish Lowlands**, where we find the Land of Scrogges, early surnames tended to reflect either **territorial** estates (Douglas, Gordon, Stirling), occupations (Smith, Hunter), or a **topographical** description of someone's home: **Muir** (**moor**), Craig (rock), Ross (promontory), Drummond (Ridge), etc.[252] (**See photo: Sheriff Muir**, top right.)

(131) SHERIFF MUIR. Between the Lyne Water and River Tweed, southeast of the Land of Scrogges.

This historical context puts ***three key elements together*** at the same general place and time:

1) the **Scots language word "scrogs,"** that meant a wild mix of shrubs and small trees, often at the edge of a woodland;

2) the **formation of hereditary surnames in Scotland**, which in the Scottish Lowlands and Border region were often based on the topographical features of a family's land; and

3) a series of **four charters** referring to the "**Land of Scrogges**," owned by the "**de Scrogges**" **family**.

(132) LYNE WATER MEETS THE RIVER TWEED.

[249] "Surnames" and "Surnames in Scotland" further below on Scotland's People, available at https://www.scotlandspeople.gov.uk/help-and-support/guides/surnames

[250] "Scottish Surnames" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scottish_surnames ; *see also* "Burn" and "S(c)haw" on *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/burn and https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/schaw_n_1

[251] "A History of Scottish Surnames" (2024) by Guy Scott on Maryboro Lodge Museum, available at https://maryboro.ca/story/a-history-of-scottish-surnames/

[252] "Scottish Surnames: Origins, Meanings, and Historical Context" (2025) on Celtic Studio, available at https://celticstudio.shop/blogs/article/scottish-last-names

But does this really prove that the family took its name from the land? Or could the land have taken its name from the family?

What the Charters Clearly Show

The four charters make several points evident:

- The name Scrogges is tied to a **specific, bounded piece of land**.
- That land is not abstract – it is defined by:
  - the **Lyne Water** (to the south and the west);
  - a dene to the east (**Gilmimenerdene**, now called Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene);
  - a dene to the northwest (**Westerdene**, now synonymous with Hagging Hope and How Burn); and
  - nearby hills such as **Holmedun** (the "meadow-hill," now Hamildean Hill).
- A **family** bearing the name "**de Scrogges**" is directly associated with that land.
- The name appears **consistently** – across multiple documents and over time.

This is neither a fleeting nor casual reference. It is stable, repeatable, and rooted in place. In other words, whatever Scrogges means, it is not just a name – it is a name **anchored to a landscape**.

(133) HOGG HILL AND WESTERDENE. Sheep graze on Hogg Hill with Westerdene in the background. The Land of Scrogges lies to the east (right) of the stream cutting between the background hills.

The Land-First Explanation

One possible explanation follows naturally from what we have already seen in both the landscape and the language. In the Scots language, the word "**scrog**" refers to **rough, scrubby woodland – thorny growth, a wild mix of shrubs, small trees, and tangled vegetation**, often found on the edges between woodland and farm land.[253] It is not a dense forest, nor open field, but something in between: a transitional, often stubborn kind of ground.

Viewing the Land of Scrogges through this lens: denes cut through the landscape; slopes rise toward Hamildean Hill; and these form the edges between pasture, water, and higher ground. Such woodland edge growth would naturally occur in these types of places. (**See photo: Hamildean Farm**, below.)

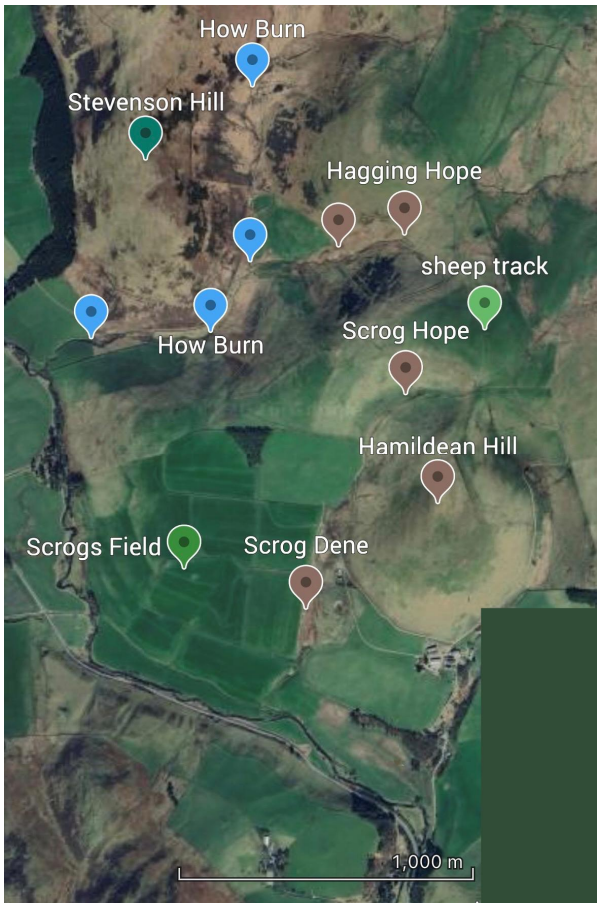
(134) HAMILDEAN FARM. View from Hamildean Hill shows scrogs behind farm. Back left: Roman Fort.

As we saw, naming a place after some defining physical characteristic was common in medieval Scotland. And many Scottish surnames were plucked from topographical features of the land where the family lived.

From this perspective, a piece of land marked by notable scrub or rough growth could quite naturally become known as "the scrogs," and those associated with it as "de Scrogges," meaning "of the Scrogges" in the Norman-French tradition. In this way, the name is descriptive of the land's topography. The name emerges from the land itself.

[253] "Scrogg" on *A Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/scrogg ; *see also* "Scrog" on the *Scottish National Dictionary (1700-)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/snd/scrog_n1_v

However, when we look at the land **today**, it does not immediately register as "scrogs." Today, we see lush green farm fields, grassy meadows, and mostly grassy hillsides. (**See satellite images**, below and right; **photo: Scrog Dene**, below.)



(135) MODERN SATELLITE OVERHEAD VIEW OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES, SURROUNDING FEATURES (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

(136) SCROG DENE. Despite the name, no scrogs here.

(137) MODERN SATELLITE OBLIQUE VIEW OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES, SURROUNDING FEATURES (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

Nor do the charters themselves specify "scrogs" as a topographical feature. The charters refer to fields, pasture, and meadows – the same features that dominate the landscape today.

The charters also refer to the ancient name of **Gilmimenerdene** rather than the later names of **Scrog Hope** and **Scrog Dene**. That hope and that dene took on the "Scrog" name ***after*** the de Scrogges family sold the land to the Church.

Additionally, the charters use the term "**Scrogges**" only as a **proper place-name** for the land and the surname of the family.

Nowhere do any of the charters use "scrogges" as a descriptive feature of the land.

If scrogs do not dominate the Land of Scrogges today ***and*** the charters use "Scrogges" as a proper noun place name rather than a descriptive term, then how or why would this land get its name from the Scots word "scrogs"?

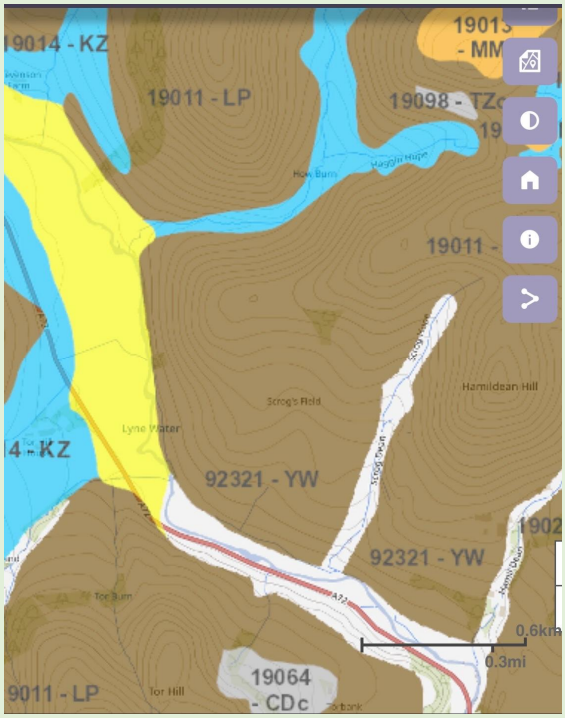
Two possible explanations have materialized in this investigation: 1) the **land-clearance** theory; and 2) the **distinctive feature** theory.

Each of these theories warrants examination.

1. **The land-clearance theory.** The family may have **cleared** the land of **scrogs** to make it a farm field, pasture, and meadow.

As we learned in the first section, scrogs thrive on slightly acidic soils. And as it turns out, modern science and research into **Scotland's soils** reveal that the Land of Scrogges has exactly the type of slightly acidic soil where scrogs flourish. (**See insets: Soil of the Land of Scrogges**, below, and **Soil Map (WRB)**, next page).

SOIL OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES



(138) SIMPLIFIED SOIL MAP OF THE SCROGGES LANDSCAPE (1). Soil Data from the interactive map of Scotland's Soils (from James Hutton Institute), © 2026 The James Hutton Institute. Reproduced under the Institute's Open Data License freely permitting non-commercial use. *See* Image Attributions section for details.

This modern **soil map** of **Scrogs Field** and the **Lyne Valley** gives us a scientific window into the land beneath the feet of the Scrogges family. While the four medieval charters describe fields, pasture, and meadow, this soil analysis helps us understand what kinds of vegetation the land could naturally support – both then and now.

At the center of the image lies **Scrogs Field**, primarily in **brown**, indicating relatively fertile soils.

These soils shaded **brown** are typically slightly acidic, well-drained, and common on slopes and upland edges. This is precisely the type of soil where **scrubby woodland – "scrogs" – can thrive**. Such soils favor hardy vegetation: thorny shrubs, small trees like Birch, and mixed rough growth.

Contrasting soil types surround the central area.

Yellow along the **Lyne Water** represents the **alluvial floodplain soils** deposited by the rivers. These are the most fertile, moisture-retentive soils. They are the richest agricultural lands – ideal meadows for grazing and hay production.

The **light blue** along burns (streams) and denes (small valleys) indicate **poorly drained or waterlogged soils**, often found in valley bottoms and narrow ravines. These areas retain water, are less suitable for cultivation, but may support wet ground vegetation or woodland edges.

Together, this unveils a **mixed agricultural landscape** with Scrogs Field in a marginal zone.

Even dirt has a memory. Long after names change, the soil still remembers where farming worked best and where scrub fought to return.

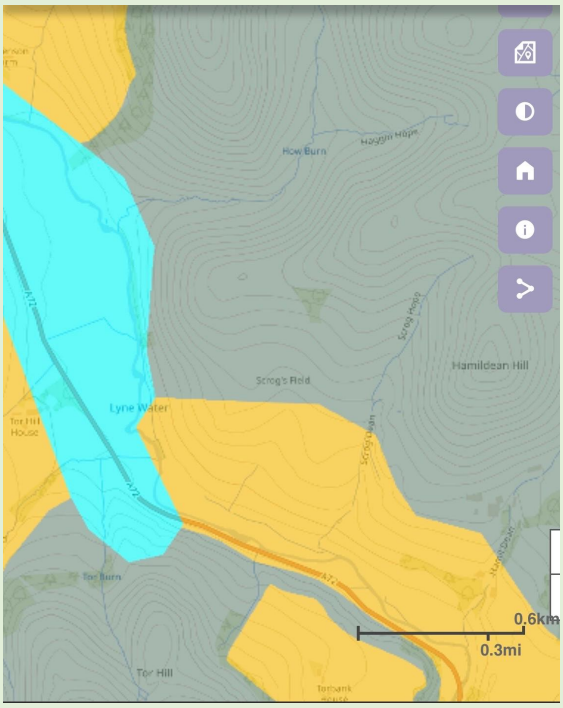
Both soil maps illustrate that **Scrogs Field** falls in an **intermediate zone** between easy agriculture and rough, wild growth.

The maps characterize the soil on **Scrogs Field** as **slightly acidic** but **still fertile**. The field receives plenty of rain but also drains well, falling between the extremes of waterlogged soil and dry, stonier soil.

Similarly, the field lies on a **gentle slope**, making it more challenging to plow – but not impossible.

Farming could expand into this area. Scrogs could also flourish in this area.

SOIL MAP (WRB)



(139) SIMPLIFIED SOIL MAP OF THE SCROGGES LANDSCAPE (2, WRB). Soil data from the interactive map of Scotland's Soils (World Reference Base classification), James Hutton Institute. © 2026 The James Hutton Institute. Reproduced under the Institute's Open Data License freely permitting non-commercial use. *See* Image Attributions section for details.

This map represents the landscape using the soil classification from the **World Reference Base (WRB)**. The WRB offers a slightly different classification system and allows us to look at the soil from another angle.

The **gray** soils covering the hillier parts of the Land of Scrogges represent thinner, stonier soils – suitable for rough grazing but not cultivation.

The **orange** soils on the lower slopes in the WRB are generally more fertile and workable, making them better suited to agriculture than the grey areas. However, they are also more acidic soils, making them less ideal for farming than other areas.

The **light blue** areas in this WRB version of the soil maps indicates wetter ground along the Lyne Water.

Much like the previous map, this WRB map confirms a mixed landscape with Scrogs Field in the middle ground.

Maps of soil and maps of words point to the same conclusion: the Land of Scrogges sat on the border between fertile ground and rough country.

Areas like these provide a **chessboard** for a long-running chess match between **human farmers** and **wild scrogs** that can play out over centuries or even millennia.

Scrogs Field and Hamildean likely hosted human settlement and agriculture in the Bronze Age or maybe earlier. For example, investigators found a **cist** and a **pottery food vessel** dated to the **Bronze Age** on the lower southwest slope of **Hamildean Hill** very close to Scrog Dene.[254]

(140) THE DARTMOOR CIST (England). A Bronze Age burial site, with its cover slab placed behind it. It could fit a crouched body or cremated remains.

Pollen analysis (palynology) provides another angle. It offers a proven method for reconstruction of vegetation change through history, both generally and specifically in Scotland.[255] The regional pollen records in southeast Scotland suggest woodlands dominated the landscape early in the Holocene era, which began at the end of the last Ice Age. They also reveal increasing signs of farming and human activity later, from the Neolithic Age onwards.[256]

However, earlier farming on Scrogs Field does not preclude the need to clear scrogs from the field in the 1100s. Scrogs can take over an abandoned field within just **4-10 years**.[257]

The human settlement and agriculture in this area surely saw ebb and flow: Neolithic Age, Bronze Age, Iron Age, Celts, Romans, Picts, Angles, Vikings, Normans. Even though some previous inhabitants might have farmed Scrogs Field, they also could have abandoned it later to the scrogs.

The tumultuous times so prevalent throughout the Scottish Border region's history surely provided ample opportunities for farmers to retreat from Scrog Field.

(141) FIELDS AND WOODLAND. The living chessboard: Farmers and their Sheep versus Scrogs and Forest.

Interestingly, the charters' timeframe coincided with the **"Medieval Warm Period"** (**1150-1300**), where a combination of warm, dry Summers and less severe Winters allowed for more cultivation and

[254] "Hamildean: Cist (Bronze Age), Pottery Food Vessel (Bronze Age)" on Scot.Trove: https://www.trove.scot/place/50043

[255] "4.6 Pollen Analysis" on ScARF (Scottish Archaeological Research Framework), available at https://scarf.scot/thematic/scarf-science-panel-report/4-people-and-the-environment/4-6-pollen-analysis/

[256] *See, e.g.,* "Late Holocene human impact on the vegetation of southeastern Scotland: a pollen diagram from Dogden Moss, Berwickshire" (May 1999) by L Dumayne-Peaty in *Review of Paleobotany and Palynology*, Vol. 105, Issues 3-4, pages 121-141, available on Science Direct at https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0034666798000724 ; *see also* "Pollen analyses from south-east Scotland" (1968, published online 2010) by W.W. Newey in *Transactions of the Botanical Society of Edinburgh*, Vol. 40, Issue 4, pages 424–434, available at https://doi.org/10.1080/03746606808685166

[257] "Reforesting Britain: Why natural regeneration should be our default approach to woodland expansion" (2020) by Rewilding Britain, at pages 9-10, 17, available at https://assets.rewildingbritain.org.uk/documents/RB_NaturalRegenerationReport_Jan2020.pdf

agricultural productivity.[258] This opened a window for developing marginal areas for farmland.

In this context, it seems reasonable that the de Scrogges family might have cleared scrogs from the land as part of an agricultural expansion. During this extension, the land that had hosted the scrogs and the family that cleared them all could have been dubbed "Scrogges."

(142) "WOODSMEN RETURNING HOME": an 1899 oil painting by Károly Ferenczy (1862-1917).

However, an equally plausible alternative also surfaced from this research.

2. **The distinctive feature theory.** The land may have received the name "scrogs" not because scrogs dominated the land, but because the scrogs are (or were) the most **distinctive feature** of the land.

Imagine living near Lyne in the late 1100s or early 1200s. Someone at Lyne Kirk asks you how to get to Simon's farm. Your answer: "Walk upstream along the **Lyne Water**, on your right you'll pass the **meadow-hill** (Holmedun – Hamildean Hill), after that you'll see a **farm** with some **scrogs** along the dene. That's it. If you hit the **Birches of Lyne** or Westerdene (How Burn) and **Stevenson Hill**, you've gone too far."

Modern photography demonstrates this. (**See photo: Stevenson Hill (southeast side),** top right). This photo from near the Lyne Water gives the view upstream as someone approaches Westerdene and Stevenson Hill. (As discussed in a later inset, the square of Larch trees in the photo might stand near where the Birches of Lyne once stood.) The critical role distinctive land features play in navigating the terrain manifests itself.

(143) STEVENSON HILL (SOUTHEAST SIDE) ON A FROSTY AFTERNOON. A corner edge of the Land of Scrogges can be seen: the Larch trees at center and the smaller, unnamed hill at front right.

In this way, it makes perfect sense to use "**scrogs**" as the **descriptive name** for the land – that feature is what makes it more **unique**. Today, it may appear as a beautiful farm among rolling hills. But all the farms in the area looked like that. Far fewer had a distinctive feature like **scrogs**, or a **meadow-hill**, or a **Birch forest**. Those distinctive features made much better names for the land, even if those features do not dominate the entire property.

(144) HAWTHORN TREE AT WOODLAND EDGE.

[258] "Agriculture in Scotland in the Middle Ages" on Wikiwand: https://www.wikiwand.com/en/Agriculture_in_Scotland_in_the_Middle_Ages

(145) BIRCH FOREST at the Sipmolvárri in Narvik, Norway.

Nevertheless, the land-first explanation and its two sub-theories have not been proven beyond any doubt. This leaves us some room for the family-first explanation and its alternate theories.

The Family-First Explanation

An alternative explanation is that the name began with the family, and that the land later took its name from them. Medieval surnames often developed in complex ways, and in some cases, families did lend their names to the lands they held. But this theory raises difficult questions.

If Scrogges began as a family name:

- Where did it come from?
- What is its underlying meaning?
- Why does it appear in a region where the word already has a clear, landscape-based meaning?

The family-first theory may hinge on either a lost or obscure origin.

Also, it faces the strong headwind of that stark coincidence: the family name *just happened* to align closely with a descriptive landscape term?

Our family has suggested several alternative origin stories for the "Scrogges" surname over the last several decades, including:

- the **Old Norse** word **"skógr,"** meaning woods or forests.[259]
    - The Scots word "scrog" could have come from the Old Norse word "skógr."[260]
- the **Old Norse** word **"skröggr,"** meaning a type of fox, a nickname for a fox, or a folklore monster.[261]
    - Some Scottish surnames came from descriptions or nicknames.

(146) RED FOX (*VULPES VULPES*). Foxes flourish in the scrogs of northern England and most of Scotland.

[259] "Skógr" in the *Old Norse Dictionary*, available at https://cleasby-vigfusson-dictionary.vercel.app/word/skogr

[260] The Old Scots dictionary lists the word "scrog" as having an "unknown origin." *See* "Scrog" in the *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/scrogg . However, many Scots words developed from Old Norse influence due to Viking settlement and cultural contact in Scotland and northern England. *See, e.g.,* "How Scandinavian is Scotland?" (2011) by Jon Kelly on BBC News Magazine, available at https://www.bbc.com/news/magazine-16050269

[261] "Skröggr" in the *Old Norse Dictionary*, available at https://cleasby-vigfusson-dictionary.vercel.app/word/skroggr

- the **Danish** or **Norwegian** word **"skrog,"** which can mean the **hull** of a **ship** or **boat**.[262]
    - For the Land of Scrogges, this would probably require a recent migration from a seaside area.

(147) VIKING BOAT REPLICA IN CORRIE HARBOUR. Corrie, Isle of Arran in the Firth of Clyde, Scotland.

- a **patronymic** surname that evolved from **Sigurdson**[263] or another name.
    - This would require a significant phonetic shift in a relatively short time frame.

(148) "GUÐRÚN BY SIGURÐUR'S DEATHBED" (1888) by Johannes Gehrts (1855–1921). Scene from Norse mythology.

SIGURD IN MYTHOLOGY

Sigurðr (also called **Sigurd** or **Siegfried** in German) is a hero of Norse and Germanic mythic legend who killed a dragon (Fafnir).

Sigurd died as the result of a quarrel between his wife (**Guðrún / Kriemhild**) and another woman, **Brynhildr / Brunhild**, who he tricked into marrying the Burgundian king **Gunnarr / Gunther.**

King Gunnar's brother **Guthorm** murdered Sigurd in his bed.

Guðrún woke to Sigurðr's blood, leading to a profound, heart-shattering sorrow that eventually drove her to vengeance.

Guðrún's reaction by Sigurðr's deathbed is marked by intense, silent grief rather than immediate wailing.

Sigurd may have been inspired by one or more figures from the Frankish Merovingian dynasty, with **Sigebert I** being a popular contender.

Older scholarship sometimes connects Sigurd with **Arminius**, the Germanic chieftain who led his people to victory over the Roman Empire at the **Battle of the Teutoburg Forest** (9 AD).

German composer **Richard Wagner** featured Siegfried in his two Norse-inspired operas, *Siegfried* and *Götterdämmerung*.

[262] "Skrog" in the *Old Danish Dictionary* (from Otto Kalkar's *Dictionary of Old Danish Language*), available at https://old-danish-dictionary.vercel.app/word/skrog

[263] *See* "Scruggs Lineage" (1970) by Margaret Ann Scruggs-Carruth, at page 6.

(149) SIGURD KILLS THE DRAGON FAFNIR.

- a Norman surname.
  - Some family traditions hold that **Schrogges** was the surname of an **associate of William the Conqueror**.[264]
  - Many of William the Conqueror's companions appear in historical records, but a Schrogges has yet to be found among them.[265]

(150) WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, as portrayed in the Genealogical Chronicle of English Kings.

These alternative explanations are possible, but harder to demonstrate. At least for now, they lack cohesive, concrete proof.

Weighing the Evidence

When the two possibilities are set side by side, a pattern begins to emerge.

The **land-first** explanation:

- aligns with the known meaning of the word;
- matches a likely once-dominant or a once-distinctive physical characteristic of the landscape;
- fits common medieval naming practices; and
- explains the use of "de Scrogges" as a locational identity.

However, the charters themselves do not close the door on the **family-first** theory. The charters use "Scrogges" as a proper noun place-name and "de Scrogges" as a surname. The charters do not use "scrogs" as a descriptive term or landscape feature. Also, the charters use the ancient name "Gilmimenerdene" rather than the current terms "Scrog Hope" and "Scrog Dene" for the small valley on the eastern border of the land. This cracks the door open to the ***possibility*** that the land (and later that hope and dene) got the name from the family.

Although the **family-first** explanation remains plausible in a general sense, today it still lacks a clear foundation in linguistics or historical records.

The charters themselves do not declare the origin of the name. They were not written to answer that question. But they do show how the name was used – and how closely it was tied to a particular place.

---

[264] *See* Biography of William Lindsay Scruggs, b. 1834 (cited in *Selections from 'Searching for Scruggs' 1982-2012*, edited by C. Eugene Scruggs and Mary Beth Scruggs Rephlo, at page 6).

[265] "The Order of the Norman Conquest: Companions of the Conqueror – Who were the established Companions of the Conqueror?", available at https://www.normanconquest1066.org/companions.html

What We Can and Cannot Conclude

Based on the available facts, the balance leans strongly in one direction: the name Scrogges most likely originated as a description of the land.

However, it is important to clarify the limits of our knowledge.

We do not have:

- a document recording the moment the name was first applied;
- a direct statement explaining its origin; or
- records from earlier generations that might clarify the transition.

What we have instead is a convergence:

- of language;
- of landscape; and
- of documentary usage.

Taken together, they point toward a land-based origin – but they do not prove it beyond all doubt.

As we begin to solve some of these puzzles, other questions emerge. We now understand the land and the charters. These have uncovered a much richer origin story for our surname. But what about the de Scrogges family itself? We have seen some of their story told through the charters, but so far we have only scratched the surface.

The Story Continues on the Land of Scrogges

We know where the land is. We know its features and boundaries. We know some of the story told by the charters. Now, the real question becomes:

What was it like to live there?

How did the de Scrogges family:

- work this land;
- use its resources; and
- navigate its challenges.

The charters obviously tell us who held the land and how it changed hands. What can they tell us about daily life?

In the next section, we will explore how this land may have been used, and what life in the Land of Scrogges might have looked like for those who called it home.

(151) WHITE MELDON FROM THE NORTHWEST.
Camera: about 2 miles (3 km) from the Land of Scrogges.

(152) WESTWARD VIEW FROM THE HILL FORT ON WHITE MELDON. The eastern peak of **Black Meldon** (407 m) stands in the center and right of center, obscuring Black Meldon's lower western peak (396 m) behind it. To the left (south-west) of Black Meldon, we can see the Lyne Water winding through the Lyne Water Valley, with the area of Lyne Kirk and the Lyne Roman Fort off in the distance.

(153) SUMMIT OF WHITE MELDON. Elevation of White Meldon's peak: 427 m. On the left side stands a **trig point** (triangulation pillar for surveying and mapping). On the right side stands a **cairn** (pile of stones). Looking outward, we see **Black Meldon** between the trig and the cairn.

(154) HILL FORT ON WHITE MELDON. At about 200 m by 300 m, this is the largest hill fort in the area. Photo foreground shows part of the rampart on the northeast side of the summit: faint traces and indentations in the soil.

Life on the Land of Scrogges

We have reconstructed the land itself – its soils, its slopes, its mixture of arable ground, pasture, and scroggy margins. But this was not some abstract landscape. It was a lived place. The people who held it worked, walked, and depended on it every day.

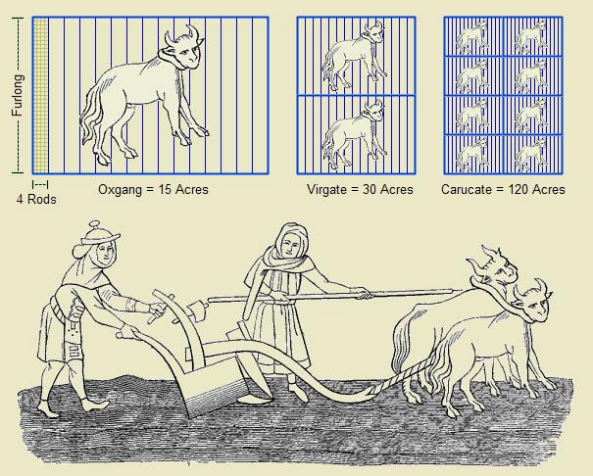
What did life look like on the Land of Scrogges?

- **What** was the **purpose** of the land?
- **Who** lived on the land? And **where** did they live on the land?
- **How** did they **work** the land?
- **How** did they **relate** to the **people** and the **institutions** around them?

Purpose of the Land: Working Medieval Farm

The charters leave no doubt that the Land of Scrogges served as a working medieval farm. As we discuss below, the land could sustain a family and produce a modest surplus. Its area and resources fell below the size of a great estate, but above that of mere subsistence farming.

The charters describe the land as a **half ploughgate** ("dimidia carucata"). A carucate (Latin) or a ploughgate (in Scots) was the amount of land that one plough team (8 oxen) could work in a year. (**See image: Anthropic Farm Units**, top right.) A half ploughgate in Scotland usually meant **about 50-60 acres of arable farmland**.[266] Estimates based on modern maps and satellite imagery confirm Scrogs Field covers about 60 acres.



(155) ANTHROPIC FARM UNITS. Artwork illustrating anthropic units: the furlong, rod, oxgang, virgate, and carucate, all in relation to the modern acre.

The charters granted more than just arable land, however. The charters use the phrase "cum omnibus pertinentils" (with all that belongs to it). They also use phrases like "in pratis" (**meadow**), "in pascuis" (**pasture**/grazing), "in bosco" (**woodland**), and "in plano" (**fields**). Therefore, even though the charters defined the land as a half ploughgate at its arable core, the land grant included all that belongs to it: meadow, pasture, woodland, and open ground. This indicates a mixed agricultural landscape rather than purely arable farmland. This landscape combined cultivated fields with rough grazing, river meadows, and patches of scrogs and woodland.

(156) SHEEP PASTURE. View from near Lyne Kirk with Hamildean Farm and Hamildean Hill in the background.

[266] "Ploughland / Plowland" in *Oxford English Dictionary* (also noting that Latin records used the word "carrucata" or "carucate"), available at https://www.oed.com/dictionary/ploughland_n

The Land of Scrogges covers **about 100-200 acres total** based on its natural boundaries of Lyne Water to the south and west, Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene to the east, and Hagging Hope and How Burn to the northwest. The 60 acres of arable land then represents about 30% to 60% of the total land. This aligns with most medieval Scottish land grants, where arable land could be the minority component, sometimes representing only 20% of the total land.[267]

The size and character of this land suggest it was a **respectable, independent holding**. Small tenants at the bare subsistence level might hold 20-30 acres of arable land. A full ploughgate (100-120 acres of arable land) supported a substantial farm, potentially divided among multiple tenants. Multiple ploughgates often meant larger states or baronial land with multi-tenant systems. At about 60 acres of arable land, the Land of Scrogges was neither a tiny subsistence plot, nor a major estate.[268] It was a **solid, working farm** with **mixed land use**.

Like most medieval farms in southern Scotland, it would have been divided into different types of ground, each with its own role. The better, lower-lying soils closer to the Lyne Water were suited to cultivation. This raises the question of ***which*** crops grew on the Land of Scrogges.

Purpose of the Land: Key Crops

On Scrogs Field, the **main crops** would likely have been hardy **cereal grains: oats** above all, along with **bere** (a form of barley) and perhaps small amounts of **wheat** where conditions allowed.[269] These were the staple crops of the region, well adapted to the climate and essential for both human consumption and animal feed.

(157) AVENA SATIVA (THE COMMON OAT), GROWING IN A FIELD.

The charters confirm that cereal grains were the main crops on the Land of Scrogges. In the charters, David and Robert de Lyne's local mill appears as **molendinum meum** (my mill). Later maps marked it as the "Mill of Lyne." (**See inset: Lyne Mill**, next page.) In this era, mills meant cereal grains.

They did not just grow grain here; they processed it locally. After harvest, they carried or carted grain over the river to the mill to be ground into meal or flour, an essential step in turning crops into food. (**See inset: Lynesmill Bridge**, page after the next page.) The mill was not a peripheral feature, but a central part of the working landscape. It tied together multiple small farms along the Lyne Water into a shared economic system.

[267] "Agriculture in Scotland in the Middle Ages" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agriculture_in_Scotland_in_the_Middle_Ages

[268] "Ancient Valuation of Land in the West of Scotland: Continuation of 'What is a Pennyland?'" (1886) by Capt. F.W.L. Thomas , *Proceedings of the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland*, Vol. 20, pages 200-213, available for download at https://journals.socantscot.org/index.php/psas/article/view/6194

[269] "Agriculture in Scotland in the Middle Ages" on Wikiwand: https://www.wikiwand.com/en/Agriculture_in_Scotland_in_the_Middle_Ages

LYNE MILL

(158) FIRST EDITION ORDNANCE SURVEY MAP (SIX-INCH, 1840S-1880S), Peeblesshire, with Lyne Station, Lynesmill Bridge, and the site of Lynes Mill (ruins) near the Lyne Water.

This map from around the mid-1800s has "**LynesMill (Ruins of)**" at bottom center, south of a bend in the Lyne Water.

To the north and slightly east (up and to the right) of the mill ruins, **Lynesmill Bridge** crosses the **Lyne Water**.

On the west side (left) of the frame and just above center, in small letters, an "**Old Mill Lead**" winds around towards the mill ruins and then gets marked "Old Mill Lead" again at its other end just north of (above) the "Lynes Mill (Ruins of)."

By sometime in the 1900s, even the ruins of the old Lyne Mill had disappeared.[270]

More modern maps show a newer Lynesmill built to the northeast of the Lynesmill Bridge on the other side of the Lyne Water.

For centuries, the Lyne Water powered both field and mill. The same current that turned the wheel still runs past Lynesmill Bridge today.

Even where the buildings fade, the land keeps the memory. The bend of the river still marks where work once gathered around water and stone.

[270] "Lynesmill" on Trove.Scot at https://www.trove.scot/place/51555

LYNESMILL BRIDGE

(159) LYNESMILL BRIDGE.

The **Lynesmill Bridge** probably sits on the former site of the "Brig of Lym" (**Bridge of Lyne**) from the **1654 Bleau Atlas map**.

The Lynesmill Bridge runs across the **Lyne Water** near a bend in the river.

To the west and south of this bridge sat the old de Lyne family mill, marked as "Mill of Lym" (**Mill of Lyne**) on the Bleau map.

To the north and west of Lynesmill Bridge, the Land of Scrogges and Hamildean sits about 1.8-2.5 miles (3-4 km) away.

The **current iteration** of Lynesmill Bridge dates to around the **1700s**.[271] The bridge is built of grey rubble stone. It has two arches. The first, larger arch spans the Lyne Water. The second, smaller arch on the east bank serves as a flood arch.[272]

The ancient Bridge of Lyne made a critical connection between the de Scrogges family and the local mill. Simon de Scrogges, his family members, and any farm hands he employed probably travelled over an earlier version of this bridge as a routine part of their lives.

[271] "Lynesmill Bridge: Road Bridge (18th Century)" on Trove.Scot at https://www.trove.scot/place/145000

[272] "Lynesmill Bridge" on SABRE (the Society for All British and Irish Road Enthusiasts), available at https://www.sabre-roads.org.uk/wiki/Lynesmill_Bridge

(160) AVENA SATIVA (COMMON OAT), HARVESTED.

The charters demonstrate that the Land of Scrogges served as a **working farm** growing **cereal grains**. They establish the boundaries and the terrain within the boundaries. The charters also give us the half-ploughgate description and the milling clause.

Knowing how the boundaries relate to modern maps, we also make deductions from the land itself.

History supports this analysis, but ultimately our conclusions rest on the charters and the land.

Over eight hundred years later, the Land of Scrogges still serves as farmland. People still plough and farm on Scrogs Field. (**See photo: Scrogs Field**, below.)

(161) SCROGS FIELD AND SURROUNDING HILLS ON THE LAND OF SCROGGES. July 2015.

A **tractor** works the fields instead of a **plough** pulled by oxen. But a quite remarkable consistency of purpose continues over the centuries. **Sheep** still graze in the pasture at foreground center and left. Some **cattle** still graze the pasture behind the tractor, to the right of the funnel-shaped cluster of trees. Evolution, not revolution, dominates this land.

These conclusions about the land help paint a picture of the people living on it. The size of arable farmland determines how many people the land and its cereal grain crops could support.

The People Who Lived on the Land of Scrogges

A large population did not work a holding of this size, but neither could a single individual manage it. A small household – roughly **5-10 people** – would have probably lived and worked here together.

This likely included:

- a tenant **farmer** or small **landowner** (such as Simon de Scrogges);
- his **spouse**;
- their **children**;
- perhaps an **older generation** still contributing where they could;
- and possibly a couple of **other adults** working as farmhands (maybe an unmarried William or Uhting de Scrogges).

Labor was shared, seasonal, and essential. Every person had a role. Children were not idle observers but participants in the rhythms of the farm from an early age – herding animals, gathering fuel, assisting in harvest.

The charters and land itself have suggested that a family group farmed this land. The idea of a family farming the land leads to questions about their place of residence.

Where They Lived: The House of Scrogges

The first two charters strongly suggest that Simon lived in a house on the Land of Scrogges.

First, these charters refer to the **house of Simon** de Scrogges. In a clause related to the mill, they use the phrase **domus predicti Simonis** (house of the aforesaid Simon).

Second, these charters give Simon de Scrogges a right (easement) for wood and for building on the land. Specifically, they say: **in predicto bosco** (in aforesaid woodland), **habebit aisiamentum** (he shall have right of use) and **terra sua edificanda**

(and for building on his land). Later, the charters also use the phrase **materiam ad edificial in terra sua facienda** (material / timber for buildings to be made on his land).

Together, these charter clauses give us a strong indication that Simon de Scrogges and his family lived and worked on this farm together. This was not a piece of property that Simon rented out. This was his family's home.

Where was the de Scrogges family home? And what was it like?

Historical records suggest that a House of Scrogges did stand on the land once, but it has long since disappeared. (**See inset: The House of Scrogges**, next page.) However, even if the House of Scrogges has largely disappeared, we can still draw some reasonable inferences about it based on some history, archaeology, and site observations.

DROCHIL CASTLE

(162) DROCHIL CASTLE (FROM AFAR).

The ruins of **Drochil Castle** serve as a helpful landmark. The Land of Scrogges sits on the northeast bank of the **Lyne Water**, almost half-way between **Drochil Castle** to the northwest and **Lyne Kirk** to the southeast.

James Douglas, the 4th Earl of Morton and Regent of Scotland, **started building Drochil Castle** in **1578**. More palace than castle, Douglas intended to retire there from worldly business.

(163) DROCHIL CASTLE (CLOSER VIEW).

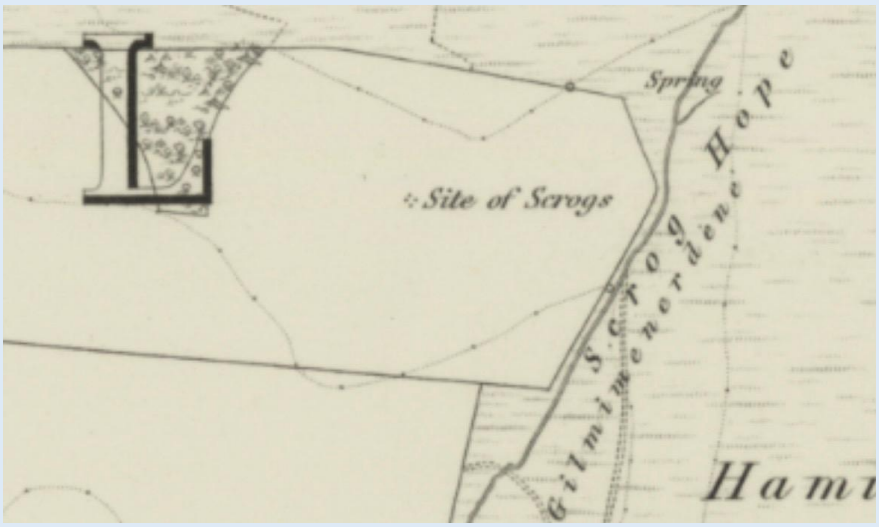
In **1581**, just three years after construction had begun, King James VI of Scotland had **James Douglas executed**.

The construction of Drochil Castle stopped with the death of James Douglas, only about half-way finished.[273]

As the following pages explain, the de Scrogges family almost certainly had a much more humble, functional home than Drochil Castle.

[273] "Drochil Castle" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Drochil_Castle

THE HOUSE OF SCROGGES



(164) FIRST EDITION ORDNANCE SURVEY MAP (SIX-INCH, 1840S-1880S), Peeblesshire, with the "Site of Scrogs" between Scrog Hope and a funnel-shaped cluster of trees.

The **First Edition Ordnance Survey** for Scotland from the mid-1800s marks the probable location of the de Scrogges family home as the "**Site of Scrogs**." It sits between a funnel-shaped cluster of trees to the west and Scrog Hope (Gilmimenerdene) to the east.

This site makes a **prime location** for a farm homestead. It has access to **water** at the nearby **spring** at **Scrog Hope** and stream flowing through Scrog Dene.

It also has enough distance and elevation from the water to avoid flooding.

The site lies just north of and higher than most of Scrogs Field, giving it convenient access to the farm work without taking up valuable, arable farmland.

It sits at the edge of the hillslope pastures. This facilitates a nearby barn where livestock could have convenient access to grazing.

According to a 1911 book by Reverend C.B. Gunn, the **stones** from the Scrogges home were **removed** some time **before 1856** to help with construction projects on the neighboring **Hamildean Farm**.[274]

By 1961-1974, Ordnance Survey investigators noted: "Nothing now remains of the old house of Scrogs … No trace of the house was found. The tenant farmer at Hamildean Farm is aware that such a house existed but does not know its site."[275]

No roof remains, no doorway stands, and no visitor would notice the spot today without an old map in hand. Yet for generations, this was likely the center of daily life on the Land of Scrogges.

A house can disappear from sight long before it disappears from the land. Field patterns, reused stone, and an old map name often preserve its memory better than ruins ever could.

[274] *Church of Lyne and Megget, 1165-1911* (1911) by Rev. C.B. Gunn. *See also* Ordnance Survey Index Card NT14SE 26 (Peebles County, Lyne Parish), available at https://www.trove.scot/image/2439039

[275] "Scrogs, NT14SE 26, Ordnance Survey index card" on Trove.Scot, available at https://www.trove.scot/image/2439039 ; *see also* "Scrogs: House (Period Unassigned)" on Trove. Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/50050

Rural houses in **medieval Scotland** were usually built as longhouses. (**See photo: Viking Longhouse**, below.) Walls were often built of **clay**, **turf**, **wood**, or **rough stone** with natural materials used for the roof.[276] Some houses had **timber frames** and **thatched roofs**.[277] The houses were usually long and narrow (hence the name "longhouse"). They could be 250 feet (80 m) long and 65 feet (20 m) wide. Family living quarters might be at one end and the animals might be kept at the other[278] in an **attached byre (barn)**. Houses might have **2-3 rooms** that served as living, sleeping, and storage areas.

(165) VIKING LONGHOUSE (EXTERIOR) AT HAROLDSWICK.
On the island of Unst in the Shetland Islands, Scotland.

[276] "Housing in the Middle Ages" (2019) by Rosslyn Chapel, available at https://www.rosslynchapel.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/12/256-Rosslyn-Article-Housing-in-the-Middle-Ages-hr.pdf

[277] "The medieval peasant building in Scotland: the beginning and end of crucks" (2018) by Piers Dixon, *Pamatky Archeologicke*, Supplementum 15, Ruralia IV, at 187-188, 190-199, available at https://ruralia2.ff.cuni.cz/wp-content/uploads/2018/04/187-200.pdf

[278] "Housing in the Middle Ages" (2019) by Rosslyn Chapel, available at https://www.rosslynchapel.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/12/256-Rosslyn-Article-Housing-in-the-Middle-Ages-hr.pdf

(166) VIKING LONGHOUSE (INTERIOR) AT HAROLDSWICK. Unst, Shetland Islands, Scotland.

Most homes had a **central hearth** for cooking and heating. Chimneys were relatively rare.[279] High-heat, low-smoke firewood like **Hawthorn** and **Blackthorn**, frequently found in scrogs, made a huge difference in everyday life.

(167) VIKING LONGHOUSE INTERIOR (ILLUSTRATION BY DAG FROGNES). The interior of a typical longhouse from the Migration Period/Viking Age. **Central hearth, no chimney**.

The scrogs could provide vital building materials for the home. In farmers' homes, the **interior walls** often used **wattle-and-daub** construction.[280] This building method wove wooden strips through a mixture of soil, clay, sand, and straw.[281] Traditionally, people used the wood from **Hazel** in wattle-and-daub construction.[282] Hazel often grows in scrogs.

(168) THE WOODEN CHURCH IN ROMANIA. Built with **wattle-and-daub**, visible below the artwork.

The facts available about the House of Scrogges align with a longhouse.

The house site recorded in old Ordnance Surveys has plenty of room for a typical longhouse.

Nothing substantial remains of the house 800 years later, consistent with a house made mostly of clay, earth, wood, and possibly some loose or dry stone slabs rather than a sturdy, masonry building built with lime mortar to hold the stones together.

When we look at Lyne Kirk or the ruins of Drochil Castle, Dunstanburgh Castle, and Morton Castle, we see that the ruins of a significant masonry construction can keep standing for centuries (**See inset: Drochil Castle**, earlier page. **See photos: Morton Castle** & **Dunstanburgh Castle**, next page.)

[279] "Historical Housing: Scottish Longhouse" on Teaching with Themes: Social History through Primary Sources, available at https://teachingwiththemes.com/index.php/projects/teaching-geography-and-visual-literacy-skills-with-historical-housing/scottish-longhouse-c-1820s/

[280] "People: Peasants, Serfs, and Farmers", available at https://www.medievaltimes.com/education/medieval-era/people

[281] "Wattle and daub" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wattle_and_daub

[282] "How I Made my Wattle and Daub Bathroom" by Atulya Kerry Bingham on The Mud Home, available at https://www.themudhome.com/wattle-and-daub.html

(169) MORTON CASTLE AND LOCH NEAR THORNHILL. Probably built *circa* 1300. Re-built in the 1500s.[283] Still standing, centuries later.

The House of Scrogges may have used **stone** for some areas like the **hearth** and possibly dry stone for the **exterior walls**, but records suggest Hamildean Farm took those and re-used them for its building projects before 1856. (**See inset: The House of Scrogges**, earlier page.)

All in all, this suggests a House of Scrogges made mostly of wood and clay and possibly some loose dry stone slabs rather than a grand Castle Scrogges made primarily of stone masonry.

These conclusions stand on reasonable inference, not speculation. The milling clause in the charters suggests a house. The de Lyne family also granted a right to build and woodland rights for materials. The history of the area suggests a longhouse. Surveyors and historians have left observational records that are consistent with a longhouse. The terrain of the land itself suggests the same location they recorded. The lack of visible ruins implies a building of mostly wood and clay rather than heavy stone masonry.

(170) DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE. Built between 1313 and 1322.[284] Castle wall masonry lasting centuries.

IF THESE WALLS COULD TALK

(171) HAMILDEAN WALL & GATE.

The stone walls around Hamildean are more than field boundaries. They may be quiet archives of the land itself.

Some stones likely came from the old House of Scrogges after it fell into ruin.

Others may be older still. Farmers clearing fields for ploughing often gathered loose stone into boundary walls or clearance cairns, meaning some stones could trace back to Bronze Age farming on these same slopes. A single wall may hold the work of many centuries.

If these walls could talk, they might tell the whole story of the land: from prehistoric farmers, to the de Scrogges family, to the shepherds and tenants who followed after them.

[283] "Morton Castle" on Historic Environment Scotland, available at https://www.historicenvironment.scot/visit-a-place/places/morton-castle/ ; *see also* "Morton Castle" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Morton_Castle

[284] "Dunstanburgh Castle" (2021) by Lily Johnson, on History Hit, available at https://www.historyhit.com/locations/dunstanburgh-castle/ ; *see also* "Dunstanburgh Castle" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dunstanburgh_Castle

The longhouse and attached barn remind us that not just humans occupied this working farm. Farm animals lived here, too, side by side with the humans. The charters and land itself give us clues about the kinds of animals that might have shared the land with the family and their numbers.

The Animals Who Lived on the Land of Scrogges

It took more than just human labor to make the farm work. Animals played a key role. Simon needed a horse to meet his military obligations (*see* Robert de Scrogges inset earlier and discussion later). Having a cart pulled by horse or oxen makes carrying sacks of grain to the de Lyne mill much easier. What type of domesticated animals inhabited the Land of Scrogges?

The charters and our knowledge of history give us some insight into the livestock and work animals on the Land of Scrogges. The charters suggest that Simon de Scrogges had at least one **horse** to meet his military obligations.

(172) THE FAMOUS "GALLOWAY" PONY. The famous Galloway ponies stood 13-15 hands high, and were fast, sure-footed animals, ideally suited to cavalry work over any terrain.

The charters also suggest that Simon de Scrogges kept some **oxen** on the land. The charters describe the land as a **half ploughgate** ("dimidia carucata"), the amount of land that one plough team (8 oxen) could work in a year. Those oxen could also provide critical help with work like transporting grain to the mill. Given he had a half ploughgate rather than a full ploughgate, he may have collaborated with one or more neighbors for a full plough team. Simon may have kept about four oxen on the land.

(173) MEDIEVAL PLOWING WITH OXEN (from a 14th century manuscript).

The first two charters give Simon de Scrogges rights to pasture and grazing. Specifically, they say of Simon: **habebit aisiamentum** (he shall have right of use) in the woodlands and **scilicet in pastura** (namely in pasture/grazing). This could help feed the horse and oxen.

Simon probably kept **cattle** and **sheep** on the land. The charters do not explicitly mention cattle or sheep. But they do mention pasture and grazing. Given the size of the land and its grazing potential, it could support more than just one horse and four oxen. And historically, medieval farms in Scotland **almost always** kept both **cattle** and **sheep**. Cattle could provide milk, meat, and hides. Sheep could provide a yearly crop of wool and, when the time came, meat and sheepskin.[285] They might also have kept some pigs or goats or even chickens, but those were not as standard on farms of the time.

Medieval Scottish farms usually raised small, hardy cattle known as **ancestors to** the modern **Highland cattle** breed.[286] (**See photo: Highland**

[285] "'Flesche and Fische aneuch': the Role of Animals in the Medieval Scottish Economy" (*circa* 2001) by Catherine Smith, at pages 2-3, available at https://www.tafac.org.uk/animals.pdf

[286] "Scottish Highland Cattle Facts: Unique cattle raised primarily for their lean beef" (2024) by Janet Vorwald Dohner on Mother Earth News, available at https://www.motherearthnews.com/homesteading-and-livestock/highland-cattle-heritage-livestock-zeylaf/ ; *see also The Encyclopedia of Historic and Endangered Livestock and Poultry Breeds* (2001, Yale University

Cattle, below.) They had long horns and shaggy coats to survive in harsh climates.[287, 288]

(174) HIGHLAND CATTLE (FATHER AND SON), SCOTLAND.

As for sheep, medieval Scottish lowland farms usually kept sheep breeds like the **Old Scottish Shortwool** (aka the **Scottish Dunface**).[289, 290] These small, hardy, short-tailed sheep resemble modern Shetland sheep. (**See photo: Shetland-Hebridian Lambs**, top right.)

Some of the sheep breeds in the medieval era may have descended from smaller, dog-like sheep with dark wool and large horns that were introduced to Scotland by Neolithic people thousands of years ago.[291]

(175) SHETLAND-HEBRIDIAN LAMBS.

Sheep still graze this area today. (**See photo: North hillside on the Land of Scrogges**, below.) In satellite image close-ups, we can see scattered sheep still wandering the Land of Scrogges.

(176) NORTH HILLSIDE ON THE LAND OF SCROGGES WITH SHEEP GRAZING NEAR GRASSY SHEEP-WALKS. View from Hagging Hope looking south-west. Scrogs Field is on the other side of the hill. **Penvalla** is the peak in the background on the right, behind **Riding Hill** visible in front of it.

Press) by Janet Vorwald Dohner, available for purchase at https://yalebooks.yale.edu/book/9780300088809/the-encyclopedia-of-historic-and-endangered-livestock-and-poultry-breeds/

[287] "The Grande Old Breed" on Highland Cattle USA, available at https://highlandcattleusa.org/breed-resources/the-breed/

[288] "Barnyard Basics: Highland cattle, Part I: A bit of history" (2024) by Heather Smith Thomas on Farm & Ranch, available at https://www.postregister.com/farmandranch/columnists/barnyard_basics/barnyard-basics-highland-cattle-part-i-a-bit-of-history/article_0817f4c6-2655-11ee-8c50-4b5146252626.html

[289] "History and traditions of sheep-farming in the Scottish border hills: a study of customary life and practices among the sheep-farming community of the central hill areas before 1900" (1977) by M.J.H. Robson (PhD thesis), available for download at the Edinburgh Research Archive: https://era.ed.ac.uk/items/9ae3625f-b746-45cf-a00a-f158d25e730e

[290] "Medieval Sheep and Wool Types" (*circa* 1984) by M.L. Ryder, *The Agricultural History Review*, pages 14-28, at pages 17, 19, 21-24, 28, available at https://www.bahs.org.uk/AGHR/ARTICLES/32n1a2.pdf

[291] "How Sheep Conquered Scotland" (2025) by David C. Weinczok for the Scottish Banner, available at https://www.scottishbanner.com/2025/05/19/how-sheep-conquered-scotland/

Rough estimates suggest this half ploughgate of land could probably support about 1-2 horses, 2-4 oxen, 2-5 cows, and about 12-24 sheep.[292] The Scrogges land could also potentially support a few pigs (on household waste and woodland mast) and maybe a few goats (who graze on the plants in scrogs) or even some chickens.[293]

This gives a sense of scale. The Land of Scrogges fits between the extremes of a tiny plot and a large estate. It was a well-balanced, self-sustaining, mixed agricultural holding.

Equipped with this knowledge about:

- the **purpose** of the land (a working farm growing cereal grains);
- the **people** who lived on the land (probably Simon de Scrogges and his family);
- **Where** they lived (the House of Scroggs, likely a longhouse just west of Scrog Hope); and
- the **animals** who lived and worked the farm with them (oxen, horses, cattle, sheep, possibly some pigs, goats, and chickens).

These discoveries reveal even more about ***how*** they worked this land. They paint a picture of what all these people and animals spent their time doing and when.

How They Worked the Land:

The Agricultural Year

Life here was not organized around the abstract concept of ownership, but around the very practical demands of making the land produce. Agricultural land produces based on the seasons. The seasons of the Earth gave structure to life on the Land of Scrogges and how Simon's family worked the land.

In **Spring**, they prepared the ground and **sowed seeds**. Oats and bere went into the soil. **Lambing** demanded careful attention.

(177) LAMBING TIME. Spring! Lambs, Gorse in bloom, and sunshine. Scottish Highlands.

Summer brought long days of tending crops and managing grazing animals. **Haymaking** in the meadows was especially important, as it determined whether livestock could be sustained through the Winter months. They **sheared the sheep** in the warm months of July and August. They cleaned the wool, processed it, and prepared it for use or sale.

(178) MAKING HAY AT WESTER HAPPREW. The Land of Scrogges is on the far side of the hay meadow, across the Lyne Water, which is obscured by the trees. Westerdene (How Burn / Hagging Hope) is visible in the top left corner.

[292] *See, e.g.,* "Cattle Grazing in the Forest of Arden in the Later Middle Ages" (*circa* 1990) by Andrew Watkins, in *The Agricultural History Review*, pages 12-25, including at page 13, available at https://bahs.org.uk/AGHR/ARTICLES/37n1a2.pdf

[293] *See* "10.4.1: Farming, Fishing, Husbandry, Hunting and Gathering" on ScARF (Scottish Archaeological Research Framework), available at https://scarf.scot/regional/higharf/post-medieval/10-4-daily-life/10-4-1-farming-fishing-husbandry-hunting-and-gathering/

Autumn was the most intense period. Crops had to be **harvested**, dried, and **stored** before the weather turned. Grain would then begin its journey to the **mill**, where it could be ground up and made usable for food.

(179) SOUTHEASTERN SLOPES, TORBANK HILL IN AUTUMN. Photo taken on 21 Oct 2007 about 1-2 km from the Land of Scrogges, on the opposite side of the Lyne Water.

Winter was quieter, but no less important. This was a time of **maintenance**, of repairing tools and structures, of relying on what had been stored. The family's survival depended on how well the previous seasons had gone. **Wood for fuel** – often gathered from scrub and woodland – became critical.

(180) VILLAGE OF LYNE IN WINTER SNOW, WITH TORBANK HILL IN THE BACKGROUND. The Village of Lyne sits about 1.2 miles (2 km) east of the Land of Scrogges.

Where could they gather this precious firewood?

The Land of Scrogges had more than just farm fields. Beyond the cultivated fields lay rougher ground: meadow along the river and grazing pasture on gentle slopes. Beyond those, the scrogs thrived in the marginal space of the denes – areas too uneven or maybe too stubborn to fully tame. And beyond the scrogs, we often find the woods.

(181) BIRCH WOODLAND IN GLEN AFFRIC. Northwest Scottish Highlands.

How They Worked the Land:

The Woodland of Gilmimenerdene

The wooded areas on the Land of Scrogges reveal more about life on that land.

In medieval Scotland, wood had tremendous value. As **timber** and **fuel**, it had economic value. As an area for **hunting**, control of woodlands also had strategic value.

But access to valuable resources, including the woodlands, was not entirely free. Rights to take wood or use certain areas might be tightly controlled, strictly defined, and narrowly limited.

Scrogs and woodland were not just ecological features, but managed resources within a structured system.

In the **first two charters**, the de Lyne family retained its ownership of the woodlands on the Land of Scrogges. The charters grant the Land of Scrogges to Simon, but with a key exception: **preter** (except / apart from) **boscum de Gillemimenerdene** (the Wood of Gilmimenerdene) **quod** (which) **in manu mea** (in my hand) **teneo** (I hold). Although the Latin phrase *in manu mea teneo* literally translates into "I hold in my hand," the practical meaning is that the lord de Lyne is retaining direct control of this key woodland.

The de Lyne family does, however, grant an easement (permission) for the de Scrogges family to ***use*** some of the wood on the Land of Scrogges. Specifically, the charters say: **in predicto bosco** (in aforesaid woodland), **habebit aisiamentum** (he [Simon] shall have right of use).

In the **third charter**, the land transfers to the Church, but the de Lyne family maintains ownership of the woodlands. The third charter states: **preter** (except / apart from) **boscum de Gillemunedene** (the Wood of Gilmimenerdene) **quod mihi retinue** (which I have retained for myself).

The **fourth charter** sees Robert de Lyne finally relinquish all his rights in the land to the Church, which naturally includes the woodland rights. The fourth charter states that: **quicquid iuris habui** (whatever right I have) **in terra de Scrogges** (in the Land of Scrogges) **et eius adiacenciis** (and its adjacencies) **in puram et perpetuam elemosinam dedi** (I have given in pure and perpetual alms), **concessi et hac carta mea confirmavi** (I have granted and by this charter / deed confirmed). This is maximal transfer language with no exceptions. At this point, the Church has all rights to the land, including the woodlands on it.

Where were these woodlands on the Land of Scrogges?

The charters refer to the woodland as **boscum de Gilmimenerden** ("the woodland of Gilmimenerdene"). The charters do not explicitly state its location, but context clues give us a strong hint. The name **Gilmimenerdene** has "dene" at the end. In the old Scots language, "dene" means a small valley, usually one with a stream running through it.[294] The Land of Scroggs has two prominent denes: Gilmimenerdene (now Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene) on the east and Westerdene (now synonymous with Hagging Hope and How Burn) on the northwest. The name itself suggests that the "wood of Gilmimenerdene" was located at or near Gilmimenerdene, now Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene.

However, we do not know the former location of the Wood of Gilmimenerdene with certainty. Other plausible locations exist. (**See inset: Larch Wood Square & the Birches of Lyne**, next page.) The wood may have once stood along the east bank of the Lyne Water or along the edge of the hills that help form Westerdene (Hagging Hope and How Burn).

(182) BIRCH FOREST.

[294] "Dene" in *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/dene_n_1

LARCH WOOD SQUARE & THE BIRCHES OF LYNE

(183) LARCH WOOD. A square of Larch trees on the western edge of the Land of Scrogges, along the east bank of the Lyne Water.

The Land of Scrogges holds a few plausible alternate locations for the **Wood of Gilmimenerdene**.

Scrogs Field features a distinctive, nearby **funnel-shaped cluster of trees** at its edge – easy to spot in maps and photographs. These appear to be a modern evergreen conifer plantation, likely Sitka Spruce. Botanist and explorer David Douglas introduced the Sitka Spruce to England and Scotland in 1831; it proved quite useful for construction and paper.[295]

A small **square** (~1 acre) of deciduous conifer **Larch trees**, about 165 feet (50 m) wide, stands at the western edge of the Land of Scrogges, along the east bank of the Lyne Water (**see photo: Larch Wood**, above). Larch trees arrived in Scotland from Europe around 1738; they proved valuable for shipbuilding.[296]

The square block of Larch and the oddly shaped conifer plantation are almost certainly later additions to the landscape, reflecting post-medieval estate management and modern forestry practices rather than the medieval environment of the Land of Scrogges.[297, 298]

However, the square Larch wood sits at a very interesting location.

The 1654 Blaeu Atlas map placed the "Birks of Lymm" (**Birches of Lyne**) in the same general area: between the "**Skroggs**" (the Land of Scrogges) and "**Haggin B**." (Hagging Hope / How Burn).

This suggests: (1) the Wood of Gilmimenerdene may have been these Birches of Lyne; and (2) this earlier woodland was located on the Land of Scrogges, either along the banks of the Lyne Water or perhaps along the unnamed western ridge forming Westerdene (now Hagging Hope / How Burn).

The Birches of Lyne may have once stood near the present Larch square.

Could the **Wood of Gilmimenerdene** have been an earlier name for the **Birches of Lyne**, later cleared and replaced? It remains a possibility – unproven, but plausible.

Surviving tree lines can preserve boundaries long after the original reason has been forgotten. That square of Larch may be modern, but the woodland presence there may be very old. The best clue to a lost forest might be where trees still prefer to stand today.

---

[295] "Sitka Spruce" (2022) on Forestry and Land Scotland, available at https://forestryandland.gov.scot/blog/sitka-spruce

[296] "Torrvald farmstead" on Forestry and Land Scotland, available at https://forestryandland.gov.scot/learn/heritage/historic-woodland-use/torrvald

[297] *See, e.g.,* "Guidance: Landscape and woodland design for woodland creation" (2023) by U.K. Forestry Commission, available at https://www.gov.uk/guidance/landscape-and-woodland-design-for-woodland-creation

[298] *See, e.g.,* "Breeding Hybrid Larch in Britain" (2003) by Steve Lee of Forest Research, at page 1, available at https://cdn.forestresearch.gov.uk/2003/01/fcin052.pdf

SCOTLAND'S BIRCH TREES

(184) DOWNY BIRCHES.

(185) LONE SILVER BIRCH. (186) DWARF BIRCH.

Three main types of birch trees grow in Scotland. All three are considered native to Scotland.[299]

Downy Birch (*Betula pubescens*): the most common native tree in Scotland. Its name comes from a furry "down" covering leaf stalks and young shoots. In exposed positions, it can get very twisted and stunted. Downy Birch prefer wet, cool conditions, which are often found in western Highlands.

Silver Birch (*Betula pendula*): widespread on drier, well-drained soils. Its bark is silver-white and papery. Its droopy, pendulum-like branches give it its Latin name "*pendula*." Silver Birch can be found everywhere in Scotland, but they are more common in Eastern Scotland & the central Highlands.

Dwarf Birch (*Betula nana*): rare montane scrub birch species that grows in the Highlands at higher altitudes. Along with Dwarf Juniper and Mountain Willow, this species has almost been lost. Restoration efforts aim to rebuild them. Dwarf Birch, along with Dwarf Willow, have been nicknamed **the "wee trees."**

BIRCH TREES IN FOLKLORE

(187) VIHTA OF BIRCH TWIGS. For sauna.

In **Gaelic** and **Northern European** folklore, **Birch** symbolized **purity** and **renewal**.

In **Scandinavia**, **"beating"** with **Birch twigs** is still part of the cleansing traditions that revolve around the **sauna**.

The **Norse-derived "Birk"** often denotes places or features that are or once were associated with **Birch trees** throughout Scotland and northern England.[300]

[299] "The beautiful birch" by Peter Lowe on Alliance for Scotland's Rainforest, available at https://savingscotlandsrainforest.org.uk/blog/the-beautiful-birch

[300] *Id.* (same source as previous footnote).

Despite the tantalizing allure of these alternative locations, the strongest theory holds that the **Wood of Gilmimenerdene** stood along Gilmimenerdene itself. The name and the terrain itself give us a strong inference. The wood likely ran alongside what we now call Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene.

However, this leaves us with something strange or maybe even sad. Scrog Dene has been cleared of any woodland and scrogs (**See photo: Scrog Dene**, below.).

(188) SCROG DENE. Not a scrog or wood to be seen.

(189) "**THE LAST OF THE CLAN**" by **Thomas Faed**. Inspired by the "**Highland Clearances**," a time when people in Scotland's Highlands & islands were forced from their homes. The landowners wanted more room for their sheep to graze.[301]

Satellite imagery confirms that any Gilmimenerdene Wood has since largely been cleared away. (**See satellite view**, below.)

(190) SATELLITE VIEW OF SCROG HOPE, SCROG DENE, AND WEST SIDE OF HAMILDEAN HILL (with labeled pins added by the Author)**.** Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

And yet, the names "Scrog Hope" and "Scrog Dene" have stuck to the landscape. Even today, Google Earth and modern Ordnance Survey maps mark them "Scrog Hope" and "Scrog Dene" (if the viewer has the level of zoom set appropriately). These names persist even though the woods and scrogs have been cleared away and the de Scrogges family has not lived on or owned that land for over 800 years. The place names act like a time capsule or fossil, preserving an ecological record of the past.

[301] "The Highland Clearances" on BBC BiteSize, available at https://www.bbc.co.uk/bitesize/articles/zr7pmfr

Regardless of its precise location or later fate, Gilmimenerdene Wood had clear value to the people of the time. In the first three charters, the de Lyne family retained ownership of Gilmimenerdene Wood and granted only an easement to Simon de Scrogges and later the Church. The fourth charter transferred ownership of the wood to the Church – the key reason that fourth charter even exists.

(191) CUT FIREWOOD. Firewood was a matter of life and death in medieval Scotland.

(192) WOOD FIRE. Firewood meant heat in the Winter and food on the table.

The easement for the woodlands also reminds us that the Land of Scrogges was not an island, but an **integrated part** of a **larger system** where the de Scrogges family served **people** and **institutions** who held more **power**.

The people living on the Land of Scrogges did not exist in isolation. Their holding was part of a wider system of authority and obligation. The four charters convey a sense of how the people on the Land of Scrogges related to the people and institutions around them. In fact, they paint quite an interesting picture about how the de Scrogges family fit into medieval Scottish society.

Relating to Other People and Institutions

In the charters, the land passes from the de Lyne family to the de Scrogges family and later to the Church. Whatever their exact status at any moment, those working the land owed duties – whether in rent, service, produce, or even worship – to those above them in the hierarchy.

Relating to Local Lord and King: from Milling to Military Service

The charters spelled out **feudal obligations** that Simon de Scrogges owed to his local lord from the de Lyne family. These included annual payments, milling obligations, and military service duties.

Simon de Scrogges owed token annual feudal **payments** to David de Lyne and his heirs. The first two charters indicate that Simon must render **12 pence** annually at the **feast of Saint Martin**. They state: **Reddendo inde** (rendering therefrom) **mihi** (to me) … **annuatim** (annually) **xii denarius** (twelve pence) **ad festum sancti Martini** (at the feast of Saint Martin).

(193) PENNY (PENCE) OF KING WILLIAM I ("THE LION") OF SCOTLAND. Dated 1205. King William the Lion **reigned** as King of the Scots from December **1165** to December **1214**.

Martinmas was a Scottish "term day," marking the end of a quarter. That made it a popular day for rent payments and for contracts to begin or end. (**See inset: The Feast of Saint Martin**, next page.)[302]

[302] "Martinmas" by Ellen Castelow, on Historic UK, available at https://www.historic-uk.com/CultureUK/Martinmas/

THE FEAST OF SAINT MARTIN

(194) SAINT MARTIN DIVIDING HIS CLOAK. From the cloister of Wettingen Monastery.

The feast of Saint Martin, or **Martinmas**, is a Christian Feast Day that is celebrated on **November 11** to honor the 4th century **Saint Martin of Tours**.

Saint Martin was famous for his generosity to a drunken beggar, with whom he shared his cloak. (See artwork above.) Saint Martin is the patron saint of beggars, drunkards, and the poor.

Martinmas marked the end of the **harvest** and beginning of **Winter**. It also came during the **wine** harvest in Europe. (Saint Martin is also the patron saint of winemakers and innkeepers.)

Martinmas was a popular day across all of Europe for new wine, **feasting**, and **fairs**.

The charters that bound the de Scrogges family also gave them both the right and the obligation to use the **mill** owned by David **de Lyne** and later his son Robert de Lyne. The charters refer to the lord's mill using the Latin term **moldendinum**, indicating a water-powered grain mill. The charters also obligated the de Scrogges family to give **multuram** ("**mullture**" in Scots): the portion of grain given to the miller/lord as a fee for milling. These obligations formed a central part of the local economy, tying the Land of Scrogges directly to the de Lyne family's mill on the Lyne Water.

The first two charters also spell out **military** and foreign service obligations. They require Simon to provide **forinseco servicio** (performance of external service, outside the estate) and **servicio domini regis** (service of the lord king). In practice, this meant that Simon de Scrogges had the obligation to report for military service – all along the feudal chain up to the king – when called upon by David de Lyne or later his son Robert de Lyne.

(195) SCOTTISH KING WILLIAM THE LION RECKLESSLY CHARGES THE ENGLISH ARMY AT THE BATTLE OF ALNWICK (1174). This bold but rash move led to a Scottish defeat and the capture of King William I.

These charters lay out specific duties and obligations for this **military service**. During this service, the lord de Lyne assured he would provide all necessary things (**omnia necessaria inveniam**). This reveals mounted service, but subsidized. The charters also state that Simon will report for duty with his own horse (**equum suum**), but if the horse dies in this service the lord de Lyne will give him another (**alium reddam**). This horse-replacement clause amounts to a shared-risk cavalry contract. Together, these clauses suggest a mid-tier tenant rather than a full knight. (**See inset: Knights Templar in Scotland**, next page.)

THE KNIGHTS TEMPLAR IN SCOTLAND

(196) TEMPLE OLD KIRK IN TEMPLE (FORMERLY BALANTRODACH), MIDLOTHIAN, SCOTLAND. This 14th century church was built over the 12th century chapel that once served as the headquarters for the Knights Templar in Scotland.

Hugh de Payens, Geoffroy de Saint-Omer, and seven other knights founded the **Knights Templar** (aka "the poor Knights of Christ") in **1118** to protect pilgrims traveling to Jerusalem.

The Knights Templar flourished as a military and economic force **until** around **1307**, when King Philippe IV of France began **persecuting** them – probably because he wanted to eliminate his own debts to the Order.

In **1312**, Pope Clement officially **disbanded** the Order.[303]

The Knights Templar played an active role in Scotland in the 1100s and 1200s. **King David I of Scotland** (reign: **1124-1153**) gave the Knights Templar their estate at **Balantrodoch** (now named "Temple" in Midlothian) and probably some other properties across Scotland. David's successor **King Malcolm IV** (reign: **1153-1165**) confirmed the Templars' privileges and probably extended them.[304]

In **Scotland**, the **Knights Templar** served a primarily **economic purpose**.[305] The Knights Templar in Scotland probably never exceeded 40 or 50 members at any given moment in time.[306]

Were Robert de Scrogges or his son Simon de Scrogges ever members of the Knights Templar? Unlikely. Balantrodoch sat about 12-13 miles (20 km) away from the Land of Scrogges, within a few hours ride by horse. However, the four de Scrogges charters do not list any Knights Templar as witnesses, nor do they refer to the Order at all. And the Knights Templar were open and active in the early 1200s. Much like the idea of a Castle Scrogges, this seems more like a fun idea with no evidence to stand on.

However, the de Scrogges family could have heard of the Order and may have had interactions with their economic agents in the area.

---

[303] "A Brief History of the Knights Templar" on The Knights Templar of England & Wales, available at https://www.theknightstemplar1119.org/history

[304] "The Templars in Scotland" (2023) by Dr. Steve Tribble on Medievalists.net, available at https://www.medievalists.net/2023/08/templars-scotland/

[305] "Clan Carruthers: The Carruthers Chiefs and the Templar Link" (2020) by Clan Carruthers Society (International), available at https://clancarrutherssociety.org/2020/09/12/clan-carruthers-the-carruthers-chiefs-and-the-templar-link/

[306] "The Knights Templars in Scotland" (1898) by Robert Aitken, in *The Scottish Review*, at page 14, summarized and available for download as pdf at https://www.electricscotland.com/history/templars_scotland.htm

The first two charters set out where Simon de Scrogges stood in relation to the de Lyne family. To the people of the time, the charters embodied the rules that governed their relationships, just as the boundaries delineated in the charters embodied their relationship to their land. To us today, they give us a sense of what life was really like on the Land of Scrogges and how the people there fit into Scottish medieval feudal society.

But the **third** and **fourth charter** go even further. They remind us that both the de Scrogges family and the local lords of the de Lyne family operated within a much larger framework. In the last two charters, a key authority figure steps forward onto center stage: **the Church**.

(197) LYNE KIRK: STAINED GLASS WINDOW (1).

Relating to the Church:

Administration & Tithe

The Church played a pivotal role in the lives of medieval Scottish landowners like the de Scrogges family.

In an era where few people could read or write, the Church provided important **administrative** functions such as writing land grants and keeping records (including the four charters).

The Church also provided moral **oversight** and sometimes **dispute resolution**. Landowners were subject to the discipline of the Church and its local courts, which served as the primary moral arbiter.[307]

Landowners, like all feudal classes, also relied on the Church for their **salvation**, supporting it to help manage the destiny of their souls.

In return for all these services, minor landholders had to pay a compulsory **tithe – 10%** of their total produce (from crops and animals). This tithe went to support local priests and the wider Church.[308] Unlike the token annual payment of 12 pence paid to the de Lyne family, the tithe obligation to the Church weighed much heavier.

How did the Chuch spend all the money received from tithes? Some went to fund its administrative and religious operations. In the final two charters, another place where the **Church** spent its tithe money comes to light: **purchasing land**.

The Land of Scrogges: Passing from the Family to the Church

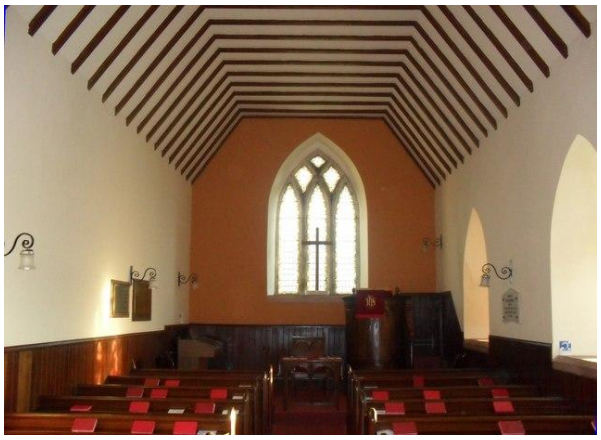
Eventually, Simon de Scrogges sold the Land of Scrogges to the Church, with the consent of his local lord Robert de Lyne and his brothers William and Uhting de Scrogges. No charter seems to exist for that sale.[309] However, the **third charter** cleans that up by retroactively documenting Simon's sale as a

[307] "Medieval Europe: Church history" on TimeMaps, available at https://timemaps.com/encyclopedia/medieval-europe-church-history/

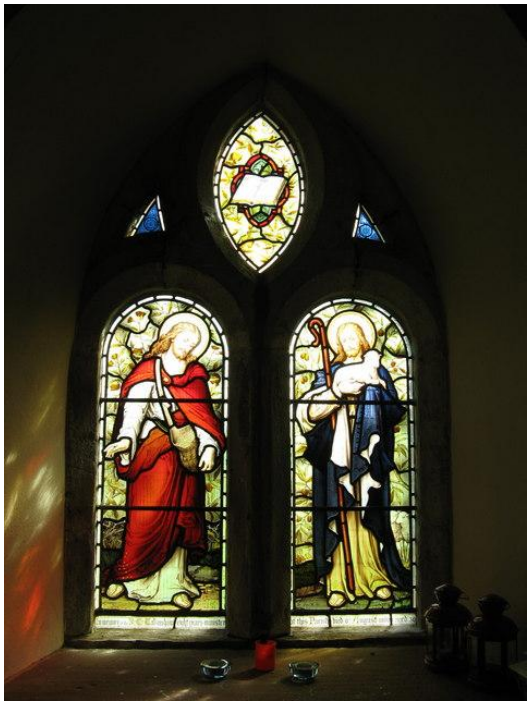
[308] "Christianity in Medieval Scotland" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christianity_in_Medieval_Scotland

[309] *See, e.g.,* "Transaction: Sale of Land of 'Scrogges' PEB," Factoid No. 59332 on People of Medieval Scotland (PoMS) website: https://poms.ac.uk/record/factoid/59332/ ; *see also* 3rd Charter in the ***REG*** and on PoMS: https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5266/

valid, past event: **Simon de Scrogges qui terram predictam** (who [the] aforesaid land) **prius de me tenuit** (formerly held of me) … **vendidit** (he sold) **et** (and) **quietam clamavit** (he quitclaimed) …[310] Thus, Simon's tenure had already ended by the time of the third charter. David de Lyne also states in the third charter that Simon's previous sale happened **per consensum et concessionem meam** (by my consent and grant), acknowledging its validity.

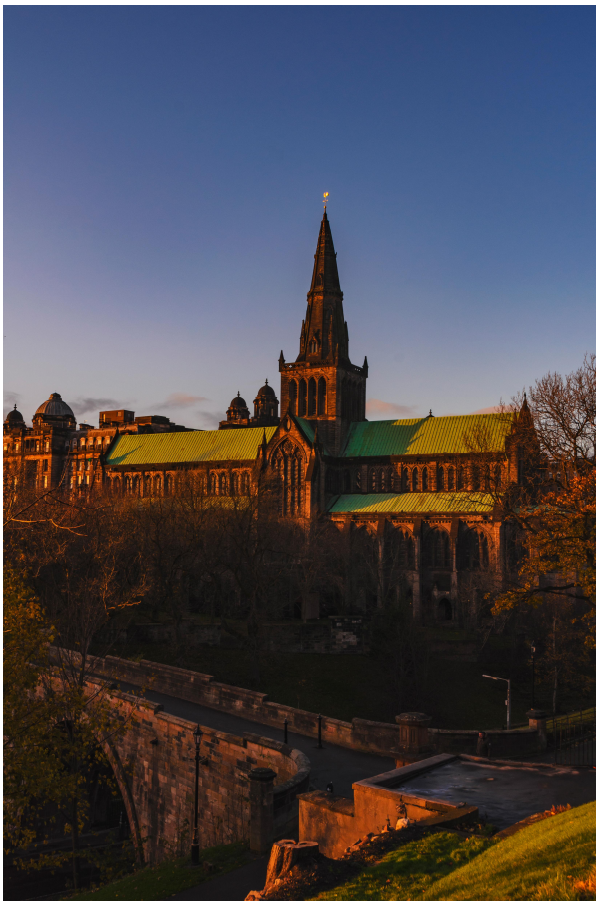


(198) LYNE KIRK (INTERIOR). Woodwork dates to 1600s.



(199) LYNE KIRK: STAINED GLASS WINDOW (2).

The **third charter** also states that Simon de Scrogges gave the first and second charters to the **Bishop of Glasgow** as part of his sale. Specifically, the third charter states: **et cartus prius meas** (my earlier charters) **quas inde habuit** (which he had concerning that land) **eidem episcopo reddidit** (he gave/returned them to the bishop).



(200) GLASGOW CATHEDRAL DURING THE FALL. Warm Autumn evening in Glasgow.

Interestingly, we only have these charters because this land wound up in the hands of the Church. This explains why and how these charters appeared as part of the Glasgow Church records included in the ***REG***. Had Simon de Scrogges not sold this land to the Church, we might never have heard of Simon de Scrogges or the Land of Scrogges.

We do not really know why Simon sold his land to the Church. However, we do know three things.

[310] ***REG***, at the **3rd Charter**, at pages 75-76 (Charter 87).

First, **Simon** was probably **at least 55-65 years old** when he sold his land to Walter, the Bishop of Glasgow. To receive the Land of Scrogges in the first charter, dated 1164-1174, he was probably an adult age 21 or older. And Walter Capellanus became Bishop of Glasgow in 1208, about 34-44 years later.

Second, the third charter frames the land transfer as a ***sale*** rather than a donation. Also, it does not include any language suggesting his impending death or some desire to absolve sins through the transfer.

Third, by the early 1200s the **Church** had grown into a **major landholder** by acquiring land through royal patronage, donation, and purchase. **Abbeys** like **Kelso** and **Melrose** in the Scottish Borders area developed extensive agricultural operations with wool production forming a central component.[311] (**See inset: Kelso Abbey**, next page.)

Together, these facts suggest that as Simon was nearing retirement and the end of his life, he chose to sell his land as part of prudent **estate planning**. This does seem to imply that he might not have had a male heir to receive the land as inheritance. But the charters do not give us any detail here, so we do not know for sure if Simon had any male heirs or, for that matter, any children at all.

(201) LYNE KIRK.

[311] *See The Kingdom of the Scots: Government, Church and Society from the eleventh to the fourteenth century* (1st edition 1973, 2nd edition 2003) by G.W.S. Barrow, available at https://archive.org/details/kingdomofscotsgo0000barr/mode/2up ; *see also Domination and Lordship: Scotland 1070-1230* (2011) by Richard Oram, available for purchase or through JSTOR at https://www.jstor.org/stable/10.3366/j.ctt1g0b54j ; *Scotland: The Making of the Kingdom* (1975) by A.A.M. Duncan, available at https://archive.org/details/scotlandmakingof0000dunc/mode/2up

KELSO ABBEY

(202) RUINS OF KELSO ABBEY WITH FLOWERS IN BLOOM.

Richard, the **Abbot of Kelso** (died 1221), served as a witness for the **fourth charter**.[312]

Kelso Abbey is about 35 miles (55 km) east of Lyne Kirk, about 1-2 days travel by horse.

Founded in **1128** and **dedicated** in **1143**, Kelso Abbey became the seat of a pre-eminently powerful abbacy in the Scottish Borders, near Roxburgh.

At the time, **King David I** of **Scotland** wanted to make **Roxburgh** a major economic and administrative center, the *de facto* capital of southern Scotland.[313]

Unfortunately, Kelso Abbey's close proximity to the English border left if **vulnerable to attacks**.

It suffered heavy damage during the War of Scottish Independence in 1296 and King Henry VIII's "Rough Wooing" in the 1500s.

By 1545, it had been left in **ruins**. Everything was destroyed except the western fragment of the abbey church that survives today (pictured above).[314]

[312] *See, e.g.,* **4th Charter** on **PoMs**: https://poms.ac.uk/record/source/5270/

[313] "Kelso Abbey" on Fabulous North, available at https://fabulousnorth.com/kelso-abbey/

[314] "Kelso Abbey" on Historic Environment Scotland, available at https://www.historicenvironment.scot/visit-a-place/places/kelso-abbey/history/

We also do not know what happened to Simon and his brothers William and Uhting after the four charters. Perhaps they held nearby land elsewhere, or it could be that they worked as tenant farmers rather than landowners, or maybe they eventually migrated away.

(203) VALLEY MIST ABOVE THE RIVER TWEED.
Eastward view towards the town of Peebles, with the Land of Scrogges about 3 miles (5 km) behind (mostly to the west, slightly to the north from here).

(204) HAWTHORN TREES ON A HILL.

(205) GREAT HILL FROM TORBANK HILL. View to southeast, away from the Land of Scrogges. Frosted heather on Torbank Hill, with tree-topped Great Hill rising above the fog filling Tweeddale.

(206) RIVER TWEED WITH A LIGHT FOG.

Every mystery we unwrap gives birth to more mysteries. So it goes here, too. As we near the end of our journey, we have solved many of these puzzles, only to see more emerge.

Enduring Mysteries

As our journey comes to an end, we reflect. Our understanding of our surname's origin has grown. But plenty of mystery remains.

What mysteries have we explored?

Our surname has burst into life. We no longer stare at a boring Scots dictionary definition and stop. We opened that lock, walked through that door, and walked into the wild beauty of the Earth itself. It gave us a rich understanding of the scrogs. The scrogs now represent a nested ecosystem – wild pioneers of the forest.

(207) SCROGGS POISED TO TAKE OVER A FIELD JUST NORTH OF SCROGGS BRIDGE. Near the village of Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England.

(208) SCROG HILL AND DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE. View to northeast with Scrog Hill in front of Dunstanburgh Castle.

The scrogs transformed into a fitting symbol for the Scottish Borders region where they grew.

But we have so much more than just a cerebral understanding. This journey gave us an experience.

Stunning photos have revealed the scrogs. We have seen the scrogs with our own eyes: from the scrogs as a collective system to the individual plant and animal species that make up scrogs.

We witnessed the beauty of the **Hawthorn**, **Blackthorn**, Hazel, Gorse, **Juniper**, and **Heather**.

(209) HAWTHORN TREE BENT BY THE WIND.

(210). BLOOMING HEATHER.

(211) I WAS A TREE ONCE. Flowering **Blackthorn** behind a dead **Ash** tree. An old woodland resident has passed, but a new generation of scrogs flourish.

(212) JUNIPER ON COASTAL ROCKS. The coastal winds keep it low, but it thrives nonetheless.

We also spent time contemplating how the scrogs pave the way for pioneering **Rowan** and **Birch** trees. Scrogs truly are the pioneer's pioneer.

(213) ROWAN TREE IN FABULOUS AUTUMN COLORS (Blairgowrie in Perth and Kinross, Scotland). Scrogs often host Rowan trees like the one on the right in this photo.

(214) BIRCH FOREST. Scrogs blaze the trail for Birch.

The **birds** of the scrogs ***sang*** to us – the Linnets, **Yellowhammers**, Whitethroats, and Dunnocks.

(215) YELLOWHAMMER SINGING. "A little bit of bread and NO cheese!"

The **nuts** and **berries** of the scrogs all paraded before us: hazelnuts, blackberries, **elderberries**, haws, sloe, and juniper berries. A literal ***taste*** of these nuts and berries waits just beyond our doorstep.

(216) SAMBUCUS BERRIES (ELDERBERRIES). A frequent scrogs resident. Elderberries can be safely eaten when cooked and offer a complex, tart taste.

A strong **working theory** for **our surname's origin story** has also emerged. It aligns well with the linguistics, history, ecology, and church records. However, certainty on this remains elusive. Instead of letting this frustrate us, we can celebrate that we still have mysteries to explore.

This journey also yielded a deeper understanding of the **first known family** to bear the **Scrogges** or **Scruggs** surname. We no longer stop at a sparse blurb in George Black's *Surnames of Scotland* or four charters written in medieval Latin. We unlocked them, walked through the door, and saw the **Land of Scrogges** on the other side in all its vivid detail. We discovered the purpose of the land and explored where and how its residents lived and worked.

(217) LYNE KIRK. The local parish church the de Scrogges family would have attended.

(218) SCOTTISH HIGHLANDS WATERMILL. The modest Glendale watermill above has a similar scale as the old de Lyne family watermill relied on by the de Scrogges family (estimated at 4-6 hp). However, the pictured Glendale watermill has an overshot wheel and the de Lyne mill probably had a breastshot or undershot wheel.

This exploration uncovered the type of house they probably lived in and the type of animals that probably lived and worked alongside them. The charters showed how they related to the people and institutions around them: the local lords from the de Lyne family and the Church.

(219) VIKING LONGHOUSE. A similar design as the House of Scrogges.

We saw for ourselves the **landscape** that they lived and breathed in: the **rivers**, the **rolling hills**, the **green fields**. If any of us ever visit the area, we can now walk in their footsteps and appreciate every step they took and every site they visited in their day-to-day life.

(220) MELDON BURN AND WHITE MELDON.

(221) VIEW FROM WHITE MELDON. Lyne Water Valley on the left, Black Meldon on right.

(222) PENVALLA. Its peak (elevation: 537 m) is visible from some of the Land of Scrogges about 2.5 miles (4 km) away. (See image #176.)

What mysteries remain?

And yet, with all we know now, so much remains that we do not know.

What happened before the first charter? We do not know how the de Scrogges first acquired the land. Questions about the death of Robert de Scrogges linger. The origins of Robert de Scrogges and those who came before him remains equally mysterious.

Where and how were **William** and **Uhting de Scrogges** living? Perhaps they lived on the Land of Scrogges with their brother Simon. This fits more easily if they did not marry, but less so if they married and had children. They witnessed the third charter, so they probably lived in the area. But we really do not know much about exactly where and how they lived.

Where were the women in all this? We have no information about the spouses of Robert, Simon, William, or Uhting de Scrogges. We do not know about their mothers, sisters, or daughters. We have seen some of the patriarchs of this clan, but we know shockingly little of its matriarchs.

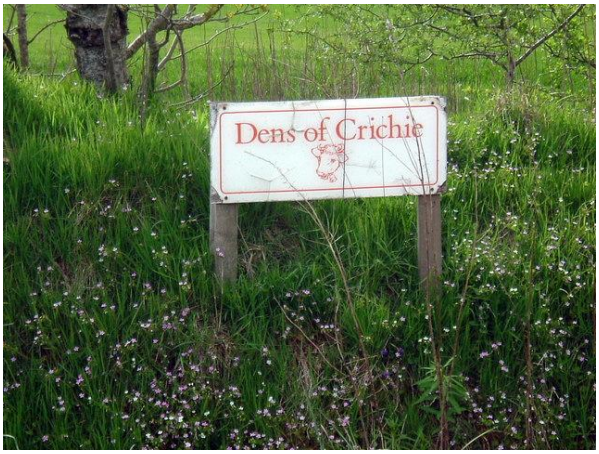
Why did Simon de Scrogges **sell the land** to the Church? Why did the Church want to buy that land? We know that these things happened, but we have no firm explanations as to why they happened.

What happened after the fourth charter? We are left in the dark about where Simon de Scrogges and his brothers William and Uhting went after they sold the land. We also have no knowledge about any of their children.

Is there any connection between this de Scrogges family and later de Scroggs families in Scotland, like the **de Scroggs family in Aberdeen** in the 1300s and 1400s?

(223) FIELDS OF KING'S CROWN.
Less than 1 km southwest of Stuartfield in **Aberdeenshire**, Scotland.
Scrog Hill is visible in the background, just right of center, about 1 km away.
Scrog Hill's elevation at peak: about 133 m. **Aberdeen** is about 25 miles (40 km) south.

(224) DENS OF CRICHIE. Just southwest of Stuartfield in Aberdeenshire, Scotland. Beyond the canary-yellow fields of flowering rapeseed (used for canola oil), we get a glimpse of **Scrog Hill**, just behind the silver-roofed barn towards the right. About 300 m southwest of last picture.



(225) SIGN FOR DENS OF CRICHIE. This sign stands about 650 feet (200 m) southwest from where the photo to the left was taken. The sign stands by the driveway to the rapeseed field and farm.

(226) ST. MACHAR'S CATHEDRAL IN OLD ABERDEEN, SCOTLAND. Its medieval towers still dominate the skyline of the old burgh where members of the de Scroggs family served as baillies, aldermen, and provosts in the 1300s and 1400s.

So much mystery to explore. Perhaps one day one of us or one of our descendants will uncover some ancient documents that solve these lingering mysteries. Could that person be you?

(227) CAIRN, TORBANK HILL. On the east ridge at an elevation of 432 m, about 0.6 miles (1 km) south of the Land of Scrogges. Unknown origin.

What has Faded and What Endures?

Some things have faded away. They served their purpose, but their time has passed. Where Iron Age **hillforts** and a Roman Fort once stood, little more than some stones and faded trenches remain. The House of Scrogges and the Lyne Mill have almost completely disappeared, leaving nothing more than a ghost in old records and soil.

(228) BOUNDARY OF THE HILL FORT ON BLACK MELDON. The hillfort on Black Meldon dates to prehistoric Bronze or Iron Age. The Land of Scrogges sits just about 1.2 miles (2 km) west of this site.

But the land itself endures. The rural landscape around the Land of Scrogges remains much as it did over 800 years ago. The Lyne Water still winds through the land. The rolling hills still shape the land. Hamildean Hill and **White Meldon** continue to stand watch over the area.

(229) HAREHOPE ESTATE AND WHITE MELDON. The camera location for this shot is within about 1.2 miles (2 km) of the Land of Scrogges.

Even some old landmarks persist in newer forms. Lyne Kirk still sits atop a grassy knoll. The current Lynesmill Bridge stretches over the Lyne Water where some earlier bridge did in the days of Simon de Scrogges: a new face on an old feature. Even the old features co-exist with new elements: a modern road, the A72, now runs along the Lyne Water.

(230) THE A72 RUNNING BESIDE THE LYNE WATER WITH TORBANK HILL IN THE BACKGROUND. A late November frost covers the land in this photo, taken about 1.5 miles (2.5 km) southeast of the Land of Scrogges.

The Land of Scrogges has not changed much in over eight centuries. Scrogs Field persists as a lush green farm field. The pastures and meadows remain. Sheep still roam the land in photographs and satellite images. And the Scrog name still clings to Scrog

Hope and Scrog Dene, even if the woodland and scrogs have been cleared away.

Some of the **scrogs** still persist on the northwest side of **Stevenson Hill**. (**See photo: Stevenson Hill (west side)**, below)

(231) STEVENSON HILL (WEST SIDE).

Today, dark green trees, probably Sitka Spruce, dominate the center and south (right) side in the photo. But on the north (left) side of the photo, we still see lighter green trees harkening back to earlier times: probably Birch and Rowan with Hawthorn.

At least **some scrogs** continue to persist on the **Land of Scrogges** itself. A sliver of scrogs still grows wild on the west side of the Land of Scrogges, near the east bank of the Lyne Water, about 330 feet (100 m) north of the Larch wood square. (**See photo: A Little Used Track**, top right.)

(232) A LITTLE USED TRACK ON THE WEST SIDE OF THE LAND OF SCROGGES. Here, above the east bank of the Lyne Water, some scrogs grow between the low ferns and the Alder and Willow trees on the river's edge.

Perhaps most importantly, our family and our surname still stand. The individual people named in the charters all passed from this Earth long ago. But each of us carries the Scroggs and Scruggs surname forward. Much like all the individual Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, and Gorse from the medieval era died long ago, but the scrogs descended from them watch over the hillsides, waiting patiently to take over Scrogs Field.

The Land of Scrogges has transformed from a name in a charter to a real place. We have seen it. We can stand in it. Mysteries remain, but so do we.

(233) VIEW OF LYNE WATER VALLEY FROM SUMMIT OF BLACK MELDON.
View to the southwest from the eastern peak, towards Lyne Kirk and Stobo.

(234) SUMMIT CAIRN ON BLACK MELDON. Looking southward.
Eastern peak of Black Meldon. Elevation: 407 m.
This stone cairn is thought to be ancient.
The eastern summit of Black Meldon also has traces of a hill fort.

(235) BLACK MELDON FROM NEAR THE STONE WALL OF A SHEEPFOLD. View to the southeast. Photo taken from about 0.6 miles (1 km) northeast of the Land of Scrogges. Eastern peak on the left.

(236) POST ROAD & DROVE ROAD. Southward view. Background hills: White Meldon (east / left) and Black Meldon (west / right).

(237) VIEW FROM BLACK MELDON SUMMIT. Looking southward over Lyne & Lyne Station towards Kirkton Manor.

Beyond the Land of Scrogges

Standing on the heights of Black Meldon, the Land of Scrogges no longer feels isolated. The valleys and hills stretching to the south and west remind us that the rough ecological seams we explored along the Lyne Water were never unique to one family or one charter.

(238) TRACK BELOW BLACK MELDON. South of Black Meldon's peak. Looking to the northeast, with the base of Black Meldon on the left and the peak of White Meldon in the background.

Across Britain, similar landscapes survived wherever woodland, pasture, rivers, roads, stone walls, and rough grazing met at difficult edges. In some places, the old "scrog" names faded. In others, they endured for centuries beside bridges, woods, ravines, farms, and lanes.

The Land of Scrogges gave us one deeply documented example. But it was only one face of a much larger landscape tradition.

From the Scottish Borders, we now follow those surviving "scrog" place names south into England. Similar rough woodland margins, thorn scrub boundaries, and transitional farming landscapes appear again and again across northern England.

The surviving scrog names do not form a neat geographic chain. Rather, they appear scattered across Britain wherever rough wooded fringes and liminal landscapes endured. As we leave the Scottish Borders behind and journey south into England, we find even more "scrog" place names surviving in woodland edges, hillsides, riversides, lanesides, and lowland farming country.

Near Sand Hutton in North Yorkshire, one of several places called Scrogs Wood survives along the edge of lowland farming country.

(239) TRACK TO SCROGS WOOD. South of Sand Hutton in North Yorkshire, England. Standing about 70 m north of St. Peter's Church in Upper Helmsley. View to the northeast, with the southeastern portion of Scrogs Wood in the background.

(240) SCROGS WOOD NEAR SAND HUTTON IN NORTH YORKSHIRE, ENGLAND. Looking north.

A mixed secondary woodland edge lines part of the road between the village of Upper Helmsley and the village of Sand Hutton about ½ mile (800 m) away. In the **photo above, Ash** and **Sycamore** form most of the taller trees, with some scattered **Oak**. A droopy **Larch** stands at center left, along the left side of the road, with its soft, feathery, pale yellow-green foliage. Near the edge of the right foreground, a mix of low, woody shrubs, probably young **Hazel** and **Hawthorn**, grow on the right side of the road. **Brambles**, nettles, rough grasses and some herbs make up the ground flora.

(241) SCROGS WOOD. Northward view from a point about 200 m south of the photo above. The woodland frontier. **Blackthorn** on the left side of the road, with **Hawthorn** behind them, **Ash** and **conifers** further back. **Sycamore** or **Silver Birch** in bright green on the left.

(242) FARM TRACK INTO SCROGS BOTTOMS. Westward view from 300 m north of the photo above. A thick, bushy, brownish **Blackthorn** stands near center frame, on the right side of the track as the track bends to the left. Behind the Blackthorn, a row of **Hawthorn** trees stand guard, with taller **Ash** and **conifers** growing behind them.

THE MANY FACES OF BRITISH SCROGS

(243) DUNSTANBURGH DAWN. View from **Scrog Hill**, a high point behind **Dunstanburgh Castle** in Northumberland, northeast England. Golden light from the breaking dawn illuminates the blooming yellow **Gorse**. Photo courtesy of **Malcolm Bawn**. *See* Image Attributions section for more information.

In the earlier sections, we met scrogs on **upland slopes** and **woodland margins**: the thorny scrub of **Castle Hill**, the **Scrogs of Drumruck**, and the rough edges of the **Land of Scrogges** itself, where farm fields, pasture, meadow, and woodland pressed against one another along the Lyne Water. We even found scrogs on **coastal hills** like **Scrog Hill** near **Dunstanburgh Castle** (see photo, above) – forced to grow low by the salty winds, yet still flourishing in a challenging environment.

But nature does not confine scrogs to hillsides. They also thrive in the **lowland farming plains**, where hedgerows, thorn scrub, and small woods mark the living boundaries between field and forest.

We saw a glimpse of this with another **Scrog Hill** in the lowland farming country near Stuartfield in **Aberdeenshire**, Scotland. The peak of that Scrog Hill rises up to just about 133 meters above sea level. This is a low hill among gently undulating lowlands and rolling farmland.

Now we dive into more **lowland** examples, as well as some wonderful **riverside** examples.

In this section, **The Many Faces of British Scrogs**, we follow some of those surviving place-names across Britain.

We begin by visiting a geographic cluster of scrog places names near **Staveley** in **Cumbria: Scroggs Wood, Bridge, Farm, & Lane**. These make for a small but interesting case study. The picturesque **Scroggs Bridge** gives us a **riparian scrog** – simply meaning the rough, scrubby margins beside a **riverbank**. Here, thorn, pasture, and water meet along the undulating pastoral hills by the River Kent.

(244) SCROGGS BRIDGE NEAR STAVELEY. Over the River Kent in Cumbria, northwest England.

Nearby **Scroggs Wood, Farm, & Lane** of the **Staveley** area recall the **upland slope scrogs** of the Scottish Borders area, where scrogs ride the border between fields, pasture, and wooded hillsides.

(245) START OF THE BRIDLEWAY TO SCROGGS FARM NEAR STAVELEY, CUMBRIA. Blackthorn with some Hawthorn line the left side of the path, with Ash, Sycamore, and Oak in the background.

Then we travel to **Scroggs Wood** on the south side of Helsington and **Kendal** in Cumbria to see a **woodland corridor scrog**. It has two narrow wooded strips that form an "L" shape. One strip forms the edge between houses and farmland, with **Scroggs Lane** running right through it. The other **riparian** strip forms the edge between houses and the River Kent. **Woodland Trust** manages this woodland, giving us a catalog of **waterside scrog** species to bolster our interpretations from photos and satellite views. Alder and Willow trees line the wet riverbank, while Blackthorn and Hawthorn form dense scrub on slightly drier upslope areas.

(246) RIVER KENT FROM THE BOTTOM OF SCROGGS LANE, SOUTH OF HELSINGTON. Ducks and geese swim near **Scroggs Weir**, which used to provide head for a water-powered snuff mill.

From there, we stop at **Scrogg House Farm** near **Sedbergh** in the valley of the **River Rawthey** in the Yorkshire Dales. The family who owns the house now has recorded some of its history, which bears some interesting similarities to the history for the Land of Scrogges.

(247) LOOKING OVER THE VALLEY OF THE RIVER RAWTHEY. View to the south from the Howgills. Ashbeck Farm is in the center, with Scrogg House Farm to its left.

A different **Scroggs Wood** near **Burnley** in **Lancashire** adds a **woodland recreation park** to our list of scrogs. It reminds us how the classic scrog

species of Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, & Bramble at the fringes of a woodland can mature into Ash and Oak with Hazel at the interior of the woodland.

(248) Cockden Bridge, Lancashire. Here, Thursden Brook becomes the **River Don**, which runs through **Scroggs Wood** about ½ mile (1 km) downstream (southwest).

Afterwards, we explore one of the best **lowland farming plains** examples: **Wauldby Scrogs** in the East Riding of Yorkshire. Photographs and records from **Woodland Trust** catalog Hazel coppice with Blackthorn boundaries and an ancient broadleaf woodland beside the scrogs.

(249) TRACK INTO WAULDBY SCROGS.

We make a brief stop near Hutton Hang and Constable Burton in North Yorkshire to admire the **Scrog Wood** there. Nearby **Scrogg House Farm** and **Scroggs Farm** in **North Yorkshire** illustrate typical dynamics between farm fields, scrogs, and wooded areas.

(250) SCROG WOOD, NEAR HUTTON HANG.

Next, we take a virtual stroll down **Long Tongue Scrog Lane**, a classic **laneside hedge scrog** where the thorny boundary itself became part of the lane's name.

(251) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE.
At the scroggiest section of the lane.

Finally, we venture into **The Scrog** just west of Castleside in County Durham. In this ancient **wood pasture**, we see twisted English Oaks standing among mossy stones and fallen deadwood.

(252) THE SCROG NEAR CASTLESIDE.

The Scrog and places like it remind us that "scrog" was never confined to a single plant species. Rather, it described rough, tangled woodland surviving along the difficult margins between rock, pasture, exposure, and grazing.

(253) SCROG HILL NEAR STANHOPE IN COUNTY DURHAM, NORTHEAST ENGLAND.
By the hamlet of Brotherlee, about 3-4 miles (6 km) west of the town of Stanhope.
Numerous additional "Scrog" place names survive across Britain
beyond those explored in this book, often attached to rivers, roads, hillsides,
rough pasture, woodland margins, and upland edge landscapes.

(254) THE RIVER KENT RUNNING THROUGH KENDAL IN CUMBRIA, NORTHWEST ENGLAND.
The banks & valleys of the River Kent host a record-setting 9 "Scrog" place names: 6 around Staveley and 3 near Kendal.
Staveley: Scroggs Bridge, Scroggs Wood, Scroggs Farm, & Scroggs Lane, plus Scroggs Fold & Scroggs Close in the village.
Near **Kendal (Helsington):** another Scroggs Wood and another Scroggs Lane, plus Scroggs Weir.

Distribution of Scrog Place Names in England

(255) RELIEF LOCATION MAP OF ENGLAND IN THE UNITED KINGDOM (with annotations by the Author). Map of "Scrog" place names in England. The map is illustrative, not exhaustive. Several Scrog place names do not appear here due to space constraints. (A map showing the "Scrog" place names in Scotland and part of northern England appears towards the beginning of the book, in the early pages of the section entitled "What on Earth are Scrogs?").

***Scroggs Wood & Sites* near Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England**

Near the village of Staveley in Cumbria, England, a cluster of "Scroggs" place names gathers around the lower slopes of a modest hill called **Elf Howe**. Here we find **Scroggs Wood, Scroggs Bridge**, **Scroggs Farm,** and **Scroggs Lane** all compressed into a relatively small pastoral landscape, with **Scroggs Fold** and **Scroggs Close** not too far away.

The name **Elf Howe** fits the area perfectly. **"Howe"** derives from the **Old Norse** word **"*haugr*": ** meaning a hill, knoll, or burial mound.[315] Across Cumbria and the landscapes of northern England influenced by Old Norse, names ending in *-howe*, *-gill*, *-beck*, and *-fell* serve as reminders of Viking settlement and language.[316]

Elf Howe rises only about 188 m above sea level, a small hill (hence, elf hill) between two much larger hill formations: Hugill Fell (273 m) and Reston Scar (255 m) to its west and Potter Fell (with Brunt Knott, 427 m) to its east.

Elf Howe's low slopes shape the surrounding land in subtle ways. The woods cling to the lower folds of the hill where drainage, shelter, and uneven ground made full agricultural clearance impractical.

The surviving woods beneath Elf Howe's hilltop appear as small woodland chunks within a broader agrarian landscape of fields, hedgerows, and farms. (**See photo: View towards Staveley and Scroggs Wood**, at top right.) The photo at top right was taken from the flanks of Brunt Knott, about 1 mile (1.5 km) to the northeast of Scroggs Wood, looking southwest towards Scroggs Wood and Staveley. The wide hilltop view shows Staveley on the left towards the horizon. The eastern lobe of Scroggs Wood can be seen just left of center, with fields of bright green to the right, partitioned by stone walls. Elf Howe's small hilltop comes into view over the edge of Scroggs Wood and the lush green fields. The darker ridge of Hugill Fell and Reston Scar runs behind.

(256) VIEW TOWARDS STAVELEY AND SCROGGS WOOD. Staveley at back left. Scroggs Wood just left of center, with bright green fields to the right.

The roughly **15 acres** of **Scroggs Wood** sit in two main lobes at the base of Elf Howe. They are not dense forests, but irregular broadleaf woodland edges woven into pasture, scrub, and scattered trees. **Hawthorn** grows prominently along the woodland margins with **Blackthorn** thickets tangled among the edges. Other species of trees include **Ash**, **Oak**, and **Sycamore**, with **conifers** in the western lobe. The woods feel transitional: not fully wild woodland, nor fully improved farmland, but a soft ecological seam between the two.

(257) EASTERN EDGE OF SCROGGS WOOD. Scroggs Wood at left, behind the wall.

[315] "Haugr" in the *Old Norse Dictionary*, available at https://cleasby-vigfusson-dictionary.vercel.app/word/haugr

[316] "Field and Place Names" on the Rylstone Project, available at https://www.rylstoneproject.com/place-and-field-names

(258) SOUTHEASTERN EDGE OF SCROGGS WOOD NEAR STAVELEY. Early June.
Left of center, a **Hawthorn** blooms in white near the end of a dry-stone wall.
What looks like a thick, bushy, slightly brownish **Blackthorn** sits to the left of the central Hawthorn.
Behind the Hawthorn, Scroggs Wood stands along the sloped base of Elf Howe.
On the right, in the background, the farm buildings of Middle Elfhowe appear on the back (north) side of Elf Howe.

In the **photo above**, **Hawthorn** blooms in white at the southeastern edge of **Scroggs Wood**, standing at the base of **Elf Howe**. Rough pasture, a stone wall partition, thorn scrub, and broadleaf woodland merge together here in a classic "scrog" landscape.

In the **photo** at **right**, the trees from the left edge of the photo to just left of center form **Scroggs Wood**, which covers most of Elf Howe's southern base and slopes. A thinner stretch of patchy trees and grass connects the western lobe of Scroggs Wood (at the left edge) with its eastern lobe (left of center). Scroggs Farm sits just out of frame to the left.

(259) VIEW UP THE KENT VALLEY WITH SCROGGS WOOD. Standing about 700 m southeast of Scroggs Farm, looking northwest. Scroggs Wood runs from the left edge (west) to just left of center (east).

***Scroggs Bridge*: near Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England**

(260) SCROGGS BRIDGE. Over the River Kent, north of Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England. View from the south side of the bridge looking northwest.

Scroggs Bridge spans the **River Kent** about a ½-mile (less than 1 km) north of the village of **Staveley** in **Cumbria**, northwest England. It ties Brow Foot Lane together with Kentmere Road and Elph Howe Lane. Scrog names sometimes survive at crossings and boundaries where the scrogs once served as a distinctive landmark feature.

This old rubble-stone bridge crosses the water just about 330 feet (100 m) from the western edge of Scroggs Wood. **Scroggs Bridge** dates back to at least the **late 1700s or earlier**. The bridge appeared on a **1770 map** of the county of Westmoreland by Thomas Jefferys, but that map did not list any name for it.[317] (**See map**, at right.) Historically, Staveley fell within the county of Westmoreland, but it became part of the county of Cumbria in 1974.

(261) SCROGGS BRIDGE NEAR STAVELEY ON MAP OF THE COUNTY OF WESTMORELAND BY THOMAS JEFFERYS (ANNOTATED). Surveyed 1768 and published 1770. Blue circle & blue text added by the Author.

[317] "Scroggs Bridge, Hugill" on Old Cumbria Gazetteer, available at https://www.lakesguides.co.uk/html/lgaz/lk17484.htm

Later records from January **1806** confirm the name of the bridge as **"Scroggs Bridge"** and note its location "over the River Kent … from the market town of … Kendal", which is about 5 miles (8 km) to the southeast. By then, Scroggs Bridge had fallen into a state of "great decay, broken and ruinous" that required repairs by the county. In **1865-67**, records stated it needed more repairs and also widening.[318]

Timeworn but enduring, the bridge still ties the surrounding woods, lanes, and farms together, much as it has for generations.

Scroggs Bridge near **Staveley** gives us a solid example of a **riparian (riverside) scrog**. Like many "Scroggs" place-names, the name refers to this rough edge between water, field, and crossing rather than to deep woodland. Not a large, dramatic forest. Not an upland moor. Rather, the memorable margin where roads and fields meet water.

Riparian trees like **Alder** and **Willow** line the River Kent at the water's edge. (**See photo**, below.)

(262) THE RIVER KENT FROM SCROGGS BRIDGE. View northward from the top of the bridge. Alder and Willow trees have a strong presence at the riverbanks.

Behind the Alder and Willow, the thorn scrub (scrogs) rises: primarily **Hawthorn**, with some **Blackthorn** and **Bramble**. (**See photo**, top right.)

And beyond the scrogs, pasture unfolds. (**See photos**, at center right and bottom right.)

(263) SCROGGS BRIDGE (SOUTH SIDE). View of the south side of the bridge looking northeast. This angle gives a clearer view of the scrub layer.

(264) SCROGGS BRIDGE (WEST SIDE). View from the road on the southwest side of the bridge, looking to the northeast. The red box is a post box for mail. A pasture on the east side of the river peeks out from between the trees.

(265) SCROGGS BRIDGE (EAST SIDE). View from the field on the east side of the bridge, looking to the southwest.

[318] "Supplemental Records: Staveley" on BHO (British History Online), available at https://www.british-history.ac.uk/kendale-barony/vol3/pp156-161 (from a 1926 book of records edited by John F. Curwen).

The photos on the previous page give a broader context: a layer of scrogs form the boundary between pastures and riparian trees.

In the **photo below**, we see a similar dynamic in a field about 400 m north of Scroggs Bridge. The field gives way to a layer of scrogs (mostly composed of Hawthorn), and then to a layer of riverside trees (mostly Alder and Willow) lining the River Kent. The hillside in the background slopes up into Hugill Fell from the west bank of the River Kent.

(266) FIELD NORTH OF SCROGGS BRIDGE. View looking to the west. Near the cottages of lower Elfhowe. This field sits on the east side of the River Kent, just under 400 m north of Scroggs Bridge.

The Scroggs Bridge near Staveley does not hold exclusive claim to the "Scroggs Bridge" place name. There is a **different Scroggs Bridge** (not pictured) that spans the **Water of Milk** about 1.2 miles (2 km) east of the town of **Lockerbie** in the Dumfries and Galloway area of southwestern **Scotland**. Sites near that bridge include Scroggs Bank, **Scroggs Cleuch** (a gully or ravine), a farm/settlement called Scroggs, and the former site of Scroggs Mill. *See* Appendix (GPS coordinates, with notes).

Even though **Scroggs Bridge** near **Staveley** in **England** cannot claim exclusive title to the name Scroggs Bridge, it may still hold the crown for the most photographed Scroggs Bridge.

(267) SCROGGS CLEUCH. A scroggy ravine near the other Scroggs Bridge over the Water of Milk in southwest Scotland. Gorse (left), bracken (ferns), and Hawthorn, with Larch and Sitka Spruce.

***Scroggs Farm*: near Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England**

Scroggs Farm lies nearby, tucked into the same rustic mosaic at the base of Elf Howe. It sits on the east bank of the **River Kent**, just 330 feet (100 m) south of Scroggs Wood and Scroggs Bridge, about 400 m north of the village of **Staveley**.

An oil painting of the farm from **1870** shows that the land around it has long been shaped by enclosed fields, scattered trees, and rough woodland edges. (**See inset: Scroggs's Farm, Staveley**, below.)

SCROGG'S FARM: STAVELEY

(268) "VIEW OF SCROGG'S FARM, STAVELEY" (1870), an oil painting by **William Taylor Longmire** (1841-1914).

By 1870, the farm had already acquired the "Scroggs" name. The terrain in the painting bears a striking resemblance to the modern photos, but it looks like it might have been a bit wilder then.

Like so many "Scrog" place names in Britain, the name points not to a single tree but to the rough, scrubby margins between pasture and woodland

Scroggs Farm sits within a living scrog landscape. Woodland clings to the rougher ground around the hills, while pasture spreads across the gentler slopes below. Grazing shapes the scrog landscape on the farm: sheep graze the pasture; thorny scrogs grow along the edges; scattered trees grow on the rough hillsides beyond. The dry-stone walls, scattered trees, thorn scrub, and grazed fields together create the same patchwork of woodland edge and open pasture that gave rise to so many "Scrog" place names across northern England and Scotland.

(269) SCROGGS FARM GATE. South side, Scroggs Farm.

(270) SHEEP AT SCROGGS FARM. View towards the west from the north side of the farm. Hugill Fell in the background.

(271) SCROGGS FARM. View of the farm buildings and dry-stone walls around them, looking northwards. Just 1,600 feet (500 m) north of Staveley in Cumbria, northwest England.

Scroggs Lane also survives within this cluster of sites near Scroggs Wood, Bridge, and Farm. Scroggs Lane provides a footpath/bridleway that runs from near Scroggs Bridge, along the western edge of Scroggs Wood, and towards Scroggs Farm. (**See photos: Scroggs Lane**, following pages.)

South of Scroggs Bridge by about ½ mile (1 km), nearby **Scroggs Fold** and **Scroggs Close** preserve the old name within later agricultural and residential development. In northern England, a "fold" usually referred to a small enclosure or sheep fold, while a "close" referred to an enclosed field or parcel of land.[319] These names hint that the landscape of "Scroggs" in Staveley was not deep wilderness, but a working agrarian environment where woodland, grazing pasture, rough scrub, and human activity overlapped for centuries.

Whatever its past, today Scroggs Fold looks like a residential building. It sits on the south side of Brow Lane, just across the lane from St. James Church. Scroggs Close now serves as a short cul-de-sac street ("close") for terraced row houses.

(272) VIEW TOWARDS STAVELEY. Looking southwest. Scroggs Close tucked behind trees near center. Scroggs Fold around right of center, hidden by the tree on the right, probably a Sycamore.

The persistence of so many related "Scroggs" names within such a small area suggests that the "Scroggs" of old may once have described a broader ecological region of rough edges woven into the old landscape at the foot of Elf Howe and nearby areas.

Today, the same rough edges that helped preserve Scroggs Wood for hundreds of years can also threaten it. These marginal woodland fringes can attract garbage dumping. (**See photo: Old tires at the edge of Scroggs Wood**, below.)

(273) OLD TIRES AT THE EDGE OF SCROGGS WOOD. On the south side of the western lobe of Scroggs Wood. Ash, Sycamore, and conifer trees at the edge of the wood, with bracken (ferns), Bramble, and rough grasses along the ground level.

Despite these pressures, the surviving woods continue to preserve fragments of the old landscape.

(274) VIEW FROM HALL LANE. Scroggs Wood on the right. Scroggs Farm just over the central pasture hill. Reston Scar (peak: 255 m) in the background. Photo taken standing about 150 m east of Scroggs Wood, view to the southwest.

[319] "The Field Systems of Breckland" (*circa* 1962) by M.R. Postgate, *The Agricultural History Review*, available at https://www.bahs.org.uk/AGHR/ARTICLES/10n2a2.pdf

(275) SCROGGS LANE NEAR STAVELEY IN MAY. Looking to the north: a linear woodland edge ecosystem. Ash and Sycamore trees line the lane, perhaps with some Hazel. Bluebells bloom ahead, on the right side of the lane. Photo courtesy of **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr). *See* Image Attributions for more information.

(276) SUNRISE BREAKING THROUGH THE MIST OVER SCROGGS WOOD FROM A FROSTY SCROGGS LANE. The profile of Scroggs Wood's western lobe runs along the southwestern slope of Elf Howe, left of the lane. Photo courtesy of **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr). *See* Image Attributions for more information.

(277) SCROGGS LANE NEAR STAVELEY. Dark clouds loom while Ash trees hang over mossy dry-stone walls. Photo courtesy of **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr). *See* Image Attributions for more information.

No surviving source readily accessible online seems to preserve a direct explanation for exactly how the Scroggs Wood, Scroggs Bridge, Scroggs Farm, or Scroggs Lane near Staveley received the "Scrog" place name designation. However, records confirm that these names have held for centuries.

Much like the Land of Scrogges and many of the British Scrogs, the "Scroggs" in Scroggs Wood, Bridge, Farm, and Lane appear to be based on an old topographic term. Any explicit explanation for the inaugural naming has long since vanished, leaving only the place-name and residual woodland fringes.

(278) LOOKING DOWN ON STAVELEY. From Reston Scar northwest of Staveley, looking to the southeast.

(279) RESTON SCAR PANORAMA. L to R: Staveley, Reston Scar, Hugill Fell, Scroggs Farm, & Scroggs Wood on Elf Howe.

***Scroggs Wood & Scroggs Lane*: Kendal, Cumbria, northwest England**

About 5-6 miles (8-10 km) southeast of Scroggs Bridge and Scroggs Farm (near Staveley), we find a different **Scroggs Wood** lining the edges of a suburb in the civil parish of **Helsington**, south of the town of **Kendal**, in **Cumbria**, northwest England.

Here we see scrogs in a more **urban riverside** setting – demonstrating that scrogs are not a single habitat, but a pattern.

Woodland Trust actively manages this wood as a maintained edge habitat rather than a truly wild scrog woodland.[320]

Scroggs Wood in Helsington only occupies about **7-8 acres**, consisting of **two narrow woodland strips** that average just 30-160 feet (10-50 m) in width. These narrow woodland strips join at one end to form **an "L" shape**.

One of the woodland strips runs between a farm field and housing development on the south side of Helsington and Kendal. **Scroggs Lane** runs east-west right through this first woodland strip to the River Kent at the joint of the "L" shape.

(280) SCROGGS LANE THROUGH SCROGGS WOOD.

The other strip forms a **riparian** woodland that runs between the east side of the Helsington housing development and the **River Kent**.

Most of Scroggs Wood is an **ancient broadleaf** wood with **waterside scrub** where it borders the River Kent.

Broadleaf Woodland

Scroggs Wood features **trees** of mostly **Ash** and **Sycamore** with some other species like **Oak**, **Elm**, **Beech**, and **Lime** also present.

The wood also has **shrubs** of **Hawthorn**, **Hazel**, **Holly**, and **Elder**.

Waterside Scrub

The **waterside** strip features some multi-stemmed **Common Alder** (*Alnus glutinosa*) and **Goat Willow** (*Salix caprea*).

(281) ALDER TREES. A line of alder trees (*Alnus glutinosa*) stands along a canal.

(282) GOAT WILLOW (*SALIX CAPREA*).

[320] "Scroggs Wood: Kendal" on Woodland Trust UK, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/visiting-woods/woods/scroggs-wood/

In places, the **waterside scrub** layer gets dense and impenetrable: **Blackthorn** and **Hawthorn** reign in these areas, with smaller amounts of **Willow** (*Salix* species), **Elm** (various species within the genus of *Ulmus*), and **Holly** (*Ilex aquifolium*).

(283) SCROGGS WOOD BY RIVER KENT.
Waterside scrub species form a "wet scrog" along the riverside.
Alder and Willow line the wet riverbank.
Blackhorn and Hawthorn appear on the slightly drier edges, along with more Willow and Holly.
Foreground: ground layer of nettles with rough grasses and damp-loving herbs.

Ground Flora

The rich **ground flora** in Scroggs Wood includes dog's mercury with ivy, dewberry, wild garlic, and bluebells.

A significant patch of **yellow star-of-Bethlehem** (*Gagea lutea*) thrives on the ancient woodland floor, blooming in late March through April. (**See photo**, at right.) The ground flora also includes clumps of **herb Paris** (*Paris quadrifolia* aka true lover's knot) and **Solomon's Seal** (*Polygonatum multiflorum* aka David's harp or ladder-to-heaven).[321]

(284) YELLOW STAR-OF-BETHLEHEM (*GAGEA LUTEA*).

[321] "Scroggs Wood Management Plan: 2019-2024" on Woodland Trust UK, at pages 5-7, 9-10, 15-16, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/46687/4063-scroggs-wood.pdf

The **Woodland Trust**'s management plan for Scroggs Wood at Helsington / Kendal[322] confirms that scrogs are not just scrubby edges, but dynamic systems – rolling from riversides lined with Alder and Willow to thickets of Blackthorn and Hawthorn and into a species-rich woodland beyond. And these systems of scrogs are capable of persistence, stable structure, and even ecological maturity over time.

Scroggs Wood shows scrogs not as isolated patches but as **living corridors** – wet **waterside scrub** along the River Kent and **lane-side woodland** between fields and housing, all shaped by the same edge-driven ecology seen across the other sites.

(285) SCROGGS WOOD SUNSET.
Photo courtesy of **Rich Berry**. *See* Image Attributions section for more details.
An Ash tree (left) shares the view as the sun sets the sky ablaze with color.
Scroggs Wood runs in a dark band on the horizon (center & right), as if to underline the sunset.
The River Kent rushes in front of the woods, hidden by the sloped pasture.
Woodland, pasture, river, and dry-stone walls meet here.
Even small woods can hold the evening light.

[322] "Scroggs Wood Management Plan: 2019-2024" on Woodland Trust UK, at pages 5-7, 9-10, 15-16, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/46687/4063-scroggs-wood.pdf

(286) HELSINGTON: COUNTRYSIDE SCENERY. Photo taken about 200 m from the western tip of Scroggs Wood. Camera pointed west, away from Scroggs Wood.

(287) SCROGGS WEIR. Kayakers navigate over Scroggs Weir on the River Kent. Riparian strip of Scroggs Wood in the background.

(288) HELSINGTON BARROWS. About 1.2 miles (2 km) west/southwest of Scroggs Wood.

***Scrogg House Farm*: near Sedbergh, northwest England**

Scrogg House Farm near the town of **Sedbergh** makes a superb case study, drawing parallels with the Land of Scrogges in the Scottish Borders. This farm sits near the north bank of the **River Rawthey**, about ½ mile (1 km) east of Sedbergh in an area known as the **Yorkshire Dales**. Sedbergh falls within the ceremonial county of **Cumbria** and within the historic boundaries of the **West Riding of Yorkhire**.

(289) RAWTHEY VALLEY, EAST OF SEDBERGH. View to the southeast from Crook (peak: 460 m) in the Howgills. Scrogg House Farm possibly at far left.

The current owners (since 2016) have collected some of the **farm's history**. According to them, **Scrog House** appeared on maps as early as **1568**. The only earlier record (dated 1280) showed no dwelling there. They attribute the Scrogg House name to references to **scrub land or scrub-covered water meadows** that bordered the property in its early days. A Norse longhouse once stood on the property (slightly east of the current buildings) when Norsemen used the valley as upper pastures during the Summer.[323]

(290) HOUSE AT SCROGG HOUSE FARM. Photo from 2009.

The owners converted a **barn** and an **old smithy** at Scrogg House Farm into **holiday cottages**. Guests who rent the cottages can enjoy nearby wild swimming, fishing, and time near the animals on the property.[324] The farm property hosts an array of cows, sheep, donkeys, dogs, and chickens.[325]

(291) BARN AT SCROGG HOUSE FARM. Along the south side of the A683. Photo from 2014, before the current owners converted it to a rental cottage.

[323] "Scrogg House Farm: A Little History" on the Scrogg House Farm website, available at https://scrogghouse.farm/home/a-little-history/

[324] "Scrogg House Farm: Accommodation" on the Scrogg House Farm website, available at https://scrogghouse.farm/accommodations/

[325] "Scrogg House Farm: Our Animals" on the Scrogg House Farm website, available at https://scrogghouse.farm/home/our-animals/

Scrogg House Farm near Sedbergh lies within the **valley** of the **River Rawthey**. The river gurgles and babbles over pebble beds just about 330 feet (100 m) south of the farm house.

(292) RIVER RAWTHEY. Standing on the north bank of the river, about 100 m south of Scrogg House Farm, looking to the south. Moss-covered Ash, Alder, and Willow drink from the oxygen-rich, turbulent waters of the river.

The famous **Howgill Fells** stand to the north of Scrogg House Farm, roughly a mile (1-2 km) away. **Howgill** comes from **Old Norse "haugr"** meaning hill or mound and **"gil"** meaning narrow ravine or valley.[326] Together, this means "hill with ravines" – which describes the Howgills exactly. Over eons of time, the Earth formed these grassy hills with myriad narrow valleys, gulleys, and rib-like ridges slicing down their flanks.

(293) THE RIVER RAWTHEY & HOWGILL FELLS. Standing about 3 miles (5 km) northeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking southwest towards Howgill Fells.

(294) BOWDERDALE IN THE HOWGILL FELLS. On the north side of the fells, about 4-5 miles (7 km) north of Scrogg House Farm.

This puts Scrogg House Farm right along the transition between rough, multi-folded hills and soft, pastoral valley land. That transitional geography makes favorable ground for wooded streams, scrub patches, and rough grazing edges – prime territory for scrogs.

Scrogs still thrive in strips and pockets near Scrogg House Farm. (**See photo: Buckbank Lane**, below.) Along nearby Buckbank Lane, **Blackthorn** forms a thicket wall on the west side (left), probably with some Hawthorn and Bramble mixed in. On the east side of the lane (right), **Hazel** appears to have a strong presence, with some Sycamore saplings and Elder possibly growing there.

(295) BUCKBANK LANE. About 800 m northeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking northeast. The white house is Ellerthwaite near Cautley. Knott of the Howgill Fells looms over the background.

[326] *See* **"Haugr"** in the *Old Norse Dictionary*, available at https://cleasby-vigfusson-dictionary.vercel.app/word/haugr (high, a how or mound); *see also* **"Gil"** in the *Old Norse Dictionary*, available at https://cleasby-vigfusson-dictionary.vercel.app/word/gil (deep narrow glen with a stream at the bottom).

The **Howgill Fells** look like something out of a dream. English fellwalker and guidebook author **A. Wainwright** once described the Howgill Fells as **"a herd of sleeping elephants."** Like giant ripples that cascade over the fabric of the Earth, the seasons and light constantly transform them.

The fells lend the landscape a feeling of scale and age. The stone walls, thorn scrub, rushes, sheep, woods, and scattered farms seem small beneath their presence. The fells transcend scenery. They feel like something ancient watching over the land.

(296) THE HOWGILLS FELLS IN JULY. Photo taken about 1.2 miles (2 km) southeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking mostly west, slightly north. **Scrogg House Farm** can barely be seen, just right of center, past the tree line, peeking out through the treetops.

(297) THE HOWGILL FELLS: SUMMER DREAM. Late July. About 3-4 miles (6 km) north of Scrogg House Farm, looking north.

(298) THE HEATHER & THE HOWGILL FELLS. A Rowan tree, or possibly a Hawthorn, grows in the shadow of the Howgill Fells, near a strip of heather and bilberry in the foreground.

(299) SWALEDALE SHEEP AND THE HOWGILL FELLS. Sheep stand proudly in Britain's hills. About 4-5 miles (7 km) northwest of Scrogg House Farm, looking eastward.

(300) HORSES AMONG THE HOWGILL FELLS. About 5 miles (8 km) northwest of Scrogg House Farm, looking to the east.

(301) THE HOWGILL FELLS IN OCTOBER. Photo taken from about 1.2 miles (2 km) southeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking to the northwest. Scrogg House Farm is just out of frame to the left.

(302) THE HOWGILL FLANKS, LIKE A SLUMBERING DINOSAUR. October. About 2 miles (3 km) northwest of Scrogg House Farm, looking to the northwest.

(303) DARK SKIES OVER THE HOWGILL FELLS. Mid-September. About 6 miles (10 km) southeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking northwest towards The Calf.

(304) SNOW-COVERED HOWGILL FELLS OVER THE LUNE VALLEY. December. Aerial view. Northwest of Scrogg House Farm by about 3-4 miles (6 km).

(305) OVERLOOKING LANGDALE, HOWGILL FELLS. March. About 6 miles (10 km) north of Scrogg House Farm.

(306) SNOW-CAPPED HOWGILL FELLS. Early April. About 4-5 miles (7 km) southeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking northwest towards The Calf.

(307) VIEW TOWARDS THE HOWGILL FELLS. About 6 miles (10 km) southwest of Scrogg House Farm, looking to the northeast.

(308) LANGDALE IN THE HOWGILLS. August. About 5-6 miles (9 km) north of Scrogg House Farm.

(309) ROADSIDE VIEWPOINT MARKER NEAR THE HOWSGILL FELLS. About 1.2 miles (2 km) southeast of Scrogg House Farm, looking northwest.

***Scroggs Wood*: near Burnley in Lancashire, northwest England**

Another **Scroggs Wood** grows about ½ mile (1 km) northeast of the town of **Burnley** in the county of **Lancashire**, northwest England. This Scroggs Wood has become part of a **woodland recreation park**, further broadening our "Spectrum of Scrogs."

Scroggs Wood now falls within **Brun Valley Forest Park (BVFP)**, a network of paths, managed woodland, wildlife meadows, wetland, and formal parkland that links together several areas owned by Burnley Borough Council and Lancashire County Council. Once dominated by coal mines, brick works, clay pits, railway sidings, and sewage works, the Brun Valley Forest Park area has been restored to nature over the last half century.[327]

The BVFP Plan from 2016 shows Scroggs Wood standing between the modern **Innovation Drive** (an aerospace industry site within the larger engineering, distribution, & manufacturing complex called the **Heasandford Industrial Estate**) on the west and the **River Don** on the east, just before the River Don joins the **River Brun** to the south.[328] At about 700 to 1,000 m long (north-south) and roughly 200 m wide (east-west), this Scroggs Wood occupies about **35-50 acres**.

The BVFP has recorded some of the flora and fauna found in Scroggs Wood.

Flora includes some classic scrog **shrubs** like **Bramble** and **Holly**. The banks of the River Don in Scroggs Wood also host **riparian** species like marsh and water **Horsetail** and **Willow**.

Fauna includes **Woodmice** and various year-round birds: **Treecreepers**, **Jays**, and **Tawny Owls**. Tawny Owls tend to favor mature woodland edges and mixed woodlands. Their presence suggests a layered habitat and structural complexity in a healthy woodland-edge ecosystem.

(310) TAWNY OWL (*STRIX ALUCO*). Tawny Owls now haunt the forest margins of Scroggs Wood, fitting inhabitants for a landscape of tangled timberlines and shadowed thickets.

At dusk, Tawny Owls often trade their eerie calls across woodland fringes and river corridors. Older British folklore sometimes casts their voices as omens of mystery, loneliness, or approaching weather.

Scroggs Wood also hosts abundant **insect** life. **Butterflies** like the Speckled Wood and Orange Tip make a home in Scroggs Wood seasonally. **Tree Bumblebees** buzz through the wood from

[327] "Brun Valley Forest Park" on Burnley.gov.UK, available at https://burnley.gov.uk/parks-green-spaces/brun-valley-forest-park/

[328] "Plan of Brun Valley Forest Park", available at https://burnley.gov.uk/wp-content/uploads/2022/02/BVFP-Plan-2016.pdf

March through July. The River Don also attracts **dragonflies** like the **Broad-Bodied Chaser**.[329]

Woodland peripheries often rank among the richest ecological zones in Britain. Sunlight, shelter, moisture, shrubs, mature trees, and open grass all meet together there, creating habitats for insects, birds, mammals, and browsing animals alike.

At the outskirts of Scroggs Wood, we see classic scrog species: Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, and Bramble with some scattered Ash trees. (**See photo: In Scroggs Wood (June)**, below.)

Deeper into the wood's interior, it matures into Hazel with Ash, Oak, and some Sycamore. (**See photo: Woodland in Scroggs Wood (Jan)**, at right.)

(311) WOODLAND IN SCROGGS WOOD (JANUARY). Multi-stem clumps of Hazel with scattered Ash, Oak, and Sycamore. This part of Scroggs Wood has matured.

(312) IN SCROGGS WOOD (JUNE). Nothing flashy, but an accurate portrait of scrogs. Classic scrog species abound here: Hawthorn trees with some multi-stemmed Hazel trees. Mixed in, we find some taller Ash trees and some lower Blackthorn thickets. Bramble, bracken (ferns), and some rough grasses also appear on the ground level.

[329] "BVFP Wildlife Interpretation Panel", at page 1 (Scroggs Wood), available at https://burnley.gov.uk/wp-content/uploads/2022/02/BVFP-Interpretation-signage-Phase-2_Mock-up6.pdf

(313) SCROGGS WOOD ON THE EDGE. Scroggs Wood survives in the modern era. View to the west from a farm field in the foreground. The Heasandford Industrial Estate sits behind (west of) the trees of Scroggs Wood. The River Don runs right through Scroggs Wood. Mid-March.

(314) FOOTPATH BETWEEN INDUSTRIAL ESTATE AND SCROGGS WOOD. In early June, a Hawthorn tree blooms in white (right), marking the transition between developed ground and surviving fringe woodland. This path on the west side of Scroggs Wood leads to Widow Hill Road in Heasandford Industrial Estate.

(315) FOOTBRIDGE ACROSS THE RIVER DON, AT THE EDGE OF SCROGGS WOOD. January, east side of Scroggs Wood. Alder, Ash, Willow, thorn scrub, and tangled riverside vegetation create a damp woodland-edge habitat beside the river corridor.

(316) THE RIVER DON PASSING COCKDEN BRIDGE. Northeast of Scroggs Wood, which starts about ½ mile (1 km) downstream from this spot.

(317) CONFLUENCE OF THE RIVER DON AND THE RIVER BRUN. At the southern edge of Scroggs Wood, looking south as the River Don (in the foreground) flows south (up) into the River Brun. Here, the River Brun flows from east to west (left to right).

(318) THE RIVER BRUN. From near the southern edge of Scroggs Wood, looking upstream to the east towards the union with the River Don. Some maps label this area of the woods as Goit (or Groit) Wood or Netherwood. Butterbur (left foreground) and riparian woodland crowd the riverbank. Fast-moving water, damp soils, and sheltered banks help preserve rich waterside habitats. Rivers like this quietly shelter fragments of older woodland ecology within modern urban and industrial landscapes.

The **photo below** reveals what a scrog edge looks like in a lived landscape. A road and farm track leads to nearby Netherwood Farm. On the near left side, the soft pale foliage, airy crown, and lean in towards damp ground suggest **Willow** trees. **Poplar** trees stand tall and upright in the back towards the center. A dense, twiggy **Hawthorn** makes its home on the right side of the road in front of the Poplar. Some **Blackthorn** mixes into the denser thorn scrub, where the scrub thickens near the road's edge. **Bramble** weaves itself through the tangles of lower scrub. Rough grasses, nettles, and meadow herbs flourish on the margins here. Scrogs occupy the thresholds of the world.

(319) NETHERWOOD FARM. East of Scroggs Wood.

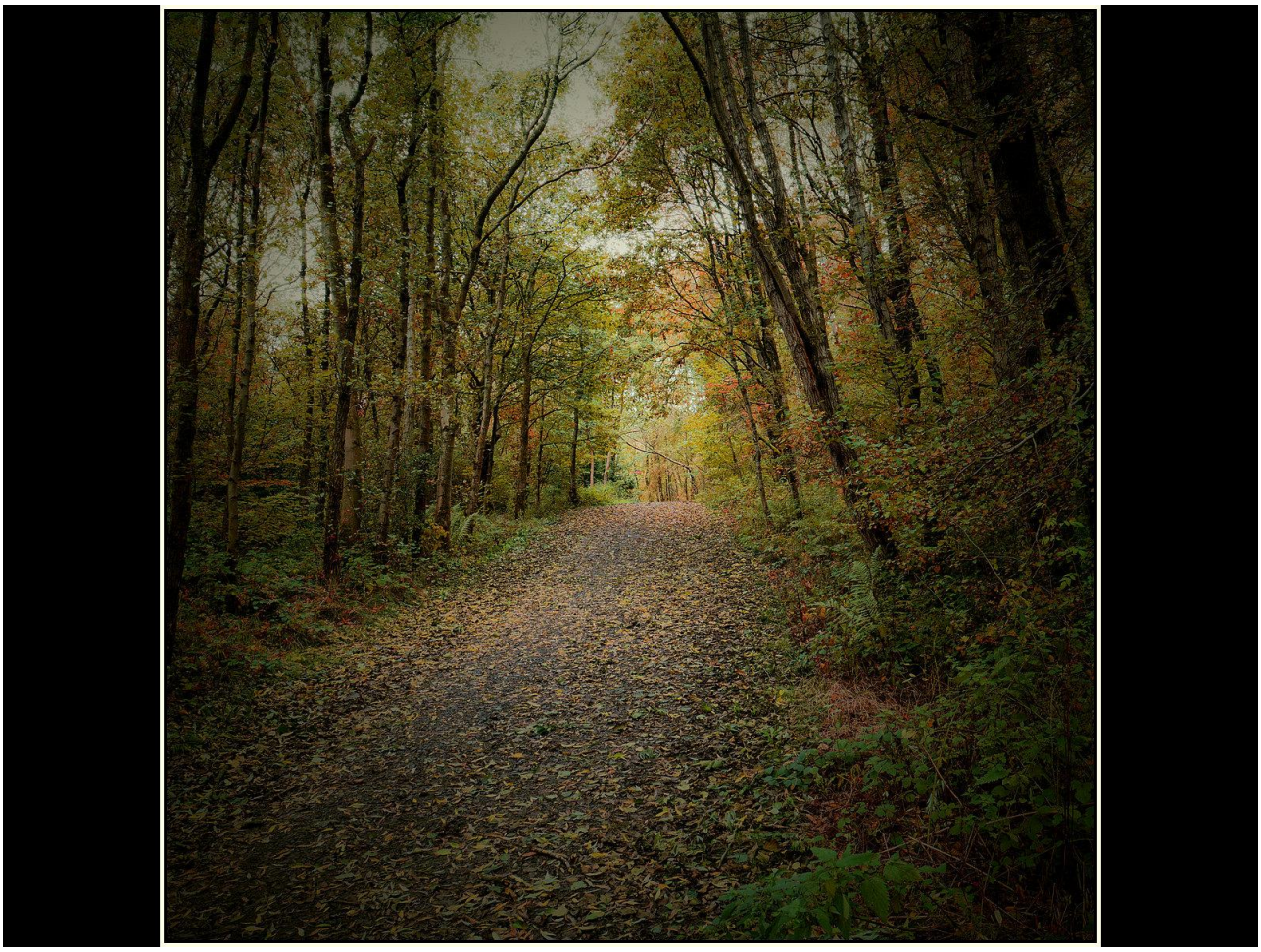
(320) FARM TRACK THROUGH THE EDGE OF SCROGGS WOOD. Late September provides subtle signs of seasonal change. View to the northeast from the southern edge of Scroggs Wood. Netherwood Farm lies off in the distance. Photo courtesy of **Barry Noon**. *See* Image Attributions section for more information.

Today, Scroggs Wood sits almost shockingly close to modern industry and development. And yet these urban woodlands, hedgerows, and minor rivers can still preserve fragments of much older ecological landscapes within the modern world.

Rivers often help sustain these urban woodland edges by creating damp soils, shelter, and natural movement corridors for plants and wildlife. Even relatively small river valleys like the River Don that runs through Scroggs Wood have the power to save rich pockets of biodiversity.

Tawny Owls favor these areas: mature woodland, woodland fringes, and sheltered river valleys. Their nighttime cries still echo through many a remnant British wood, including the naturalized fragment landscapes like Scroggs Wood.

Some scrogs survive quietly at the edges of the modern world. Even small woods can cast long shadows.



(321) SCROGGS WOOD IN LATE OCTOBER. Netherwood Road running through the southern area of Scroggs Wood. The Fall leaves rustle among tall Birch, Ash, and Sycamore trees. Bramble and ferns hover over the fallen Autumn foliage. Photo courtesy of **Barry Noon**. *See* Image Attributions section for more information.

***Nut Wood and Wauldby Scrogs*: near Raywell, northern England**

Nut Wood and **Wauldby Scrogs** sit a short stroll south of the hamlet of Raywell in the **East Riding of Yorkshire**, Northern England. Willerby (village) lies about 2 miles (3 km) to the east.

The wood and scrogs stretch along a narrow band, running east-west for about a ½ mile (1 km), with a width of only 100-200 m (north-south).

(322) ENTRANCE SIGN FOR NUT WOOD & WAULDBY SCROGS. On the east side, looking to the west.

Wauldby Scrogs stands at the border between woodland and development. Surrounding farm fields and pastures include **Wauldby Green** (photo, next page). Nut Wood forms the woodland. The Wauldby Scrogs live on the fringe in between these pastures, farmland, and woods.

Constantine Wood

In 1999, the triangular wedge of **Constantine Wood** was planted at the northeast corner of Nut Wood as a buffer zone between the woodlands and suburban development. The planted trees included Oak, Ash, Cherry, Field Maple, and **Rowan**. The planted shrubs included **Hawthorn**, **Blackthorn**, **Dog Rose**, and **Hazel**.[330] A modern, deliberately planned scrog.

(323) CONSTANTINE WOOD IN FRONT, WITH NUT WOOD BEHIND IT. View to the southwest from the northeast corner. Constantine Wood's shrubs and trees are noticeably shorter and lighter in color than the taller, darker Nut Wood behind it.

Nut Wood

Ash trees make up most of Nut Wood, which dates back to the 1200s or earlier. This broadleaf woodland also has **Beech** and **Sycamore** trees with scattered **Oak**, **Elm**, and some **conifers** (Larch and Pine). It occupies about **30 acres**.

(324) NUT WOOD. The heart of Nut Wood in June. Photo by **Paul Lakin**.

For a short time in late Spring, before the leaf cover darkens Nut Wood, the forest floor blooms with **blue bells**, **wild garlic**, and dogs mercury.[331]

[330] "Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs Management Plan: 2015-2020" by Woodland Trust, at pages 6-8, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/47040/4484-nut-wood-and-wauldby-scrogs.pdf

[331] "Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs Management Plan: 2015-2020" by Woodland Trust, at pages 8, 11, and18-19, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/47040/4484-nut-wood-and-wauldby-scrogs.pdf

For this reason, the wood is known locally as the "**Bluebell Wood**."[332]

(325) BLUEBELLS AND GARLIC BLOSSOMS IN NUT WOOD. Early May.

Wauldby Scrogs

A mature **Hazel** coppice dominates the roughly **4 acres** of Wauldby Scrogs, with occasional **Ash**, Oak, and Spruce. A thick scrub cover of **Blackthorn thickets** spans the boundaries, with **Elderberry** and Bramble (Blackberry) bushes in the interior. At the edge areas, **Hawthorn** trees also appear, some of which were planted more recently. Most of Wauldby Scroggs falls on the west side of Nut Wood.[333]

(326) WAULDBY SCROGS. On the west side, looking towards the east.

(327) SKIRTING WAULDBY SCROGS. Looking northwest, from the southwest corner of Wauldby Scrogs.

In the photo above (**Skirting Wauldby Scrogs**), Hazel coppices soften into Hawthorn along the field edge (which sits behind the camera). Multi-stemmed Hazel coppices are prominent on the left (west). A mixture of Hawthorn and Hazel appear on the right (east), with possible Blackthorn in the lower growth. Ask and Oak peek out of the background.

(328) WAULDBY GREEN AND BRAFFORDS CLUMP. View towards the east. Wauldby Scrogs starts about 700 m behind Braffords clump (of trees).

[332] "Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs" on Woodland Trust, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/visiting-woods/woods/nut-wood-wauldby-scrogs/

[333] "Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs Management Plan: 2015-2020" by Woodland Trust, at pages 7-8, and 19, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/47040/4484-nut-wood-and-wauldby-scrogs.pdf

Just west of Wauldby Scrogs, Hawthorn and Blackthorn stand guard over the woodland edge, while an old Ash tree arches over the bridleway. (**See photo, Tree arch over the bridleway near Wauldby Scrogs**, on right.) Here, we see a perfect threshold landscape: open field giving way to thorn scrub, and thorn scrub giving way to woodland – the living edge where a scrog begins.

In the photo below, we see a classic edge habitat at Wauldby Scrogs: pasture, hedgerow, path, and scrub woodland collide beneath a veil of Autumn mist. Mixed thorn species, including Hawthorn and Blackthorn, form a dense living boundary between cultivated land and woodland.

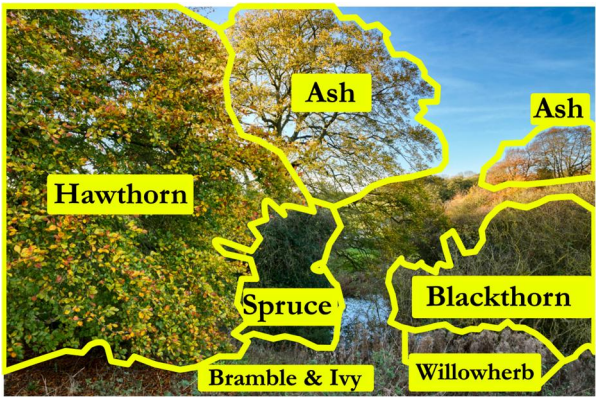
(329) TREE ARCH OVER THE BRIDLEWAY NEAR WAULDBY SCROGS. View towards the east. The western edge of Nut Wood begins about 200-400 m ahead.

(330) WHERE FIELD MEETS WAULDBY SCROGS. Morning mist drifts along the edge of Wauldby Scrogs. Here, open pasture rolls into to a managed Hawthorn-Blackthorn hedgerow, a narrow track, and finally the tangled woodland edge itself – a layered transition between field and wild ground. Photo courtesy of **Paul Lakin**. *See* Image Attributions section for more information.

(331) AUTUMN AT WAULDBY SCROGGS. Photo courtesy of **Paul Lakin**. *See* Image Attributions.

The **photo above** unveils a rich mix of classic scrog species at Wauldby Scrogs. Many of the species identified in Woodland Trust management records can be seen together here, including: **Hawthorn** (left), **Blackthorn** (right), **Bramble/Elder** (in the foreground), **Rosebay Willowherb** (front right), and a **Spruce** (or possibly a Larch) near the center, with some **Ash** trees standing tall in the background.

They all gather together with some **bracken /ferns** (center & right foreground, with the willow-herb) and **ivy** (left foreground) for a veritable family portrait. (**See annotated photo: Wauldby Scrogs: Family Portrait**, at right.)



(332) WAULDBY SCROGS: FAMILY PORTRAIT.

(333) EAST SIDE OF WAULDBY SCROGS & WEST SIDE OF NUT WOOD.
On the east side of Wauldby Scrogs, multi-stem Hazel trees still dominate, but
Ash trees begin to increase in numbers as Wauldby Scrogs transitions into Nut Wood.
Photo courtesy of **Paul Lakin**. *See* Image Attributions.

(334) THE LIGHT OF NUT WOOD. Ash trees dominate the east side of Nut Wood here,
accompanied by Beech and Sycamore,
with scattered Oak, Elm and conifers (Larch and Pine).
Photo courtesy of **Paul Lakin**. *See* Image Attributions.

(335) WILD GARLIC IN NUT WOOD. Beech trees quietly witness white blooms emerge from wild garlic in mid-April.

Woodland Trust attributes Wauldby Scrogs' name partly to the Norse village name of Wautby or Waldby, while suggesting that "Scrogs" may derive from the **Old Norse** word **"skógr"**[334] – meaning forest or woodland.

In Part 3: The Land of Scrogges, we discussed this as one of several **family-first** theories.

We also noted that the Scots word "scrog" could itself have connections to Old Norse influence. The *DOST* lists "scrog" as having an "unknown origin."[335] However, many words in Scots and northern English absorbed strong Old Norse influence through centuries of Viking settlement and cultural contact.[336]

If the Scots word "scrog" ultimately developed from the Old Norse word "skógr," then the two words may share a common linguistic ancestry and overlapping woodland meanings. In that sense, the distinction between Scots and Old Norse might be a distinction without much of a difference.

(336) BLUEBELLS IN NUT WOOD.

[334] "Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs Management Plan: 2015-2020" by Woodland Trust, at bottom of page 7, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/47040/4484-nut-wood-and-wauldby-scrogs.pdf

[335] *See* "Scrog" in the *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*, available at https://dsl.ac.uk/entry/dost/scrogg

[336] *See, e.g.,* "How Scandinavian is Scotland?" (2011) by Jon Kelly on BBC News Magazine, available at https://www.bbc.com/news/magazine-16050269

Pairs of snails love to ascend the trunks of Ash and Beech trees in Nut Wood. (**See photo**, at **right**.) In this photo from early May, two **Brown-lipped snails (*Cepaea nemoralis*)** or possibly **White-lipped snails (*Cepaea hortensis*)** enjoy each other's company on the fissured bark of an **Ash** tree. These snails are likely mating. They climb up to find a stable humid microclimate on the tree trunks, anywhere from ground level up to 10 feet (3 m) high. Even the tree trunks themselves become miniature ecosystems.

In the **photo below**, November sunlight filters through Nut Wood and a thorny tangle of **Blackthorn** at the edge of Wauldby Scrogs. Dark, ripe **sloe** linger on the Blackthorn branches. Inside this living lattice, the scrog becomes a world of sunbeams, shadows, and near impenetrable growth.

(337) SNAILS ON ASH TREE, NUT WOOD.

(338) BLACKTHORN LIGHT THROUGH NUT WOOD INTO WAULDBY SCROGS. Wauldby Scrogs and Nut Wood blend together here. Photo courtesy of **Paul Lakin**. *See* Image Attributions.

(339) A BIRD'S EYE VIEW WITH BRAFFORDS FARM, RAYWELL, NUT WOOD, WAULDBY SCROGS, & CONSTANTINE WOOD. View to the east from a plane. In the Yorkshire Wolds, scrogs survive not as vast forests, but as rough woodland seams stitched between the fields. The woodlands of interest grow on the right side of this photo.

In the **photo above**, **Braffords Farm** sits in the foreground center. Above the farm, about a mile (1.6 km) away, just to the right of center, the hamlet of **Raywell** stands on the left side of a visible soft S-curve in Riplingham Road.

On the bottom of the photo on the far right, the hedge-lined **bridleway path** winds its way up to a narrow band of woodland: **Wauldby Scrogs** at the bottom, **Nut Wood** above it stretching up into the photo's center, and **Constantine Wood** capping off the top of Nut Wood.

On the right side of Wauldby Scrogs, Nut Wood, and Constantine Wood, the **brown fields** suggest ground recently plowed or cultivated.

These woodlands survive as an ecological ribbon, squeezed between agriculture and development. The view from above highlights their fragility. Yet, they endure. They have help from Woodland Trust and the community: from the Forestry Commission to local government, local companies, trusts, and even the local residents, schools, and scouts. (There is a scout camp located nearby.) Local volunteers from the community planted nearly all of Constantine Wood themselves.[337]

These woods have witnessed centuries of human interaction. The wood appears in medieval records. Later farmers managed around them. Modern conservationists protect them. Local volunteers planted new woodland beside them. Scouts and schoolchildren still walk through them. That aerial photo shows us living landscape continuity. The woods are ancient, but not relics or museum pieces. These landscapes are still alive in the hearts and minds of the people who live with them.

[337] "Nut Wood & Waulby Scrogs Management Plan: 2015-2020" by Woodland Trust at pages 6-7, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/media/47040/4484-nut-wood-and-wauldby-scrogs.pdf

***Scrog Wood*: near Hutton Hang, North Yorkshire, northern England**

Scrog Wood stands along the edge of a field near the hamlet of **Hutton Hang** and about a ½-mile (1 km) to the southwest of the nearby village of Constable Burton in **North Yorkshire**, northern England.

Even at just **2 acres**, Scrog Wood still preserves a similar landscape pattern seen across Britain: **thorn scrub** at the **edge** between **field** and **woodland**.

The larger trees that dominate the wood look like **Ash** and **Oak** with possible **Sycamore** mixed in.

Hawthorn and **Bramble** dominate the scrogs layer. Some **Blackthorn** and **Hazel** may round out the key visible components. The ground layer likely consists of rough grasses with **bracken (ferns)** and **dog rose** at the sunny margins.

Interestingly, Scrog Wood may have matured over time, shifting the balance away from classic scrog species towards more Ash and Oak. But the name remains.

(340) SCROG WOOD (EARLY MARCH). Without the leaf cover, the branch patterns stand out better.

(341) SCROG WOOD (LATE MAY). Here, we see woodland and scrogs awash in a field full of brilliantly yellow, blooming rapeseed (used in canola oil). Scrog Wood is about 100 m wide from this angle.

***Scrogg House Farm*: near Scrog Wood in North Yorkshire, England**

A **Scrogg House Farm** sits just about 100 m northwest of **Scrog Wood**. A tightly cut Hawthorn hedge runs across a patchwork of arable fields – an ideal lowland scrog system.

A modern mixed farmyard – feed silos, barns, and working ground – quietly explains the nearby landscape: rotating crops, grazing livestock, and the thorny scrogs that still hold the fields together.

(342) FARM ROAD TO SCROGG HOUSE FARM, RUNNING RIGHT BY SCROG WOOD. Farm fields meet a managed hedgerow of Hathorn (and perhaps Blackthorn). Scrog Wood shows mostly Ash and Oak at its core.

(343) HEDGED FIELDS NEAR SCROGG HOUSE FARM. Hawthorn hedge with lichens and mosses.

(344) SCROGG HOUSE FARM. Feed silos and barns suggest livestock and mixed agricultural use.

***Scroggs Farm*: near Hunton in North Yorkshire, northern England**

Another **Scroggs Farm** can be found near the village of Hunton in **North Yorkshire**. It is less than ½ mile (800 m) southwest of the village of **Hunton**. And it is just about 2 miles (3 km) to the northeast of the **Scrog Wood** and **Scrogg House Farm** near Hutton Hang and Constable Burton.

The photo below subtly reinforces the same scrog system typical of lowland farming areas. It emphasizes not the scrog itself, but the open field that scrogs can help protect.

Trees and scrogs were likely cleared to make the farm field. Thorn hedges and scrogs were confined to the margins: where plows did not go, grazing was limited, and boundaries were needed. Some trees survived for wind buffering and visual markers.

In the photo below, we see:

- A **Pedunculate Oak (English Oak)** in the foreground (upper left);
- **Cereal crop** at young stage (very green) in the foreground field;
- **Farmstead buildings** in a cluster behind the crop field; and
- Probably **Ash**, **Oak**, and **Sycamore Maple** behind and around the farm buildings in small clusters (typical farm shelter trees).

Although not prominent in this photo, the hedge lines beyond the field edges may include **Hawthorn** and **Blackthorn**.

(345) SCROGGS FARM. A cereal field stretches toward a sheltered farmstead, with a lone Oak marking the boundary: another quiet example of how scrogs and trees are pushed to the margins in working farmland.

***Long Tongue Scrog Lane*: Kirkheaton, northern England**

The fabulously aptly named **Long Tongue Scrog Lane** helps round out our "Many Faces of British Scrogs." We find this lane on the east side of the village of **Kirkheaton**, in the Kirklees district of **West Yorkshire**, England. Kirkheaton sits to the east of the larger town of **Huddersfield**.

The southernmost scrog discussed so far, Long Tongue Scrog Lane still falls in northern England. Its length measures about **0.6 miles (1 km)**, a mix of dirt road, footpath, and paved street.

This **lane** has a field beside it that looks like a **long tongue**, with **scrogs** that adorn the lane on its sides. Hence, the name: Long Tongue Scrog Lane.[338]

Alongside the lane, **classic hedgerow / thorn scrub** species dominate the lower areas: mostly Hawthorn, with some Blackthorn mixed in. Ash and Oak trees stretch out in the heights. Bracken (ferns) and Bramble fill in much of the lower gaps.

Shall we take a **virtual stroll** down the lane together? Let's start at the west and head east!

(346) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE (WITH SIGN). West end of the lane, at fork with Lane Side Lane.

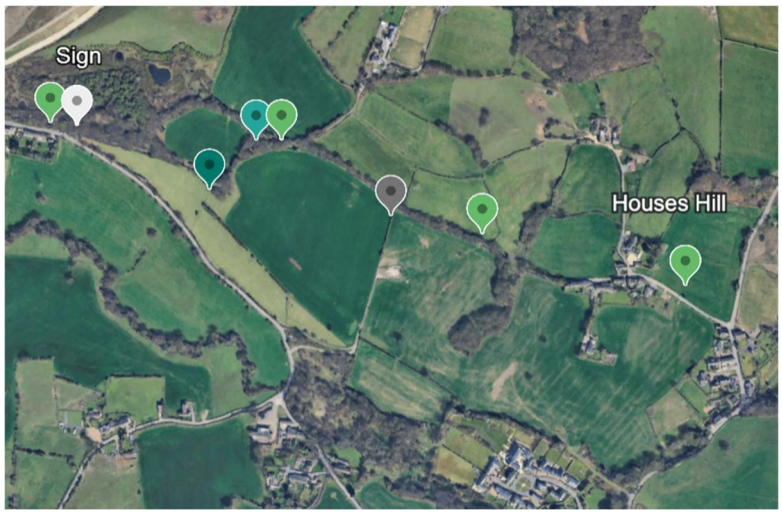
(348) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE AT LANE SIDE. Long Tongue Scrog Lane (left) breaks off from Lane Side Lane (right) here, with the thick scrogs giving a tunnel effect.

(347) PAVED WALKING PATH ALONG LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE.

(349) SIGN: LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE.

[338] "Horrodiddle, Long Tongue Scrog Lane and Sexhow – how the strangest-sounding Yorkshire places got their names" (2022) by Dave Himelfield, on YorkshireLive, available at https://www.examinerlive.co.uk/news/local-news/yorkshires-silliest-sounding-place-names-20630710 (citing the late Huddersfield local historian Dr. George Redmonds).

But first, let's examine some **satellite images** to help us ***see*** how the lane got its name. The **pins** (added by the Author) mark the **locations of several photos** taken along Long Tongue Scrog Lane. The **white pin** marks the sign where Long Tongue Scrog Lane branches off from Lane Side Lane. The **green pins** represent the camera location for photos of Long Tongue Scrog Lane. That designation for the hamlet of **Houses Hill** actually comes from Google Earth. Other maps center the label for Houses Hill to the southeast. The **gray pin** marks a paved footpath section of the lane (**see photo: Paved walking path along Long Tongue Scrog Lane**, previous page).



(350) SATELLITE IMAGE: OVERHEAD VIEW OF LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE
(with labeled pins added by the Author).
Image ©2026 Google; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025).

Then we add:

- **yellow highlighting** to the **lane**; and
- **bright green highlighting** for the **field** beside the lane.

Now, the naming of the lane will register immediately. See **below**. With that, let's pick up our tour, heading east!

(351) SATELLITE IMAGE (ANNOTATED): LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE
(with annotations and labeled pins added by the Author).
Image ©2026 Google; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025).

(352) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. A long tongue of thorn and hedge, forming a distinctive name.

(353) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE (WITH RECENT HEDGEROW PLANTING).
New plantings (right foreground) along **dirt road** show that the old logic of the scrogs still survives: thorny boundaries remain useful where pasture, livestock, and rough ground still meet.

(354) FOOTPATH OFF OF LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE.

(355) STILE ON THE PATH OFF OF LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. Looking southeast, towards Lane Side Lane.

In the **photo above**, an **English Oak** (aka **Pedunculate Oak**) on the left stands guard over the pasture. Near the left foreground, **bluebells** bloom at the threshold.

A line of trees on the lane fade into the distant horizon of the **photo below**, putting the **"long"** in Long Tongue Scrog Lane. Early April reveals limb structures suggesting **Ash** and **English Oak** trees.

(356) ANOTHER STILE ON THE PATH OFF OF LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. View towards the north-east towards trees lining Long Tongue Scrog Lane.

(357) VIEW FROM LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. Looking southeast over the **"long tongue" field** between Long Tongue Scrog Lane and Lane Side Lane.

In the **photo above**, we see the field that put the **"tongue"** in Long Tongue Scrog Lane. Woodland edges gather in the folds of the land between scattered farms and pasture fields. Hedgerows, pasture, and scattered woodland still shape the rolling Yorkshire landscape.

As the lane unfurls **eastward**, **houses** begin to appear along the lane. The site of the first house falls on the south side of the lane, near the **paved footpath** section of Long Tongue Scrog Lane. This house, South Royd, posed for a photo in 2008. (**See photo: South Royd**, below.)

(358) SOUTH ROYD: WHEN THE HOUSE WAS STANDING. Photo dated 26 Jul 2008.

By April 2025, that South Royd home had been reduced to ruins. (**See satellite image**, below.) The timbers, bricks, and mortar had all given way. At first, they may have resisted. But then they began to sway. Rubble piles and scraped earth scar the land where a house once stood. What will come next?

(359) RUINS OF SOUTH ROYD HOUSE: NOT EVERYTHING SURVIVES. Image ©2026 Google; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025).

As we continue **further eastward** on our virtual stroll down the lane, we see a **cobbled footpath** section that probably helped put the **"scrog"** in Long Tongue Scrog Lane. (**See photo**, below.)

(360) LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE, BETWEEN SOUTH ROYD & HOUSES HILL. An explosion of green, thorns, sunlight, and shadow.

In the tunnel of green **above**, **Blackthorn** flexes its thicket muscles along the lower areas. **Bramble** or **Elder** or both appear woven into the lower margins and interior gaps. Higher up, **Hawthorn** contributes to the canopy. A few **Ash** or **Sycamore** trees might rise above the hedge line. A mass of living green takes over the sides of the lane. Here, the "scrog" still lives up to its name.

After that particularly **"scroggy" section** lasting up to 650 feet (200 m), the tangled hedgerows and thorny "scrog" growth begin to soften into a more settled agricultural landscape. Scattered mature trees – likely including Oak and Ash – stand among enclosed pasture fields and old stone walls.

Ahead our feet find **paved street** and **Royd**, a cluster of traditional Yorkshire farm buildings built from local stone that seems to rise naturally from the surrounding hillsides. (**See photo: Royd, on Long Tongue Scrog Lane**, below.)

(361) ROYD, ON LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. Within the hamlet of Houses Hill. View to the east. The eastern part of **Royd Farmhouse** sits on the right.

The name **"Royd"** has deep ties to the history of woodland and landscape change in northern England. Derived from an old northern English word for a woodland clearing or assart, a "royd" was **land carved out from rough woodland or scrub** and brought gradually into agricultural use.[339]

In a sense, the neighboring place-names almost speak to one another: "Scrog" suggests scrubby woodland edges and tangled growth, and "Royd" suggests land reclaimed from those same rough margins.

Royd Farmhouse appears to have **medieval** origins. Historic records describe parts of the farmhouse as a late medieval timber-framed house later encased in stone, with some portions of the structure dating back to at least the mid-1600s, perhaps even earlier.[340]

[339] "Royd (toponomy)" on Huddersfield Exposed, available at https://huddersfield.exposed/wiki/Royd_(toponymy) ; *see also* "Royd" on Yorkshire Historical Dictionary, available at https://yorkshiredictionary.york.ac.uk/words/royd

[340] "Royd Farm, Long Tong Scrog Lane, Houses Hill" on Huddersfield Exposed, available at https://huddersfield.exposed/wiki/Royd_Farm,_Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Houses_Hill ; *see also* "Royd Farmhouse" on Historic England, available at https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1151833 ; "'Huddersfield's oldest

Along Long Tongue Scrog Lane, the landscape itself still preserves traces of this long relationship between woodland, clearance, farming, and settlement.

As we **continue** to stroll **eastward**, **Maple Farm** greets us. (**See photo: Maple Farm**, below.)

(362) MAPLE FARM ON LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. View looking back, to the west. The Maple Farm garage is on the right. Maple Farm's main house is further right, behind the garage, just out of view.

Maple Farm sits quietly among the enclosed pasture fields northeast of Royd. Stone walls, mature hedgerow trees, and scattered woodland remnants still shape this part of the landscape surrounding Long Tongue Scrog Lane. Though heavily modernized today, the house retains many traditional Yorkshire features, including exposed beams, mullioned windows, and thick local stone walls.[341]

After we pass through Maple Farm, we hit the last leg of the journey down Long Tongue Scrog Lane: about 330 feet (100 m) of **paved street** that leads to the **end: Healy Green Lane** and the section of **Houses Hill** that lies here.

Beyond the denser hedgerows and woodland edges of the west, the landscape to the east gradually opens into the rough grasses of pasture and grazing country. (**See photo**, top right.)

(363) EAST END OF LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. Looking southeast, Long Tongue Scrog Lane emerges into the open fields around Houses Hill.

After a quick saunter down this open part of the lane, we reach the final stop of our trek. Long Tongue Scrog Lane terminates on its east end where it intersects **Healy Green Lane**. Just around the corner of Healy Green Lane to the south, we see more of Yorkshire's trademark stone buildings and managed hedges. (**See photo**, below.)

(364) HOUSES HILL ON HEALEY GREEN LANE. The east part of Long Tongue Scrog Lane stops at Healey Green Lane, about 100 m north of here.

Interestingly, Healey probably derives from Old English *heah* "high" plus *leah* "woodland clearing."

house' Royd Farm is up for sale – take a virtual tour" (2019) by Dave Himelfield on YorkshireLive, available at https://www.examinerlive.co.uk/news/west-yorkshire-news/huddersfields-oldest-house-royd-farm-16059243

[341] "Maple Farm Long Tongue Scrog Road" (2017), real estate brochure by Simon Blyth Estate Agents, available at https://media.onthemarket.com/properties/8205074/1312219108/document-0.pdf (includes floor plan, interior photos, & exterior photos).

Together, "heahleah" or "heahley" suggests a high woodland clearing.[342]

Remarkably, within about a kilometer, we have seen three place names describing ecological layers:

1) **Scrog** (rough scrub and **woodland edge**);

2) **Royd** (**woodland clearing**); and

3) **Healy** (**high woodland clearing**).

Over the course of our jaunt down the lane, the tangled scrog edges along a dirt road and footpath faded into paved street with scattered farms, rough grass, hedgerows, and the stone buildings of Houses Hill. Yet the place-names linger. Scrog. Royd. Healey. The language of woodland edges, clearings, and reclaimed land still quietly survives within the modern Yorkshire countryside.

Places like this remind us that "Scrogs" was never just a word in a charter, but a real landscape – thorny, practical, half-wild, and memorable enough to name the land itself.

(365) VIEW TOWARDS CASTLE HILL FROM HILLTOP ABOVE LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE.

The **photo above** reveals some of the area around Long Tongue Scrog Lane. Stephen Craven, the photographer, stood on a hilltop by **Carr Mount**, looking southwest. Stephen stood about 400 m northeast of the stiles on the footpath off Long Tongue Scrog Lane seen in earlier photos. **Victoria Tower**, on **Castle Hill** in Almondbury, juts up out of the horizon on the left, about 3-4 miles (5-6 km) away.

Just over the edge of the hilltop in the left foreground, we see some of the treetops that line the western section of Long Tongue Scrog Lane. The hilltop hides the "tongue" of green field from view.

[342] *See, e.g.,* "High: origin and history of high" on etynonline, available at https://www.etymonline.com/word/high (noting Old English: *heh* in Anglican and *heah* in West Saxon); "lēah" on Old English Wordhound, available at https://oldenglishwordhord.com/2017/01/18/leah/

We end this subsection on Long Tongue Scrog Lane back where our amble began: among the scroggy hedges. (**See photo: Gate on the track from Carr Mount to Long Tongue Scrog Lane**, below.)

Fittingly, in the **photo below** we see a thick, thorny, tangled mess of **Blackthorn** and **Bramble** on the left and a twisty-twiggy **Hawthorn** tree at left of center.

On the right, the **Norway Spruce** suggests later ornamental or farm planting – an element of the new, reminding us that times change.

Also on the right, below the spruce, the **dry-stone wall** preserves an element of the old.

Together, the old stone wall on the right and the scrogs on the left remind us that some things endure.

(366) GATE ON THE TRACK FROM CARR MOUNT TO LONG TONGUE SCROG LANE. View looking south towards the west end of Long Tongue Scrog Lane.

The Scrog: near Castleside in County Durham, northeast England

(367) THE SCROG NEAR CASTLESIDE. The ancient structure of The Scrog emerges out of mist and low cloud: widely spaced oaks standing over rough pasture, a landscape that probably changed very little over centuries. (All photos inside The Scrog courtesy of **Alan Draffan** of the Consett & District Photographic Society. *See* Image Attributions.)

The Scrog: Ancient Wood Pasture

The Scrog(g) near Castleside in **County Durham** tells us a much older story. Here, we see a different kind of scrog. We do not see upland scrub on hillsides or the thorny boundary scrub of fields and hedgerows. Nor do we see waterside scrub or a woodland corridor. Here, we witness a venerable, more open landscape where scattered Oaks and rough ground tell a story several centuries old.

This final form of "scrog" does not immediately announce itself as scrub at all. If the scrogs of hedgerow and hillside marked the boundaries of farmland, here those same rough edges have endured long enough to grow into something larger.

The Scrog is quieter, aged, and in some ways more revealing. This place preserves a landscape where the rough thorny margins of earlier centuries have matured into something else entirely: an open **wood pasture** of ancient trees, moss, and stone.

Here the dominant trees are great spreading oaks – almost certainly **Pedunculate Oak** (*Quercus robur*, also called **English Oak**).

WHAT IS A WOOD PASTURE?

(368) CATTLE GRAZING IN A WOOD PASTURE. Scattered, mature European **Beech** trees with open grazing beneath (in Germany).

In the landscape of a **wood pasture**, scattered **trees**, **grazing animals**, rough **grassland**, and **scrub** can co-exist together as part of a long-lived ecological system.

Unlike a dense forest, a wood pasture is more **open**, allowing sunlight to reach the ground beneath the trees.

This creates a **rich mixture** of habitats: **veteran trees, thorny scrub, mossy rocks,** rough **pasture, dead wood,** and **flowering plants** can all thrive side by side.

Many wood pastures **developed** over centuries through **low-intensity grazing** by cattle, sheep, ponies, or deer. Grazing animals helped prevent the land from turning into closed woodland, while still allowing scattered trees and scrub to survive and mature.

As a result, old wood pastures usually contain **ancient** or **veteran trees** with broad spreading crowns, twisted limbs, and hollowing trunks – features rarely seen in tightly packed commercial forests. Species like **English Oak** (**Pedunculate Oak**), Sessile Oak, **Beech**, Alder, **Hazel**, and Chestnut often flourish in wood pastures.

(369) WOOD PASTURE IN ST. HELEN'S PARK. Hastings, East Sussex, southeast England. **Pedunculate Oak** with some **Ash** trees in the background.

These landscapes are especially valuable for **wildlife**. Old trees provide nesting cavities for birds and bats, dead wood supports fungi and insects, and the varied nooks and crannies among the ground layer flora shelter countless animal species.

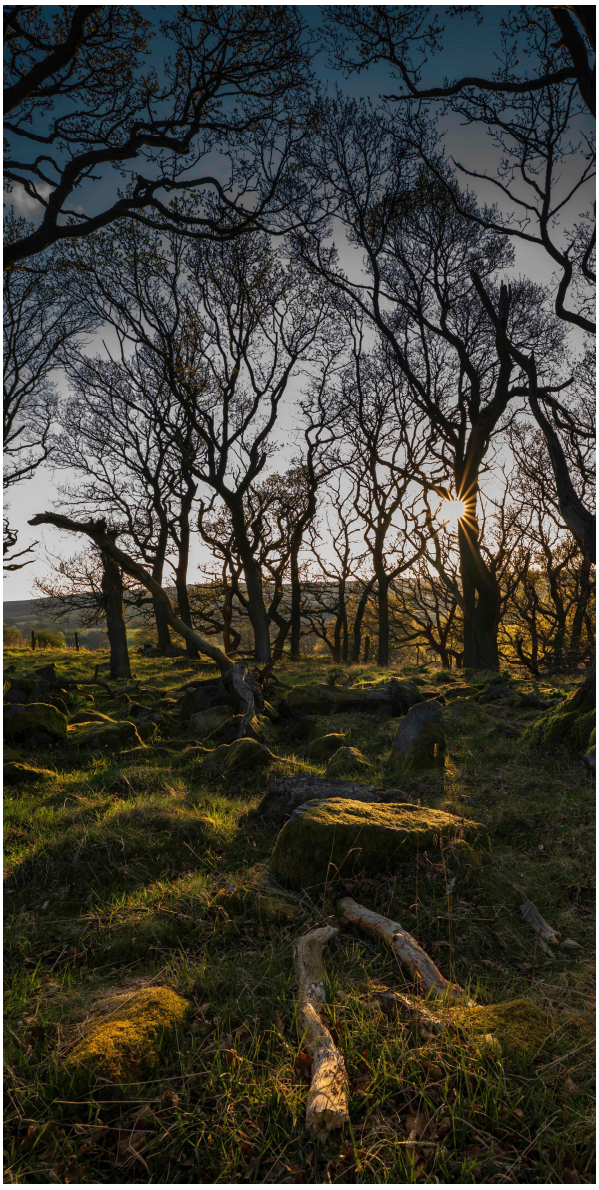
Although low-intensity grazing helps form wood pastures, **high-intensity grazing** over many years threatens to destroy them. Without careful management, grazing prevents new trees from growing. No new trees guarantees that a wood pasture will eventually die.

In Britain, surviving wood pastures are now considered an important **historic habitat**, preserving ecological patterns that in some places stretch back hundreds of years.[343]

The Scrog near Castleside appears to preserve elements of this kind of landscape. The open-grown Pedunculate Oaks, rough grazing ground, exposed stone, and mosses hint at a long continuity of pasture and woodland blended together versus a closed forest.

[343] "Wood Pasture and Parkland" on Woodland Trust UK, available at https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/trees-woods-and-wildlife/habitats/wood-pasture-and-parkland/ ; *see also* "Wood pasture and parkland" on NatureScot, available at https://www.nature.scot/landscapes-and-habitats/habitat-types/woodland-habitats/wood-pasture-and-parkland

These open-grown Pedunculate Oaks are not the straight, crowded stems of managed woodland, but **veteran trees** shaped by centuries of light, wind, and grazing. Their trunks have grown thick and deeply furrowed. Their wide, twisting limbs spread outward rather than upward, a signature of trees that have stood alone in pasture rather than crowded woodland. This suggests a long history free from enclosure: grazing animals once roamed beneath them, and the boundary between field and wood was never sharply drawn.



(370) EVENING AT THE SCROG. Evening light filters through widely spaced oaks, revealing a wood pasture scrog. Clearance & grazing eliminated dense undergrowth. Photo by **Alan Draffan**.

The ground beneath tells the same story. **Mosses** carpet **stones** and fallen timber, thriving in the damp, lightly shaded conditions created by the open canopy. **Grasses** form a short, grazed sward between the rocks, while scattered **rosettes** – likely **Common Teasel** – mark small patches of disturbance.

Deadwood lies where it falls – split trunks, weathered limbs, and slowly decaying branches. This signals continuity rather than neglect. Decay fuels the system, feeding fungi and insects.

The **ground** here is thin, **rocky**, and **uneven** – more suited to grazing than ploughing. This may explain why this place was never fully cleared or improved. This ground was simply unsuited to intensive agriculture. Where better soils were ploughed and improved, places like this remained on the edge: grazed, used, but never fully transformed.

What is striking is not what grows here, but what does ***not***. There is little dense undergrowth: no impenetrable thickets of Blackthorn or Hawthorn. Grazing, past and perhaps present, has suppressed the shrub layer, holding the landscape in a stable, open state.

Over time, the original scrog – thorny scrub marking the rough boundary between usable land and the wild – died and gave way to Oak trees. Grazing held back new growth. The Oaks matured. And the system settled into a long-lived equilibrium.

(371) ROCK & FALLEN LIMB AMONG VETERAN OAKS. Open-grown and wind-shaped trees. Fallen limbs left to decay as part of the living system. Photo by **Alan Draffan**.

This landscape feels both ancient and alive: not a managed plantation, not a wild forest, but something in between. A living monument of centuries-old Oak.

In earlier sections, we saw scrogs as woodland fringes, riverbank thickets, and scrub on windswept hillsides – dynamic, transitional landscapes at the boundary between field and woodland.

Here at **The Scrog**, we see what can happen when that boundary is not erased but sustained. The scrog does not disappear. It evolves.

What began as thorn and scrub became, over generations, an open woodland of veteran trees: a living record of continuity, where marks of grazing, wind, and time are written into every branch.

Even the ground flora here hints at continuity: **Primrose (*Primula vulgaris*)**, an ancient woodland indicator, grows among the moss and stone.

This is the scrog in its most mature form: one possible end stage for the ecological succession of the scrogs.

(372) VETERAN OAKS RISE ABOVE MOSSY STONES AND FALLEN DEADWOOD. Open-grown trees like these, shaped by centuries of wind, grazing, and exposure, are characteristic features of old wood pasture landscapes. Photo by **Alan Draffan**.

(373) VETERAN SURVIVOR OF THE SCROG. With a human being in the photo for perspective, we see the size of the Oaks in The Scrog. Based on size and appearance, these oaks have probably stood for about 200-350 years, with a few possibly pushing 400 years. They outlived any thorn scrub preceding them. But even Oaks cannot live forever. They have a normal lifespan of 300-500 years, with some living up to 600-800 years or more. On rare occasions, they can live to around 1,000 years. But without new trees, the Oaks and The Scrog will eventually die out. Photo by **Alan Draffan**.

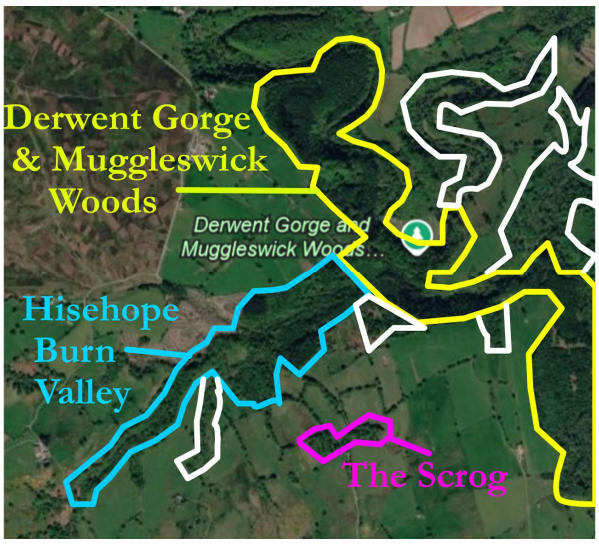
The Scrog sits along the southern edge of **Hisehope Burn Valley**, a wooded valley with Hisehope Burn cutting through it.

(374) HISEHOPE BURN IN ITS WOODED VALLEY. Looking upstream from Hisehope Bridge, which holds Goldhill Lane over the stream. Northwest of The Scrog by about 500 m.

Hisehope Burn flows into the **River Derwent**, which serves as the local border between County Durham and Northumberland. (**See photo**, below.)

(375) RIVER DERWENT, MUGGLESWICK. At an old lead mill, about 700 m northeast of The Scrog.

From the air, the tributary Hisehope Burn Valley looks like a woodland **tentacle** extending from the sprawling woodland **octopus** of **Derwent Gorge** and **Muggleswick Woods** to the north and east. (**See satellite image**, below.)



(376) SATELLITE VIEW OF DERWENT GORGE AREA (ANNOTATED). Image ©2026 Google (annotated by the Author); map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

At about **5 acres**, **The Scrog** looks quite small compared to the 210 acres of Derwent Gorge and Muggleswick Woods or the 37 acres of Hisehope Burn Valley.

The Scrog sits on an upland slope that rises out of the wooded burn valley. (**See satellite oblique view**, below.)

(377) OBLIQUE SATELLITE VIEW OF THE SCROG (with pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

In the image above, The Scrog (marked with a purple pin, upper right) rests on the upper slope above Hisehope Burn Valley, where the land slopes

up from out of the sheltered wood and into the open upland pastures. This view brings the relationship into focus: wooded valley below, rough grazing above, and scattered thorny woodland patches that survive along the transition zone between them.

From the air, the distinct shape of The Scrog stands out. (**See satellite overhead view**, below.)

(378) OVERHEAD SATELLITE VIEW OF THE SCROG (with pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2025 Airbus (accessed via Google Earth).

With one lobe on the west side of Goldhill Lane and another lobe on the east side of the road, The Scrog looks like twin woodland nuclei bonded by a thin chain of trees about 65-130 feet (20-40 m) wide. Visibly, they seem joined in a binary system, orbiting each other around the barycenter of Goldhill Lane, their mutual center of mass.

When viewed with the surrounding woodland systems, The Scrog resembles a pair of spinning stars trailing the spiral arm of Hisehope Burn just 300 m to the north, within the larger galaxy of Derwent Gorge and Muggleswick Woods just a ½ mile (1 km) or so to the northeast.

The Scrog fits naturally within this broader landscape of wooded burn valley, rough grazing pastures on gentle slopes, and local farmsteads. It inhabits a transitional space: not deep forest, nor open moor, nor fully reclaimed farmland, but something that fits into the shifting liminal space between them. Water and shelter from the burn valley allow woodland and thorn scrub to thrive in folds and hollows where farm machinery falters and sheep fear to tread. Bracken, Gorse, rough grass, and scattered trees spread outward from the wooded valley in ragged patches and ribbons.

(379) THE RIVER DERWENT IN A SMALL ROCKY GORGE AT SHOTLEY GROVE.

The nearby **ruins of West Goldhill** remind us that holding this upland edge was never permanent or guaranteed. (**See inset: Ruins of West Goldhill**, below.)

Even today, the surrounding landscape feels unsettled in an ecological sense: half-wild, thorny, and stubbornly resistant to complete control.

RUINS OF WEST GOLDHILL

(380) RUINS OF WEST GOLDHILL. Standing about 1,300 feet (400 m) due **south of The Scrog**, looking to the north.

Due **south** of **The Scrog** near Castleside, the **ruins** of **West Goldhill** still stand amidst rough upland pasture and old dry-stone walls.

The surviving **chimney** and fragments of stonework suggest an **old farm house**, probably built in the 1700s or 1800s.

Though modest in scale, the ruins still carry the feel of the **North Pennine uplands**: exposed skies, marginal grazing land, rough weather, and hard agricultural labor.

Even after abandonment, the old walls continue to shape the surrounding pasture, boundaries, and paths across the hillside.

And yet, the land around West Goldhill seems eager to reclaim the ruins. **Rushes** and **rough grasses** spread across the damp ground. Thorny scrub gathers along the broken walls. **Hawthorn**, **Blackthorn**, and **Bramble** creep slowly inward from the field edges.

Left of the chimney, a **row of Hawthorn trees** bend their branches towards the ruins, like fingers curling around the stone walls, pulling the ruins into the clutches of the Earth.

In places like this, the boundary between wild landscape and human landscape rarely remains fixed for long. The farms fade, the walls collapse, and the plants begin their quiet return.

The Scrog fits in perfectly here. It survives in the quilt of its surroundings as a patch of woods within a spread of rough pasture patches, stitched together with stone walls, hedgerows, and tree lines. In a land that is **half-wild** and **half-tamed**, The Scrog fuses both into a single space. As a **wood pasture**, it is neither fully wild wood nor fully tamed pasture, but a hybrid of both.

A pasture lies on the **north side** of The Scrog. (**See photo**, at **top right**.) At the northern border of the pasture, Ash trees stand in a wide line, with some twisted Hawthorn and Sycamore trees sprinkled in. Hidden behind the line of Ash trees, Hisehope Burn runs through the Hishope Burn Valley.

In the **photo below** from **northwest** of The Scrog, the Hisehope Burn Valley in the foreground cuts a dark green seam through the soft, light green pasturelands beyond it. Scattered across the pale green farmland, sheep and cattle graze among the parkland-style pasture trees, probably Ash and Sycamore trees with some Oaks. Dry-stone walls divide the landscape.

(381) NORTH OF THE SCROG. View to the north from the north edge of The Scrog, at the east side of Goldhill Lane.

(382) NORTHWEST OF THE SCROG. Standing 200 m north of The Scrog (its western lobe), looking to the west and slightly north. The woodlands of **Hisehope Burn Valley** darken the foreground. Light green pastures roll into the horizon.

This is scrog country. Shelter, water, and uneven ground let woodland and scrub flourish in and near the wooded burn valley, whereas open grazing rules the uplands. (**See photo**, below, from **southwest** of The Scrog.) In the photo below, **Bracken (ferns)** crowd the foreground. In the right foreground, just behind the ferns, older blooms on **Gorse** turn brown. Beyond the bracken and thorn scrub, grazing **sheep** spread across the upland pasture.

(383) SOUTHWEST OF THE SCROG. Standing about 300 m south of The Scrog, looking southwest.

(384) BIRKHOTT WATERFALL, HISEHOPE BURN.
Just under 2 km **southwest** of The Scrog.
Drop of about 3-4 feet (1 m).

(385) VIEW OVER HORSLEYHOPE. Foreground: Gorse.
2 km **southeast** of The Scrog, looking west.

(386) SOUTHEAST OF THE SCROG: VIEW ACROSS HORSLEYHOPE BURN & WOODS TO THE HORSLEYHOPE FARMS.
Standing about 1 mile (1-2 km) southeast of The Scrog, looking to the west.

In the **photo above**, from **southeast** of The Scrog, the **woods** extending along the foreground cradle **Horsleyhope Burn** within a ravine, hiding it from view.

The woodland edge here has a distinctly "scroggy" structure: irregular margins, thorn scrub, mixed-height growth, and small trees spilling out into pasture rather than a clean forest boundary. Along the front edge of the woods in the **photo above**, about three **Hawthorn** trees bloom brightly white in late May. On the left and closer to the ground, **Gorse** blooms in yellow. Behind them, a taller, darker canopy rises, composed of mostly Ash and Oaks.

Beyond the wooded ravine valley, green pastures roll into **Middle Horsleyhope Farm** and **High Horsleyhope Farm**, both visible on the **left** side of the **photo above**. On the horizon to the right of those two farms, barely visible just left of center, sits **Goldhill Farm**, the modern-day successor to the West Goldhill ruins.

Horsleyhope Burn runs mostly south to north, about ½ mile (900 m) east of The Scrog. It joins Hisehope Burn shortly before their combined waters enter the River Derwent.

Horsleyhope Burn and other interconnected, narrow, wooded burn valleys reach outward from the broader Derwent Gorge and Muggleswick Woods landscape like wooded fingers spreading into the upland pastures.

In a messy tangle of wooded burn valleys and river gorges, names can blur together. Some people refer to the system around Horsleyhope Burn as the **Horsleyhope Ravine**, falling within the larger area of **Derwent Gorge and Horsleyhope Ravine**. However, people and maps sometimes lump it in with **Muggleswick Woods**. The site maps posted for the Derwent Gorge and Muggleswick Woods National Nature Reserve usually include the area around Horsleyhope Burn as part of the reserve. **Natural England** manages the reserve, known as an ancient Ash and Oak woodland with epiphytic (non-parasitic) lichens and Alder on lower slopes.[344]

[344] "Durham's National Nature Reserves: … Derwent Gorge and Muggleswick Woods" (2021), available at https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/durhams-national-nature-reserves/durhams-national-nature-reserves#derwent-gorge-and-muggleswick-woods

(387) SOUTHEAST OF THE SCROG: VIEW OVER HORSLEYHOPE. Standing about 600 m south of The Scrog, looking to the east. Photographer Robert Graham was standing on the side of Goldhill Lane, with the modern (east) Goldhill Farm to his left by just about 60 m and the ruins of West Goldhill not too far behind him.

The **photo above** illustrates the ecological setting southeast of The Scrog as a layered cross-section.

The **foreground** contains a classic upland-edge mosaic of rough grasses, **bracken (fern)** remnants, scrub, and scattered thorn vegetation. **Gorse** might make up some of the darker shrub patches.

In the **middle distance**, we see pale green grazed **pasture** subdivided by dry-stone walls and fences, shaped by the rolling topography. The sheep visible reinforce continuous grazing pressure and explain why the woodland and scrub persists mainly in folds, valleys, ravines, and rough margins.

Further back, the darker tree masses mark burn valley and ravine woodland persistence. The woods follow creases in the land, thicken in sheltered zones, and spread along moisture corridors. This landscape does not support broad, continuous forest. The woodland survives in seams, pockets, ravines, and branching strips. Scrog country. Tree species include **Hawthorn** at the edges with Ash, Sycamore Maple, and Oak in the interior. Wetter areas support Alder, Willow, and maybe some Birch. Some of the darker patches might represent conifer plantings or denser woods regenerating, slowly but surely.

Towards the **horizon**, **Healeyfield Farm's hill** rises up to survey the scene. The tree profile on the hilltop looks like plantation conifers.

The ecology unfolds by elevation here. The lower folds harbor woodland and scrub with shelter and moisture. The middle slopes host enclosed pastures, with grazing and scattered trees. On the higher ground, rough exposed terrain and darker woodland masses like the conifers make their home.

(388) ACROSS THE HISEHOPE BURN VALLEY. Standing about 1.5 km northeast of The Scrog, looking northwest.

Looking back at The Scrog and its surroundings, modern tools help unravel some of its mysteries.

What is The Scrog? An ancient wood pasture. Not fully woodland. Not fully pasture. But both. Livestock grazing among open-grown trees.

Why was a wood pasture there? Why not clear it to make a pasture, like the land nearby? The large stones and uneven ground in the photos from inside The Scrog whisper the answer to us. All the large stones and uneven ground made it too difficult to farm or fully clear. Humans settled for their next best option: a wood pasture, where their cattle and sheep could graze lightly under the shelter of the trees.

Why were those stones there? Why is The Scrog at that location? The nearby wooded burn valleys hint at this. The same Ice Age glaciers that helped shape the local ravines, gorges, and valleys probably dropped some large stones in that spot as the glaciers receded and melted away.[345] The Scrog's existence and locale fell from luck out of Ice Age glaciers.

Why is it named The Scrog when English Oaks and mosses fill the space rather than classic scrog species? Hawthorn and Gorse obviously thrive nearby. Yet inside The Scrog itself, classic thorny scrog species remain surprisingly scarce.

Here, The Scrog holds on to some of its mystery. Perhaps it received the name in some earlier stage of ecological succession, when scrogs dominated its 5 acres. The name might have remained even after the scrogs died and the wood pasture later matured into open-grown veteran oaks. Maybe the name came from thorn scrub growing at its edges at some point, marking it with a distinctive feature for locals. Or perhaps the twisted forms of the open-grown oaks themselves inspired the name, echoing the contorted Hawthorn, Juniper, and Crab Apple trees often associated with scrog landscapes. Or some other reason, forgotten long ago.

How did The Scrog get its name? The veteran oaks and ancient stones hold that secret in their leafy and stony hands, as they have for centuries.

[345] "Geoarchaeology in Northern England I. The Landscape and Geography of Northern England" (2005) by Maria Raimonda Usai, PhD, Centre for Archaeology Report 54/2005, on Historic England, at pages 2, 10-12, 19, 28, available at https://historicengland.org.uk/research/results/reports/5450/GeoarchaeologyinNorthernEnglandITheLandscapeandGeographyofNorthernEngland

(389) SUNSET AT THE SCROG. Moss-covered stones and low pasture plants form the ground layer beneath the canopy, thriving in the damp, lightly shaded conditions here. In the center foreground, bright green, leafy **Primrose (*Primula vulgaris*)**, an ancient woodland indicator, quietly signals the long continuity of this landscape beneath Oaks that have been growing for centuries, outliving any thorny scrub that came before. Photo by **Alan Draffan**.

SCROGGS AROUND THE WORLD

(390) NEW ZEALAND: VIEW OF THE TAIERI PLAIN, SCROGGS HILL, AND PACIFIC OCEAN. Aerial view towards the southeast. Photo taken from over the Taieri Plain. The peak of **Scroggs Hill** (center) rises from the rugged coastal hills separating Otago's fertile agricultural Taieri Plain from the Pacific Ocean. The small suburb of Scroggs Hill sits along the top of the ridge to the east (left) of Scroggs Hill itself.

Scroggs Hill, New Zealand

On the other side of the Earth, more than 11,000 miles (18,000 km) from the Scottish Borders, another "Scroggs" rises above a pastoral landscape overlooking the Pacific Ocean. Near the city of **Dunedin** (population: 133,000), in the **Otago** region of New Zealand's South Island, a hill and nearby localities still bear the name ***Scroggs Hill***.

Scroggs Hill lies within the rugged coastal uplands between the fertile agricultural **Taieri Plain** and the Pacific Ocean, southwest of the city of Dunedin by about 12 miles (20 km) and just about 2.5 miles (4 km) north of the seaside town of **Brighton** (population: 1,500). The **peak** of Scroggs Hill reaches **355 m** (1,165 feet) above sea level, high enough to command broad views across the surrounding countryside and coast.[346]

About ½ mile (1 km) east of the hilltop, the nearby rural-residential **suburb** of **Scroggs Hill**,

[346] "Scroggs Hill topographic map," available at https://en-au.topographic-map.com/map-fh3p4s/Scroggs-Hill/

built on a ridge just off of Saddle Hill Road, hosts about 170 people.[347]

On the west side of the hilltop, **Scroggs Hill Road** runs alongside Scroggs Hill. This road stretches for about 2-3 miles (3-5 km) from the fork at Lew Road and Saddle Hill Road in the coastal hills down to Brighton Road in the seaside town of Brighton. The end of Scroggs Hill Road at Brighton Road falls within about 50-150 m of Brighton Beach and the South Pacific Ocean.[348]

The setting is strikingly appropriate for a "Scroggs" landscape. The **Taieri Plain** below forms one of New Zealand's most productive **agricultural** districts, while the surrounding **coastal hills** are rougher, windier, and less intensively cultivated. Settlers have dominated the plain since the 1850s. Dairy and sheep farming feature prominently here.[349]

Even from **satellite imagery**, the hillsides display a patchwork of pasture, scrub, shelterbelts, gullies, and regenerating woody growth. (**See satellite images**, below and right.) The upper hilltop is comparatively bald, but many of the slopes appear distinctly "scroggy," especially where uneven terrain and wind exposure have limited intensive grazing or plowing.

(391) SATELLITE OBLIQUE VIEW OF SCROGGS HILL IN NEW ZEALAND (1) (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2008-2026 Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO (accessed via Google Earth).

(392) SATELLITE OBLIQUE VIEW OF SCROGGS HILL IN NEW ZEALAND (2) (with labeled pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2008-2026 Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO (accessed via Google Earth).

(393) SATELLITE OBLIQUE VIEW OF SCROGGS HILL IN NEW ZEALAND (3) (with labeled pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 Google; map data ©2008-2026 Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO (accessed via Google Earth).

This geography may help explain why Scottish settlers carried the name into Otago. Dunedin itself reflects the region's deep Scottish roots. The city was founded largely by **Scottish immigrants** in the 1800s, many associated with the Free Church of Scotland. The very name **"Dunedin"** derives from

[347] "Scroggs Hill," on Suburb (New Zealand), available at https://suburb.co.nz/suburb/scroggs-hill

[348] "Scroggs Hill, Otago" on NZ Topo Map, available at https://nztopomap-staging.azurewebsites.net/NZTopoMap/nz18405/Scroggs-Hill/Otago

[349] "Taieri Plains" on Scattered Seeds, presented by Dunedin Public Libraries and the Dunedin Lebanese Community, available at https://dunedin.recollect.co.nz/nodes/view/200065

Dùn Èideann, the Scottish Gaelic name for **Edinburgh**.[350] Across Otago, settlers transplanted familiar Scottish place-names, landscape terminology, and cultural references into their new surroundings. In some cases, the names commemorated people or places from home. In others, settlers simply applied old words to landscapes that "felt right."

Scroggs Hill may represent exactly this kind of transplanted landscape language. Although the origin of the name remains uncertain, the surrounding terrain bears a surprising resemblance to many British "scrog" environments: rough grazing land, broken scrub on hillsides, windswept slopes above farmland, and tangled woody growth concentrated along margins and less-managed ground. The ecological details differ from Scotland, but the overall landscape character is remarkably familiar.

The vegetation itself would also have looked both strange and strangely recognizable to Scottish eyes. Scrub ecosystems in coastal Otago often include:

Mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*), the most abundant and versatile native shrub in New Zealand, an important **pioneer** plant that can start forest regeneration (**see photo**, right);

Kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*), also called **White Tea-Tree**, a long-lived **pioneer** species tree that forms a tall cover over its frequent companion Mānuka and works together with it to pave the way for regenerating forest (**see photo**, bottom right);

Matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*), also known as Wild Irishman and Tūmatakuru, New Zealand's only native plant with **thorns**, comparable to Hawthorn in its defensive structure (**see photo**, next page);

Mingimingi (*Coprosma propinqua*), a small-leaved, prickly, highly branched shrub that frequently associates with Matagouri (**see photo**, next page);

Sweet Briar Rose (*Rosa rubiginosa*), a common prickly shrub with **thorny** stems that forms impenetrable **thickets**, introduced by European settlers;

regenerating broadleaf forest species; and

extensive areas of introduced **Gorse (*Ulex europaeus*)** and **Scotch Broom (*Cytisus scoparius*)**, especially prominent on low-producing hill pastures and gravel flood plains.[351]

In many places, European settlers also brought grazing grasses, hedgerow plants, and shelter trees.

The resulting mosaic of pasture and scrub produced landscapes in New Zealand that evoke the rough transitional ecology of British scrogs.

(394) FLOWERING MĀNUKA (*LEPTOSPERMUM SCOPARIUM*). Silver Peaks near Dunedin, Otago, New Zealand.

(395) KĀNUKA (*KUNZEA ERICOIDES*) AKA WHITE TEA-TREE.

[350] "Scots Make Their Mark" by Jack Sulzberger on New Zealand Geographic, available at https://www.nzgeo.com/stories/scots-make-their-mark/

[351] "Shrublands" by Maggie Wassilieff on TeAra.govt.nz, The Encyclopedia of New Zealand, available at https://teara.govt.nz/en/shrublands/print

(396) THORNS AND BLOOMS ON A MATAGOURI (*DISCARIA TOUMATOU*). New Zealand.

(397) MATAGOURI FOREST. Anti Crow Hut track, Arthur's Pass, Canterbury, New Zealand.

(398). LEAF BUDS ON A PRICKLY MINGIMINGI.

Whether tragically or comically, even the scrogs of New Zealand cannot escape harassment from **sheep**. The European settlers brought the **woolly locusts** with them.[352]

(399) NEW ZEALAND SHEEP FARM. Queenstown in Otago, New Zealand.

A semi-wild sheep made local headlines after it was caught in a gully near Scroggs Hill in March 2021. Locals nicknamed it the **"Scroggs Hill Shaggy Swamp Monster"** for the massive, debris-covered fleece that it grew while evading shearing for over two years. After its capture, they sheared over 16 kg (35 pounds) of wool off of the ram. Living in the Otago bush had heavily matted the ram's wool with dirt and sticks.[353]

(400) THE FAR HILLS OF OTAGO, NEW ZEALAND.

[352] "Story: Sheep farming" on Te Ara, The Encyclopedia of New Zealand, available at https://teara.govt.nz/en/sheep-farming/page-2

[353] "'Scroggs Hill Shaggy swamp monster' loses 16 kg fleece" (7 Mar 2021) from the Otago Daily Times, on the New Zealand Herald, available at https://www.nzherald.co.nz/nz/scroggs-hill-shaggy-swamp-monster-loses-16kg-fleece/RM2FRLZJBOOE2IBRDHCGA3BNSA/ ; *see also* "Newspaper: 'Shaggy swamp monster' relieved of 16kg fleece" (2021) on National Library of New Zealand, available at https://natlib.govt.nz/records/45576569?search%5Bi%5D%5Bprimary_collection%5D=findNZarticles&search%5Bi%5D%5Bsubject_text%5D=Sheep+shearing&search%5Bpath%5D=items

Whether Scroggs Hill was named after a family, a remembered Scottish locality, or the scrubby nature of the hill itself remains unclear.

Not every use of the term "scrog" derives from Scottish landscape terminology. Modern trampers (hikers) in Australia and New Zealand use the word "scrog" as shorthand for "scroggin," a popular trail mix snack. SCROGGIN is an acronym for: Sultanas, Chocolate, Raisins, Orange peel, Ginger, Glucose (used to be barley sugars), Imagination, and Nuts.[354] More globally, cannabis growers use the term ScrOG as an acronym for the "Screen of Green" growing technique.[355]

And yet, the Scroggs Hill name's survival on the far side of the world seems revealing in its own right. Words travel with people. So do habits of observation. A windswept hillside above the Pacific Ocean may have reminded someone strongly enough of "scrogs" to preserve the name in the maps of New Zealand.

In that sense, Scroggs Hill serves as a fitting reminder that the story of "scrogs" did not end in medieval Scotland. The word – or at least the landscape instinct behind it – traveled outward with migration, settlement, and memory, reappearing wherever people encountered familiar patterns of rough ground, scrub, pasture, and hill.

(401) PANORAMA OF BRIGHTON, NEW ZEALAND. A bend in **Brighton Road** is clearly visible at center. Its intersection with **Scroggs Hill Road** is barely visible to the right of the bend., in front of a cluster of houses. Waves at the edge of the Pacific Ocean roll onto the beach near right foreground. Shrubs on steep coastal slopes and gullies composed of mostly Kānuka, Mānuka, Mingimingi / Coprosma, Gorse, and regenerating broadleaf bush. Scattered taller trees consist of mostly Monterey Pine, Macrocarpa Cypress, and Eucalyptus. Some Nīkau Palms (*Rhopalostylis sapida*) near center foreground. Nīkau Palms are the only palm tree species native to New Zealand's mainland. The salt-laden Pacific Ocean winds suppress tall trees, favoring tough scrub species on exposed ridges and slopes.

[354] Information provided to me by hiker and Flickr photographer extraordinaire Simon Franicevir, after I inquired about his photo from Heaphy Track, New Zealand entitled "Scrog stop" (taken 16 Jan 2014, uploaded 18 Jan 2014) over Flickr Mail. *See also* "Scroggin (see trail mix)" on Australian Hiker, available at https://australianhiker.com.au/advice/scroggin/

[355] "A guide to the Screen Of Green (ScrOG) technique" (2022) by Steven Voser on Canna Connection, available at https://www.cannaconnection.com/blog/18670-scrog-screen-of-green-growing-method-explained

(402) CITY OF DUNEDIN AFTER SUNSET, FROM SIGNAL HILL. Otago Harbour appears on the left, Saddle Hill appears in the background at far right. Scroggs Hill hides behind Saddle Hill.

(403) SADDLE HILL, EAST OF SCROGGS HILL. View from the Taieri Plain, about 2 miles (3 km) to the northeast of Scroggs Hill. In 1770, Captain James Cook sighted Saddle Hill from the Pacific, with its twin summits of 473 m and 430 m. Based on its shape, he wrote the comment "a remarkable saddle" in his journal. The name stuck.[356]

(404) SADDLE HILL ON A FROSTY MORNING. Māori tradition holds that the hill is the remains of a taniwha (supernatural being) called Meremere. The Māori call the hill's two peaks *Makamaka* (the larger, taller peak) and *Pikiwara* (the smaller, shorter peak).

[356] "Story: Otago Places" on Te Ara, The Encyclopaedia of New Zealand, available at https://teara.govt.nz/en/otago-places/page-8 ; *see also* "Saddle Hill (New Zealand)" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saddle_Hill_(New_Zealand)

(405) TĪ KOŪKA CABBAGE TREE AT SUNSET ON OTAGO PENINSULA NEAR ŌTEPOTI (DUNEDIN). Iconic features of New Zealand landscapes, Tī Koūka Cabbage trees (*Cordyline australis*) thrive in ecological transition zones.

(406) OTAGO HARBOUR, VIEW TOWARDS ARAMOANA & PACIFIC OCEAN. Gorse (invasive from Britain) blooming in yellow behind Nīkau Palms (native to NZ) in foreground, center right. Beyond, a mosaic of pasture, dark plantation forestry (Monterey Pine), and shrubs (mixture of Mānuka, Kānuka, Coprosma, and regenerating coastal scrub brush).

FAMILY HISTORY IN THE AGE OF AI

Promise, Perils, and Lessons Learned

(407) REIMAGINING THE LAND OF SCROGGES. AI-generated illustration created in collaboration with ChatGPT (OpenAI), based on prompts by the Author.

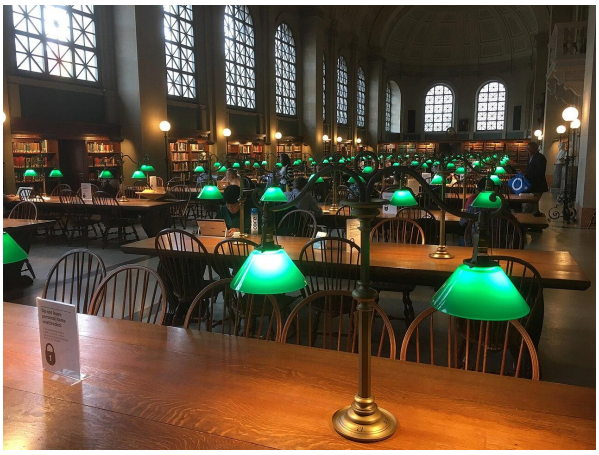
> "Observe constantly that all things take place by change, and accustom thyself to consider that the nature of the Universe loves nothing so much as to change the things which are, and to make new things like them."
>
> – Marcus Aurelius,
>
> Stoic Philosopher & Roman Emperor (reign: 161-180 AD)
>
> from his notes to himself,
>
> posthumously published as *Meditations*

The advent of Artificial Intelligence (AI) offers remarkable promise and significant perils, both generally and in the specific case of researching family history. While researching this project, I dove deeper into AI and Large Language Models (LLMs) than I ever had before. I learned some tough lessons in the process. I want to share those lessons. Partly because I believe good research should divulge its methodology. I also hope the wisdom from my experience can save others some frustration.

The Promise of AI in Genealogy

Most of the time, I found the experience of collaborating with AI extremely empowering.

AI has **supercharged online research**. The internet placed a world of information at our fingertips. With LLMs, the efficiency of online research skyrockets. LLMs can comb through oceans of material and synthesize it into an answer in the blink of an eye. And if there is debate online, it can lay out the most prominent theories and rank them in order of relative strength. My grandfather once spent weeks in libraries doing research that takes me just a few hours online. Now, instead of spending several hours researching something online, AI can give me an answer in seconds.



(408) BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY. McKim Building Reading Room.

AI can also serve as a tremendously powerful **multi-disciplinary collaborator**. Imagine having access to a historian, archaeologist, linguist, ecologist, and a translator proficient in any known language. Plus, you have a team of writers to help you draft and polish a written summary of the results. Now imagine they can all work at breathtaking speeds for virtually no money. They have no emotions, so they cannot get angry or defensive or emotionally attached to a theory. AI can give ordinary people this super-human, multi-disciplinary research team.

AI also dramatically improved the **writing process**. I found it helpful in generating outlines with good structure and flow. With proper guidance, I found it could create a solid rough draft on sections where I suffered from writer's block. But it truly shines during the refinement and revision stage. The key to good writing is revision.[357] An LLM can digest 100 pages and provide valuable, objective feedback within seconds or minutes. And it can do that dozens of times in a single hour without ever getting tired or frustrated with the writer. No human colleague can match that. That capability reduces turnaround time during the revision process by orders of magnitude. That leads to much better refinement and a greatly improved written work product.

The Perils of AI in Genealogy

For all its promise, working with LLMs has its pitfalls. Some of the time, I found the experience of collaborating with AI quite frustrating.

LLMs suffer from **blind spots**. If solid, reliable information exists online, LLMs can quickly sift through massive amounts of information and synthesize a reliable answer within seconds. But if critical information does not exist online or hides behind a paywall, the LLM will miss it. That blind spot could include: books or articles that exist only in print, oral history, family photos, family Bibles, old

[357] *See, e.g., On Writing Well* (first published 1976, 25th anniversary edition 2001) by William Zinsser, at page x of Introduction ("the essence of writing is rewriting"), available online https://dn790000.ca.archive.org/0/items/OnWritingWell/on-writing-well.pdf

letters, DNA results, and records that require a subscription like obituaries, military records, or many of the record collections on Ancestry.com. Unless you have this data and feed it directly to the LLM, it cannot see key pieces of the puzzle. And that can lead to very wrong answers.

LLMs also suffer from **bias in the sources** they work from. If online sources unanimously say the Earth is flat, then an LLM will tell you the Earth is flat. And unfortunately, it will tell you the Earth is flat ***very confidently***. That reflects its programming. Do not be fooled by its confidence.

On some tasks, the models just do not quite have the capabilities yet that humans take for granted. An obvious but powerful example: try asking it to pour you a glass of water.

For now, LLMs have some limits on their **interfaces with other systems**. For example, it cannot use an interactive map. I had to navigate interactive maps and feed it screen shots. (This seeming liability later transformed into an asset. Going through those interactive maps on my own greatly improved my understanding and led to unexpected discoveries and breakthroughs.) An LLM can process video, but I could not just give it a YouTube link to a video and let it get to work. I had to either download the video as a file or take key screen shots and feed it into the AI. When it comes to interfaces, humans can provide a key element to navigate challenges.

I could not overcome other LLM limitations so easily. In this project, I ran into two that took significant time and effort to navigate: 1) image generation; and 2) translation. Neither killed the project by any stretch, but both required heavy participation from me.

Image Generation: Stork Raven Mad

I frequently found **AI image generation capabilities** lacking. For example, I wanted AI to generate a nice, clean version of the Scruggs family coat of arms. I already had a public domain version of the Scruggs coat of arms in black and white.[358] I only wanted AI to fill in faded lines, add colors, and add texture effects. I thought it would be easy. I was very wrong.

The Scruggs coat of arms has three birds on a diagonal stripe with a greyhound on either side:

(409) SKETCH OF THE SCRUGGS COAT OF ARMS.

The best AI attempt at the Scruggs family coat of arms:

(410) CHATGPT ATTEMPT AT THE SCRUGGS COAT OF ARMS.

So close and yet so far! Try as we might, it just could not handle putting three birds on that stripe.

[358] From *Scruggs Genealogy: with a Brief History of the Allied Families Briscoe, Dial, Dunklin, Leake and Price* (1912) compiled by Ethel Hastings Scruggs Dunklin, at page 8, available at https://archive.org/details/scruggsgenealogy00dunk/page/n11/mode/2up

AI can generate amazing artwork, but it struggles with constraints like numbers. And heraldry has very strict numerical constraints. The AI's default mode required visually appealing output and this kept overriding my request for three birds on a stripe. For the AI, three birds were simply too crowded – no matter what prompts or inputs I used.

I had to change course on the coat of arms. After a productive discussion, ChatGPT suggested I take on the task manually myself using design software. However, I lacked the graphic design skills needed to give the image shading and texture.

Eventually, I adopted a hybrid approach. I had ChatGPT create the individual elements. Then I used design software to re-organize and assemble all the pieces. This gave me the best of both worlds: design finesse and numerical constraints.

(411) COAT OF ARMS ATTRIBUTED TO THE SCRUGGES AND SCROGGS FAMILY OF BEDFORDSHIRE (MODERNIZED).

Fortunately, I fared much better on the other issue: **translation**.

Lost in Translation

For this research, I needed good translations from medieval Latin to English. Would this work benefit from a careful translation by a human medieval Latin scholar with deep reserves of historical background knowledge? Yes! But I did not have one available, so I used the tools I had at hand.

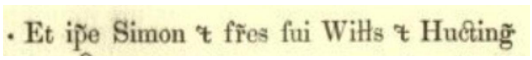
Ultimately, I felt that the tools available produced a good result. But the path from a document in medieval Latin to a good English translation took a much more long, winding path than I expected.

At first, I just threw documents in medieval Latin into a translator and hoped for a good translation. This proved disastrous. As it turns out, many AI translators have a default mode that tries to smooth things out in a very summary fashion. This translation can give you a general sense if you are looking at a will or a deed or a contract or a recipe, but you will not get an accurate translation that lays out all the specific people and important terms. And the recipe for chocolate cake might come out as a recipe for oatmeal slush.

The AI translators performed much better when I gave them very specific instructions. For example: "translate this literally, word for word, word order matters." But even then, they still made mistakes.

Ultimately, I found I needed an iterative process. I had to give the machine translators context for what I thought was important, instructions on how to approach the translation, and then I had to keep circling back to important words and passages in an ongoing dialogue. Some things came quick and easy; some things took several rounds of intense scrutiny.

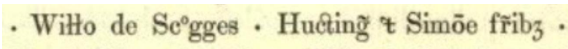
The best concrete translation example comes from the third charter.[359] Towards the end of the **text**, it says **Et ipse Simon et fres sui Witts et Hucting**:



[359] **3rd Charter**: ***Registrum Episcopatus Glasguensis***: *Munimenta Ecclesie Metropolitane Glasguensis a Sede Restaurata Seculo Incunte XII Ad Reformatam Religionem* (1843), aka the "***REG***", compiled and edited by Cosmo Nelson Innes, at **page 75-76 (Charter 87)**, available online at the Internet Archive: https://archive.org/details/registrumepiscv175glasuoft/mode/2up (these specific passages are at **page 76**)

English: and Simon himself and his brothers William and Uhting.

And then in the **witness list**, we see: **Witto de Scrogges Hucting et Simoe fribz**:


· Wiłło de Scᵒgges · Huc̃tinḡ ꝛ Simōe fr̃ibȝ ·

English: William de Scrogges [with] Uhting and Simon his brothers.

As we see above, the third charter uses special, non-standard characters.

These special characters lead to the first potential problem: transcription errors. On the witness list, some translations mistook **fribz** for **fils** and indicated "William de Scrogges with Hucting and his ***son*** Simon." WRONG! And in the realm of family history and genealogy, that meant a ***huge*** mistake.

Other problems emerged because the scribe abbreviated heavily. Not only did the scribe decide to save ink and paper by writing "de Scrogges" only once, he also decided to abbreviate **fratres** (brothers) down to **fribz**, which of course makes it look much more like **filius** (son) or its abbreviated version **fils**. On top of that, if the AI translator is in "summary mode" it often misses tiny details like that. I had to slow it down and tell it to look at specific words letter-by-letter, explaining all the abbreviations.

I tried multiple tactics to cross check and double check translations. Sometimes, I resorted to pitting multiple translators against each other to double check them. Sometimes, I just manually looked up words in a Latin dictionary. Whenever something like ChatGPT gave me inconsistent translations, I found I could have a frank, productive discussion with it about the inconsistencies.

Eventually I learned that the best translations take time and effort regardless of the technology available. Although frustrating at times, I found the net benefit far outweighed these frustrations.

Despite some frustrations with AI and LLMs, I found that even the frustrations taught me valuable lessons. With that in mind, I have distilled these lessons down to several key points.

Lessons Learned

Fundamentally, I learned to work as a team with the LLM. AI works best as a true **human-AI collaboration**, with each side playing to their strengths and offsetting the other's weaknesses.

One example illustrates the value of this method best: the OS map we used to determine the precise location for the Land of Scrogges.

(412) FIRST EDITION ORDNANCE SURVEY MAP (SIX-INCH, 1840S-1880S), PEEBLESSHIRE, showing Hamildean Hill, Scrog Hope, and Scrog Dene.

The old Ordnance Survey (OS) map from the 1800s provided the key to the property lines for the Land of Scrogges: it revealed that today's Scrog Hope and Scrog Dene were "anciently" called Gilmimenerdene, the name used by the charters.[360] Without that, we could not fully reconstruct the property lines. With it, everything fell into place.

Who found that map? ChatGPT. But…

Who discovered the marking of "anciently Gilmimenerdene"? Me.

This particular OS map was interactive; I had to handle that. And even when I fed ChatGPT screen

[360] The "anciently Gilmimenerdene" marking appears in the modern OS map, too, but I missed that initially because I did not zoom in quite enough at that spot.

shots, it missed "anciently Gilmimenerdene." The words appeared vertically in a visually busy area. And ChatGPT just had not focused full attention on it.

Together, we made a breakthrough. Without an authentic collaboration, we could have missed an incredible opportunity for precise reconstruction of the Land of Scrogges.

With that over-arching concept in mind, here are my key lessons learned:

Give the LLM context and guidance. Context helps the LLM understand what you really want. And if it does not understand what you really want, that makes it difficult to give you what you really want. Generally, the more context the better. The same principle applies to giving the LLM guidance through prompts.

The quality of AI's results hinge on the quality of the prompts from the user. During the writing process, I found ChatGPT created the worst drafts when I failed to give it good prompts about what I wanted to see in the written output. It generated a nice first draft about life on the Land of Scrogges, but that draft had nothing about a half ploughgate, the crops they grew, the House of Scrogges, the farm animals there, the mill they used, the military service obligations, or the church they went to. I felt these things were very important, but I had failed to let the LLM know that.

Question everything. For complex questions, treat the process as a dialogue. You cannot ask too many questions. Attack problems from multiple angles. Ask about hidden assumptions. Ask about alternate theories and how to test them. Push back on the LLM's conclusions. The LLM has no ego to bruise. Use this to your advantage.

Ask the LLM about itself. As ChatGPT told me, it is like a map with a map of itself. It can have a very productive conversation with you about its own capabilities. It can tell you all about its strengths and weaknesses. But only if you take the time to ask.

For research projects, 1) use a project folder; and 2) tell it to save important findings in stable memory. ChatGPT can lose sight of conversations in separate threads. Having all relevant threads in a research folder helps it keep all related discussions in mind. And ChatGPT can "forget" a key finding from much earlier in the same thread. Telling it to "remember that" or save something to stable memory helps.

For translations (and similar tasks), use an iterative process. Just throwing a document at a translator will probably give you a very summary, high-level gist of what the document is. But if the details interest you, give it some context and then ask for a literal, word by word translation where word order matters. After that, you may want to drill down into specific phrases or words, going word by word or even letter by letter. Never be afraid to use multiple tools and compare results. Never be afraid to press the translator on why any of its translations are inconsistent. And never be afraid to manually look up words in a translation dictionary.

Color outside the lines. AI may have supercharged the efficiency of my research and writing, but some of the best things did not come from AI. They came out my inefficient, curious wanderings. For example, photography made a key element of this project. Those photos did not come from AI. I found them while wandering around, looking for photos with the eye of a photography enthusiast. Technology did supercharge that at some level: photographers posted excellent digital photos on collaborative websites like Geograph, Flickr, & Wikimedia Commons. But it served as a reminder that some manual, inefficient rambling can lead to wonderful results.

(413) ONCE I WANDERED HERE. Beauty discovered by accident near Pyramid Lake in California, USA.

Double check anything important. At the bottom of the screen, ChatGPT reminds me: "ChatGPT can make mistakes. Check important info." Never forget that. ChatGPT helped me arrive at solid conclusions light years faster than I could have done myself. However, before I put even a draft article out into the world for anyone else to see, I circled back and verified anything important. For this project, I insisted on handling all the footnote citations myself manually based on my manual review of all the sources cited: Quality Control.

Treat AI and LLMs as a collaborative, non-human partner. LLMs like ChatGPT and Claude and are not mystical, all-knowing oracles. They have incredible capabilities, but they do their best work when paired with human creativity and intelligence.

The best **analogy** I can think of is this: imagine yourself as the head of a **Research Institute**. You have a team of amazing multi-disciplinary colleagues capable of tremendously sophisticated work. Each of them may have infinitely more depth of expertise than you do in specific areas. Nevertheless, you play an important supervisory role. You see the big picture in a way that your specialist colleagues might not. You have responsibility for the overall effort. No conclusion should go unquestioned, no process unexamined. No draft of written work product should sail through without careful review and edits. **"The buck stops here,"** as U.S. President Harry S. Truman once quipped.[361] Step into that role.

(414) TRUMAN & "THE BUCK STOPS HERE" SIGN.

Reflections and Looking Ahead

The AI wave has brought exponential change to our world. Change holds the power to inspire both hope and fear in us. My hope is that this project may alleviate some of the fear by demonstrating its benefit in researching family history.

Technology has enabled a remarkable journey for us in this project. We explored the origins of our surname in a way we never could before. We started with a dry Scots dictionary definition and some old charters written in medieval Latin. Modern tools allowed us to unlock those and discover a whole world – vivid in detail and breathtaking in scope – that had been patiently waiting for us over 800 years.

(415) ANCIENT SETTLEMENT BY WESTER HAPPREW. The Lyne Water winds through the right side of this photo and to its right we see some of the Land of Scrogges. In the foreground, we can see a shadowy outline in the soil marking an ancient settlement. Wester Happrew sits behind it.

Science and technology enabled us to understand what on Earth "scrogs" really meant. It helped us understand how they function as an ecosystem within other ecosystems: the wild woodland pioneers of the Scottish Borders.

PLACE NAMES AS FOSSILS

Place names can act like linguistic fossils.

They can preserve vanished landscapes long after the trees, houses, or people have gone.

[361] "'The Buck Stops Here' Desk sign" on the Harry S. Truman Library and Museum, available at https://www.trumanlibrary.gov/education/trivia/buck-stops-here-sign

(416) SCROG HILL NEAR DUNSTANBURGH CASTLE. North of the coastal village of Craster in Northumberland, northeast England.

But more than that, it opened up the scrogs as a lived experience. It breathed life into the scrogs. It allowed us to literally see the beauty of all the plants and animals of the scrogs with our own eyes.

With gorgeous photos from halfway around the world we could ***see*** what the de Scrogges family saw – the Hawthorn, Blackthorn, Hazel, Gorse, Juniper, and Heather with all their beautiful blooms, their sweet and tart fruits, and the delicious hazelnuts.

(417) BLOOMING GORSE AT THE HEAD OF LOCH ETIVE. Probably a Birch tree in foreground. Gorse and scrub paving the way for Birch: a scene of ecological succession.

We could see some of the birds of the scrogs: the Whitethroats, the Linnets, and the Yellowhammers. We can even ***hear*** them if we want to go online and request their birdsongs.

(418) COMMON WHITETHROAT. Whitethroats love to nest and sing in scrogs

We can even ***taste*** some of the fruits and nuts from the scrogs from our local grocery store.

(419) HAZELNUTS AND BLACKBERRIES ON PANCAKES. Looking delicious with raspberries and chocolate.

We also saw scrogs in poetry, prose, stories, and songs. We saw paintings and illustrations from over a century ago. And we can even hear one of the songs, "Jock o' Braidislee," thanks to modern recording and music streaming.

New innovations helped us understand what life looked like on the Land of Scrogges. We came to understand it conceptually, but beyond that we came to understand it as a lived experience. The latest systems helped us reconstruct the exact property lines for the land of Scrogges with a high level of confidence.

If we ever **visit** the **Land of Scrogges**, we can literally stand in their footsteps and walk the path from their home on the land to the fields, pastures, and meadows they worked and even to their church and over the Lynesmill bridge to the site of the watermill they once used. And we can know their footsteps with confidence.

Even if we never visit there, we still saw the land itself and the same hills, river, standing stones, old fort ruins, and much the same church that met their eyes nearly every day. Through photos, we brought the sights of their world into ours.

(420) LYNE WATER AND THE LAND OF SCROGGES.
Scrogs Field lies on the north bank (left) of the river in this photo.

(421) LYNESMILL BRIDGE.
In the foreground center: Rosebay Willowherb (tall red-pink stems).
In the right foreground: Hawthorn (with red "haws").
In the left foreground, possibly some Blackthorn and Hazel.

(422) LYNE PARISH CHURCH (LYNE KIRK): probably looking much as it did to the de Scrogges family of the late 1100s and early 1200s – with new windows and some new gravestones.

The wonders of modern technology gave us something magical: the ability to transform old dictionaries and documents into a lived experience of the people who came before us by over eight centuries, half a world away. We can **transport through space** and **time** in ways that my grandfather and great grandfather probably never even imagined.

(423) DELOREAN. "When this baby hits 88 miles per hour … you're gonna see some serious …" – Doc Brown in the 1985 film *Back to the Future*.

All these new technical developments facilitated a better understanding of **our surname's origins**. Although we do not have a definitive answer yet, we have emerged with a **strong**, cohesive, well-developed, fact-based **leading theory** rooted firmly in linguistics, history, ecology, and a reconstruction of this critical piece in the puzzle: the Land of Scrogges. Could future developments bring a dark horse alternative theory to the forefront? Perhaps, but we leave that to the mysteries ahead.

With all the promise of new developments, we still acknowledge the perils and the difficulty of change. I also hope you can build on my lessons learned and avoid some of the pitfalls that drove me half mad. Like the internet, AI will change the world and it is here to stay. As with the internet, the AI investment bubble may well burst. No matter how we feel emotionally about it, our world and universe are constantly changing. I hope we can all move forward and ultimately embrace the changes as best we can.

We have witnessed our common heritage in a way far beyond the imagination of previous generations. We take this with us as we move forward into the future.

Some key characteristics of the scrogs may give us heart in these turbulent times of change. What are these key features of scrogs? Wildness. Pioneering. Beauty. Abundance. Warmth. Practicality. Toughness. Protection. Resilience. Teamwork. Transformation.

(424) WIND-BLOWN HAWTHORN TREE IN BLOOM. Scrogs survive by adapting to harsh conditions.

We are all family. Like some of the scrogs themselves, we are still standing – even if times have brought some tough changes to us.

As we move forward, we can take courage in knowing that we all move forward together.

(425) STILL STANDING. AI-generated illustration created in collaboration with ChatGPT (OpenAI), based on prompts by the Author.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS:

STANDING ON THE SHOULDERS OF GIANTS

(426) WHITE MELDON FROM THE SOUTH. White Meldon is home to an Iron Age hilltop fort, about 2 miles (3 km) east of the Land of Scrogges. Photo courtesy of **Alan O'Dowd**. *See* Image Attributions section for more information.

> "If I have seen further, it is by standing on the shoulders of Giants."
>
> – Isaac Newton

This work would never exist without the people who paved the way for it.

George F. Black first published ***Surnames of Scotland*** in 1946. Had he not included an entry for "Scroggs" with a citation to the ***Registrum***

Episcopatus Glasguensis, I would have never even known where to look.

The charters might have been lost to history if **Simon de Scrogges** had not sold his land to the Church. The **Church scribes** diligently recorded and maintained the charters for future generations. **Cosmo Nelson Innes** diligently transcribed those Church records into the ***REG*** in 1843. Without those efforts, we might never have even seen the text from the charters.

Forty years ago, **my father** wrote an article for **Searching for Scruggs (SFS)** entitled "Views on the Origin of the Scruggs Name."[362] He did the best he could with the tools he had at hand. And it planted a seed in a 12-year-old version of me that eventually grew into this project.

More recently, **Scruggs Family Association (SFA)** members helped inspire and nurture this project. Many SFA officers and SFS contributors over the years helped lay the knowledge foundation for this book.

Ken Scruggs Maxwell visited the Land of Scrogges area in Peeblesshire, Scotland in 2014. Ken gave a presentation about his visit at the 2022 Scruggs Family Reunion in Richmond, Virginia. I attended it with my father, who called it a "dream presentation." The natural beauty of the area inspired me, and Ken's presentation piqued my interest.

Later, **Thomas Scruggs** wrote a series of compelling articles on the **Richard Scruggs** who immigrated from southeast England (Bedfordshire / Hertfordshire / London) to **Virginia** around **1655**. His articles opened my eyes to the possibility of this project.

The number of people whose contributions made this project possible defies any simple tabulation. Countless people helped by developing key **technological tools** like the internet, artificial intelligence and large language models, digital cameras, drones, and satellite technology. A vast number of linguists, historians, ecologists, archaeologists, scientists, artists, and musicians contributed to the mountains of collective knowledge and culture we now stand on.

Modern digital archives and **open knowledge projects** also made this research possible in ways previous generations could scarcely imagine. Organizations and communities such as Wikipedia, Wikimedia Commons, the Internet Archive, Geograph Britain and Ireland, Trove.Scot, ScARF (Scottish Archaeological Research Framework), the Dictionary of the Scots Language, and People of Medieval Scotland (POMS) helped preserve and freely share enormous quantities of historical, archaeological, linguistic, cartographic, and photographic knowledge. More traditional **libraries** and **museums** also contributed to this effort, including the National Library of Scotland, the Vikingmuseum, and the Trimontium Museum. Without the efforts of countless archivists, librarians, volunteers, photographers, scholars, and technology workers, much of this project would have remained inaccessible.

This work also owes a debt to the multitudes of **conservationists**, **ecologists**, & **nature educators** who helped preserve and interpret the many living landscapes explored here. Organizations like the Woodland Trust UK, Brun Valley Forest Park (BVFP), Natural England, NatureScot (Scotland's Nature Agency), the Royal Society for the Protection of Birds, and the UK National Trust have helped protect woodlands, wildlife, and historic landscapes while making ecological understanding widely available to the public. Their work helps ensure that the scrogs themselves – and the rich web of life surrounding them – continue to survive in the future.

All the beautiful **photographs** helped elevate this book from mere words to a visual experience. Thanks to the many people who have gone out to capture and share beautiful images of the Earth for websites like Flickr, Geograph Britain and Ireland, and Wikimedia Commons – not for money, but for

[362] "Views on the Origin of the Scruggs Name" by Leonard M. "Mike" Scruggs, *Searching for Scruggs* Vol. VI, Issue no. 2 (1987), pages 68-70. The SFA reprinted the article in *Selections from 'Searching for Scruggs' 1982-2012* (2012), edited by C. Eugene Scruggs and Mary Beth Scruggs Rephlo, at pages 5-12.

the simple satisfaction of sharing something beautiful.

A few **photography contributors** to Geograph Britain and Ireland stood out for both the quantity and quality of the photographs that appeared here.

Richard Webb provided the primary landscape photography through his contributions to Geograph. His work helped visually define the actual terrain of the Land of Scrogges – its boundaries, slopes, pastures, denes, and its atmosphere.

Jim Barton's photography provided additional topographical and structural views that helped shape the land in the mind's eye, allowing the reader to "walk the land" visually and understand how the agricultural unit fit together on the ground.

Alan O'Dowd contributed some of the most visually striking transition images in the book, including the cover image, Riding Hill from Penvalla, Lyne Water at Hamildean, and White Meldon (on the previous page).

Walter Baxter gave us atmosphere, iconic visuals like the windswept tree on Hogg Hill, and the apt nickname for sheep: "woolly locusts."

Chris Eilbeck caught the archaeology and topography of Tor Hillfort, Hamildean Farm, and the gate and wall at Hamildean Hope. His images helped bridge the medieval charter world with surviving traces still visible today.

Billy McCrorie contributed Scrogs of Drumruck images that gave us valuable comparative imagery for how "scrogs" survives elsewhere as a living place name and landscape feature.

Mary & Angus Hogg took us for a vivid tour with them along the Lyne Water on a sunny day in late May.

Adam Sommerville opened our eyes to the striking, simple beauty of Lyne Kirk.

William Dorward (The Branxholme Poacher 73. on Flickr) gave us a stunning view of the Castle Hill Scroggs near Langholm in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland. His look over ewesdale, the scroggs, and on into eskdale kicked of the "What on Earth are Scrogs?" section magnificently.

The fabulous hillwalker couple **Karl and Ali** gave the world photos ranging from Scroggs Farm near Staveley to Buckbank Lane near Scrogg House Farm and Sedbergh to the horses and sheep along the Howgills.

Nigel Brown contributed some strong thornland images for the Scroggs Bridge (Staveley) area, which helped illustrate how scrub, hedgerow, and thorny boundary growth can behave in a real landscape, not just a dictionary definition.

Trevor Littlewood took some excellent photos showing off the River Rawthey area's beauty.

Peter McDermott and **Peer Lawther,** along with **Chris Heaton** and several others, each named individually in the Image Attribution section, took some of the magnificent photos of the Howgills. These images inspire a sense of awe and wonder in me every time I see them. **Peter** also snapped one of the best pictures of the photogenic Scroggs Bridge that I have ever seen.

Bill Boaden captured some of the beauty of Scroggs Wood in Helsington/Kendal in Cumbria and near Burnley in Lancashire, sharing it through Geograph / Wikimedia Commons. **Chris Heaton** also made a strong contribution for Scroggs Wood near Burnley.

Peter Church and **Dr. Patty McAlpin** gave us some wonderful photos of Nut Wood and Wauldby Scrogs through Geograph.

Christine Johnstone caught Scrog Wood on digital media in a way that highlights its best qualities.

We owe most of our scenic stroll down Long Tongue Scrog Lane to the joint efforts of **Stanley Walker**, **habiloid**, and **Humphrey Bolton**.

The contributions of **Mike Quinn** and **Robert Graham** gave us some of the key photos around The Scrog near Castleside that helped unravel some of the mysteries there.

Charles J. Sharp and several other **botanical and wildlife photographers**, individually listed in the image attributions section, helped bring the flora and fauna of the scrogs to life through their work.

None of these photographers had the slightest idea that their work would later support this book. And yet the book would not have reached its full potential without their work.

Malcolm Bawn (malcbawn.photos on Flickr & online at malcbawn.photos) granted me permission to reproduce his **"Dunstanburgh Dawn"** photo that appears at the beginning of the section entitled "The Many Faces of British Scrogs." It is one of my favorite photos in the book. It is also one of the best photos taken of Dunstanburgh Castle, which is quite an accomplishment for such a beautiful and frequently photographed site.

Annie-Sue Jyelra (@Flickr) kindly granted me permission to include her trio of photos of Scroggs Lane near Staveley, ranging from verdant to ethereal.

Richard Berry (reel things film & photography, reelthings.co.uk) gave us another one of my favorite photos in this project: an inspiring sunset over Scroggs Wood in Helsington / Kendal.

Barry Noon made an exception to his usual practice and granted special permission for me to use his photos from Scroggs Wood near Burnley as part of this non-commercial family history project. I was thrilled to include his photos here. His compositions uniquely showcase the beauty of Scroggs Wood.

Paul Lakin granted me permission to reproduce some of his photographs of Wauldby Scrogs and Nut Wood. His photos gave us a wonderful family portrait of classic scrog species. Mist and light break through Blackthorn, imparting a luminous, ethereal quality to that sacred ground. To me, scrogs have exceptional beauty. But they are not always photogenic. They are messy, sprawling, wild things. Paul reveals their beauty through photographs in a rare and special way. I am filled with gratitude that I can experience and share his photos highlighting the untamed beauty of the scrogs.

Alan Draffan of the Consett & District Photographic Society granted me permission to reproduce some of his amazing photos of **The Scrog** near Castleside in this book. The Scrog radiates an air of mystery and wonder. Alan's stunning photos captured it brilliantly.

I am grateful that we can stand on the shoulders of everyone who paved the way for us. They helped us see our family history much more vividly than ever possible in the past. Most of all, I am grateful that we can stand and see it together.

Through their work, and ours, the Land of Scrogges is no longer just a name in a charter, but a place we can see, understand, and share.

(427) VALLEY OF THE LYNE WATER.
View to the south with Drochil Castle in the distance.
Photo courtesy of **Jim Barton**. *See* Image Attributions section.

IMAGE ATTRIBUTIONS

The Figures appearing in Part 3 are all listed consecutively at the beginning of Part 3. Otherwise, all images are listed in order of their appearance. Except for the cover, each image appearing in the text has a number at the beginning of its caption. This attribution section includes that **image/caption number** for each entry, which will hopefully make it easier to find the credits and important information pertaining to any image of interest.

By default, unless otherwise noted, the descriptions & comments on the photographs comes from the photographer's or uploader's description in Wikimedia Commons, Geograph Britain and Ireland, or Flickr.

Cover:

Huskie Rig and Pear Burn, Penvalla (cropped). *Huskie Rig and Pear Burn, Penvalla – Geograph 5066356*. Photo by **Alan O'Dowd** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Huskie_Rig_and_Pear_Burn,_Penvalla_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5066356.jpg

Author's Note on Cover Photo: This photo was taken at or near the peak of Penvalla, which is about 2 miles (3 km) southwest from Scrogs Field in the Land of Scrogges. The camera's view is towards the southeast, away from the Land of Scrogges (which is northeast of Penvalla's peak, to the far left of the photographer in this photo). The camera's view is towards Stobo (left, out of view) and Bellspool (center right, possibly obscured by hills) with the River Tweed (obscured by trees) running along the width of the distant valley towards the horizon. I needed a high-resolution photo for the cover and I could not find one I liked that actually had the Land of Scrogges in it. This photo may not have the Land of Scrogges in view, but it was taken nearby and still has some connections to the Land of Scrogges. Those connections: 1) Penvalla's peak can be seen clearly from some points on the Land of Scrogges (for an example, see image #176); 2) the landscape in the photo looks very similar to the landscape around the Land of Scrogges; and 3) Lyne Kirk began as a dependency of Stobo Kirk, providing a historic link between the Stobo and Lyne communities.

Introduction:

(1) **Coat of Arms attributed to the Scroggs family of Hertfordshire (Modernized).** Coat of arms of the Scroggs family of Hertfordshire, reconstructed by the Author from historical blazons in the Public Domain (see *The Visitations of Hertfordshire, 1572, 1634, with Hertfordshire Pedigrees*, published 1886 by the Harleian Society, at page 163). Modernized by the Author using ChatGPT (Open AI), including naturalistic color for the birds. Available under the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hertfordshire_Scroggs_Coat_of_Arms_-_jpeg.jpg

(2) **Coat of Arms attributed to the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire (Modernized)**. Coat of arms of the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire, reconstructed by the Author from historical blazons in the Public Domain (see *The Visitations of Bedfordshire AD 1566, 1582, and 1634*, published 1884 by the Harleian Society, at pages 154 & 195). Modernized by the Author using ChatGPT (Open AI), including naturalistic color for the birds. Available under the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bedfordshire_Scruggs_Coat_of_Arms_-_jpeg.jpg

(3) **Valley of the Lyne Water.** *Valley of the Lyne Water – Geograph 5455271*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Valley_of_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5455271.jpg

Part 1: What on Earth are Scrogs?

(4) **Castle Scrogs on the east side of Castle Hill, north of Langholm, Scotland**. *Scroggs*. A look over ewesdale, the scroggs, and on into eskdale. Langholm, Dumfriesshire, Scotland. Photo by **William Dorward** (The Branxholme Poacher 73. on Flickr), via Flickr, licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://www.flickr.com/photos/155696520@N05/53688983488

(5) **Looking down the Lyne Water towards the Land of Scrogges**. *Lyne Water – Geograph 2399353*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2399353.jpg

(6) **The Scrogs of Drumruck in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland (cropped).** *Scrogs of Drumruck – Geograph 4485183*. Photo by **Billy McCrorie** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrogs_of_Drumruck_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4485183.jpg

(7) **Scrog Hill in Aberdeenshire, Scotland (cropped).** *Fields of King's Crown – Geograph 7534011* – Photo by **Ralph Greig** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fields_of_King%27s_Crown_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7534011.jpg

(8) **Scrog Hill near Dunstanburgh Castle in coastal Northumberland, England.** *Scrog Hill – Geograph 2575876* – Photo by **N Chadwick**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2575876.jpg

(9) **Scrog Hill, from Dunstanburgh Castle.** *Scrog Hill, from Dunstanburgh Castle – Geograph 924451*. Photo by **Chris Gunns**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Hill,_from_Dunstanburgh_Castle_-_geograph.org.uk_-_924451.jpg

(10) **The Ruins of Dunstanburgh Castle.** *Dunstanburgh Castle 1072017*. Photo dated 1 Jul 2017. Photo by **Matthew.borg85**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dunstanburgh_Castle_1072017.jpg

(11) **Relief Location Map of Scotland in the United Kingdom (cropped, with annotations by the Author)**. Relief Map by **Eric Gaba**, **NordNordWest**, **Uwe Dedering** (cropped & annotations by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scotland_relief_location_map.jpg

(12) **Rowan Tree (*Sorbus aucuparia*)**. *Mountain road past Rowan Tree, Tullytrasna [Ireland] – Geograph 974296*. **Photographer's notes (with clarifications from the Author in brackets []):** At the edge of the forest in the distance is a ruined farm (seen on the map at the top edge of the [Geograph] square), from which children in 1960's walked to and fro each day to be schooled at Lettermore [Geograph photo no. 971128], a distance of roughly 8 miles a day. Photo by **Louise Price**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mountain_road_past_Rowan_Tree,_Tullytrasna_-_geograph.org.uk_-_974296.jpg

(13) **Silver Birch (*Betula pendula*).** *Koivut. Betula pendula*, Silver Birch / European Weeping Birch. Photo by **Neurovelho**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Koivut.jpg

(14) **Rowan Berries in late August.** *Rowanberries in late August 2004 in Helsinki*. A **rowan tree** (European Rowan or *Sorbus aucuparia*) and its leaves and berries, in Töölö, Helsinki, Finland, next to the Helsinki Olympic Stadium. Photo by **Jonik**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Rowanberries_in_late_August_2004_in_Helsinki.jpg

(15) **Silver Birch (*Betula pendula*).** *Betula pendula (11)*. The silver birch (Betula pendula) is a medium-sized deciduous tree, typically reaching 15 to 25 m (49 to 82 ft) tall (exceptionally up to 31 metres (102 ft)). Photo by **Marija Gajić**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Betula_pendula_(11).JPG

(16) **Common Hawthorn**. *Crataegus monogyna, Ports Down*. Photo of Common Hawthorn atop Ports Down, near Portsmouth, UK. Photo by **Ptelea**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Crataegus_monogyna,_Ports_Down.jpg

(17) **Haws:** the dry, berry-like fruit of the Common Hawthorn. *Crataegus monogyna – Geograph 4154877*. Photo by **Bob Harvey**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Crataegus_monogyna_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4154877.jpg

(18) **Row of Blackthorn trees**. *Blackthorn on Poppets Hill – Geograph 4865057*. Photo by **Des Blenkinsopp**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blackthorn_on_Poppets_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4865057.jpg

(19) **Sloe berries on a Blackthorn branch**. *Closeup of blackthorn aka sloe aka prunus spinosa sweden.* This shrub is called Blackthorn (its berries are called Sloe). Photo by **Martin Olsson** (mnemo on en/sv Wikipedia and Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Closeup_of_blackthorn_aka_sloe_aka_prunus_spinosa_sweden_20050924.jpg

(20) **Hazel Tree**. *Fagales – Corylus avellana – 5*. **Common hazel** (*Corylus avellana*) at the Bishop's Park and Fulham Palace, England. Photo by **Emőke Dénes**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fagales_-_Corylus_avellana_-_5.jpg

(21) **Hazelnuts!** *Hazelnuts*. Lots of hazelnuts. Photo by **Fir0002** at English Wikipedia, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hazelnuts.jpg

(22) **Bramble blossoms**, in shades of white and pink. *Bramble (Rubus fruticosus) – Geograph 479475*. Photo by **Fred James**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bramble_(Rubus_fruticosus)_-_geograph.org.uk_-_479475.jpg

(23) **Brambles aka blackberries**. *Bramble – blackberries (Rubus fruticosus)*. Photo by **Peter O'Connor** (**AnemoneProjectors** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bramble_-_blackberries_(Rubus_fruticosus)_(3830807544).jpg

(24) **Common Gorse.** *Fruiting Gorse – Flickr – Tatters ❀*. **Photographer's notes:** *Ulex* sp. Колючий дрок, утёсник, Улекс. Very thorny plant, which produces dramatic, bright yellow flowers in spring. Though far from exclusively Scottish, gorse, sometimes called whins in Scotland, brightens up the lowland landscapes throughout the country. **Author's note:** photo taken in or near the port village of Mallaig in the Scottish Highlands. Photo by **Tatiana Gerus, Татьяна Герус** (**Tatters ✾** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fruiting_Gorse_-_Flickr_-_Tatters_%E2%9D%80.jpg

(25) **Gorse (Whin) in full flower**. *Whin or Gorse*. Whin / Gorse in full flower. Ayrshire. Scotland. Photo by **Roger Griffith** (**Rosser1954**), via Wikimedia Commons, released by copyright holder into Public Domain. See: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Whin_or_Gorse.JPG

(26) **Dunstanburgh Castle with blooming gorse**. *Craster – Dunstanburgh Castle.* Craster, Dunstanburgh Castle. This is a photo of listed building number 1153477. Photo by **IanChristopherWeston**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Craster_-_Dunstanburgh_Castle_-_20210420140052.jpg

(27) **Dwarf Birch (*Betula nana*).** *Dwarf Birch imported from iNaturalist photo 307825724 on 31 December 2023*. Photo of Dwarf Birch uploaded from iNaturalist. Photo by **Steve Stevens** (**Steve B** on iNaturalist, **steve b** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through iNaturalist), available under CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dwarf_Birch_imported_from_iNaturalist_photo_307825724_on_31_December_2023.jpg

(28) **Downy Willow (*Salix lapponum*).** *Salix lapponum.* From Figure 1 (Habitat of *Saperda populnea lapponica* ssp. n., Trysil: Ljørdalen, Norway with an accumulation of downy willow (*Salix lapponum* L.) on a boreal and elevated boggy meadow), from "To be or not to be a subspecies: description of *Saperda populnea lapponica* ssp. N. (Coleoptera, Cerambycidae) developing in downy willow (*Salix lapponum* L)" by Henrik Wallin, Torstein Kvamme, & Johannes Bergsten on *ZooKeys 691:103-148* (17 Aug 2017). Photo attributed to **Henrik Wallin**, **Torstein Kvamme**, & **Johannes Bergsten**, via Wikimedia Commons (through ZooKeys), licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Salix_lapponum_(10.3897-zookeys.691.12880)_Figure_1.jpg

(29) **Mountain Willow (*Salix arbuscula*).** *Salix arbuscula Wierzba skandynawska 2021-04-05 02*. Mountain willow (*Salix arbuscula*), plant cultivated in Wrocław University Botanical Garden, Wrocław, Poland. Photo by **Agnieszka Kwiecień** (**Nova** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Salix_arbuscula_Wierzba_skandynawska_2021-04-05_02.jpg

(30) **Scots Pine (*Pinus sylvestris*) among blooming heather.** *Vliegden (Pinus sylvestris) tussen bloeiende heide. Locatie, Schaopedobbe (Schapenpoel).* Fir tree (*Pinus sylvestris*) between flowering heather. Location, Schaopedobbe (Schapenpoel) in the Netherlands. Photo by **Dominicus Johannes Bergsma**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vliegden_(Pinus_sylvestris)_tussen_bloeiende_heide._Locatie,_Schaopedobbe_(Schapenpoel)_05.jpg

(31) **Juniper.** *Close up of the Juniper plant – Geograph 455138*. It even looks prehistoric and as a result is the perfect plant for the region around Lochindorb. Photo by **Des Colhoun**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Close_up_of_the_Juniper_plant._-_geograph.org.uk_-_455138.jpg

(32) **Twisted Juniper tree (cropped).** *Juniper tree.* Twisted juniper tree with storm clouds in background. Black Canyon of the Gunnison National Park, Montrose County, Colorado. Photo by an employee of the **U.S. National Park Service** as part of that person's official duties (cropped by the Author). Public Domain as a work of the U.S. federal government under 17 U.S.C. §§ 101, 105. See https://www.nps.gov/aboutus/disclaimer.htm. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Twisted_juniper_tree_(4baebd76-3310-4391-be9e-ab741b4e0e6b).JPG

(33) **Ling Heather (*Calluna vulgaris*)**, growing wild in the Highlands of Scotland. *Heather (Highlands).* Heather (*Calluna vulgaris*), growing wild in the Highlands of Scotland. Photo by **John Haslam** (**Foxypar4** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Heather_(Highlands).jpg

(34) **Bell Heather (*Erica cinerea*).** *Erica Cinerea L.* Photo by **LIGURIAN VASCULAR FLORA** on Flickr, via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Erica_cinerea_L.png

(35) **Heather in the Highlands.** *Highland Heather.* Heather blooms on Ben A'an, Trossachs. Photo by **Andy Belshaw** from Glasgow, Scotland (**ABel-Photo** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Highland_Heather_-_Flickr_-_ABel-Photo.jpg

(36) **Crab Apple Tree in bloom.** *Malus sylvestris (villeple) tre.* Crab apple tree (*Malus sylvestris*) in full bloom. Photo by **Per Arvid Åsen**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Malus_sylvestris_(villeple)_tre.jpg

(37) **Fruit on a Crab Apple Tree.** *Malus sylvestris fruit, Vosseslag. Malus sylvestris.* Apples at Vosseslag – De Haan, Belgium. Photo by **Hans Hillewaert**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Malus_sylvestris_fruit,_Vosseslag.jpg

(38) **Red Squirrel (*Sciurus vulgaris*).** *Red squirrel in Royal Lazienki Park.* Red squirrel (*Sciurus vulgaris*) in Royal Lazienki Park, Warsaw, Poland. Photo by **Rhododendrites** (username on Wikimedia), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red_squirrel_(21808).jpg

(39) **Brown Hare (*Lepus europaeus*).** *Lièvre d'Europe / Brown Hare.* Lepus europaeus (Causse méjean, Lozère - France). Photo by **Jean-Jacques Boujot** (@Flickr) from Paris, France (cropped and re-touched by **William**, Wikimedia username: **Medium69**), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lepus_europaeus_(Causse_M%C3%A9jean,_Loz%C3%A8re)-cropped.jpg

(40) **European Badger (*Meles meles*)**. *European Badger – Meles meles.* Scotland – Meles meles. Photo by **Caroline Legg** (**cazalegg** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:European_Badger_-_Meles_meles_(51195321848).jpg

(41) **Red Deer (*Cervus elaphus*).** *Red deer (cervus elaphus) in Richmond Park.* Red deer (cervus elaphus) in light rain during autumn, surrounded by Bracken (Pteridium aquilinum). Richmond Park, London, United Kingdom. Photo by **Julian Herzog** (Julian Herzog Photography, at http://julianherzog.com/), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red_Deer_Cervus_Elaphus_in_Richmond_Park_2024_02.jpg

(42) **Dunnock (*Prunella modularis*) on a frosty, thorny branch.** *Dunnock (Prunella modularis occidentalis).* Dunnock *(Prunella modularis occidentalis)*, Cumnor Hill, Oxford. Photo by **Charles J. Sharp** (Sharp Photography, https://www.sharpphotography.co.uk/), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dunnock_(Prunella_modularis_occidentalis).jpg

(43) **Dunnock (Hedge Sparrow) Nest.** *Dunnock (Hedge Sparrow) Nest.* Dunnock *Prunella modularis,* Sutton in Ashfield, England. Photo by **NottsExMiner** on Flickr, via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dunnock_(Hedge_Sparrow)_Nest_11.04.11.jpg

(44) **Yellowhammer male.** *Yellowhammer (Emberiza citronella) male.* Aston Upthorpe, Oxfordshire. Photo by **Charles J. Sharp** (Sharp Photography, sharpphotography.co.uk), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Yellowhammer_(Emberiza_citrinella)_male.jpg

(45) **Common Linnet (*Linaria cannabina*).** *Linaria cannabina - Linotte mélodieuse. Linaria cannabina.* Common Linnet, a male, in breeding plumage at Mazères, Ariège, France. Photo by **Pierre Dalous**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Linaria_cannabina_-_Linotte_m%C3%A9lodieuse.jpg

(46) **Common Buzzard (*Buteo buteo*).** *Buteo buteo – Scotland-8.* A common buzzard in Scotland. *Wild Buzzard.* After the playful antics, it's back to work hunting for the next meal. Photo by **Mark Medcalf** (**birdtracker** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Buteo_buteo_-Scotland-8.jpg

(47) **Kestrel (*Falco tinnunculus*)**, hunting its prey. *Eurasian kestrel 2024.* A male Eurasian kestrel in flight. A male Eurasian kestrel (*Falco tinnunculus*) in flight in Franconville, France. Photo by **Alexis Lours**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Eurasian_kestrel_2024_01_01_03.jpg

(48) **Common Whitethroat**. *Common whitethroat.* St Petersburg/Leningrad Oblast. Common whitethroat. Photo by **Andrey Gulivanov** (**agulivanov** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Common_whitethroat_(51235364432).jpg

(49) **Lesser Whitethroat (*Sylvia curruca*), perched on a thorny branch**. *Lesser Whitethroat.* Lesser Whitethroat (*Sylvia curruca*) at Beltout, Beachy Head, England. Photo by **Ron Knight** (**sussexbirder** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lesser_Whitethroat.jpg

(50) **Small Tortoiseshell (*Aglais urticae*).** *Kleiner Fuchs, Aglais urticae. Aglais urticae.* The Small Tortoiseshell (Nymphalis urticae) is a well-known colorful butterfly found in temperate Europe. Photo by **Böhringer Friedrich**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.5. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kleiner_Fuchs,_Aglais_urticae.JPG

(51) **Tweed Valley, Scottish Borders**. *View down the Tweed valley – Geograph 8027927.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_down_the_Tweed_valley_-_geograph.org.uk_-_8027927.jpg

(52) **Lyne Water Flat lands**. *Lyne Water – Geograph 634786*. Lyne Water Flat lands beside the Lyne Water, downstream of Romano Bridge. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_634786.jpg

(53) **Yellowhammer on a Hawthorn in bloom**. *Yellowhammer on a Hawthorn – Geograph 8230061.* Photo by **Robert Graham**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Yellowhammer_on_a_Hawthorn_-_geograph.org.uk_-_8230061.jpg

(54) **Birch Grove in Autumn.** *Birch grove in the autumn.* A grove with thick white trunks lining the frame. Photo by **John Price** (johnprice on Upsplash, posted in 2014), via Wikimedia Commons (through Upsplash), available under CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication in effect at the time. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Birch_grove_in_the_autumn_(Unsplash).jpg . Upsplash: https://unsplash.com/photos/white-tree-trunks-with-yellow-leaves-at-daytime-SVqeVMCk9PE, also available through the royalty-free Upsplash License currently in effect: https://unsplash.com/license

(55) **A windswept tree on Hogg Hill.** Peeblesshire, Scotland. *A windswept tree on Hogg Hill – Geograph 1489100.* Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-

SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_windswept_tree_on_Hogg_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1489100.jpg

(56) **Scottish Blackface sheep on Black Hill,** within the Pentland Hills in Midlothian, Scotland. *Blackface Black Hill – Geograph 2765649*. Photo by **Adam Ward**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blackface_Black_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2765649.jpg

(57) **Ponies sheltering behind Gorse.** *Dartmoor ponies sheltering behind gorse.* Photo by **Miles Wolstenholme** (**Rambling4Miles** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dartmoor_ponies_sheltering_behind_gorse.jpg

(58) **Coastal thicket: Blackthorn, Hawthorn, and Gorse.** *Clump of blackthorn, hawthorn and gorse, Isle of Wight.* Photo by **Leimenide** (@ Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Clump_of_blackthorn,_hawthorn_and_gorse,_Isle_of_Wight.jpg

(59) **Border Reivers at Gilnockie Tower**. Illustration by **George Cattermole** (1800-1868), mid-19th century engraving of an original drawing. Public Domain. Image scanned from a print, courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Reivers_raid_on_Gilnockie_Tower.jpg

(60) **Blackthorn in blossom**. *Blackthorn in blossom.* Photo by **Tom Corser** (www.tomcorser.com), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blackthorn_in_blossom.jpg

(61) **European goldfinch (*Carduelis carduelis*)**. *European goldfinch (Carduelis carduelis) male.* European Goldfinch on high branches of blossoming tree. European goldfinch (*Carduelis carduelis*), male, Beckley, Oxfordshire. Photo by **Charles J. Sharp** (Sharp Photography, https://www.sharpphotography.co.uk/), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:European_goldfinch_(Carduelis_carduelis)_male.jpg

(62) **Juniper Berries**. *Juniper Berries – Geograph 6254347*. Photo by **Anne Burgess**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Juniper_Berries_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6254347.jpg

(63) **Over the Coquet valley from above the Barrow Scrogs**. *Over the Coquet valley from above Barrow Scrogs – Geograph 2539979*. Photo by **Andrew Curtis**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Over_the_Coquet_valley_from_above_Barrow_Scrogs_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2539979.jpg

(64) **A windswept tree on Hogg Hill.** Peeblesshire, Scotland. *A windswept tree on Hogg Hill – Geograph 1489100.* Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_windswept_tree_on_Hogg_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1489100.jpg

(65) **Woodland Edge near Ellon in Aberdeenshire, Scotland.** *Woodland Edge – Geograph 6543454*. Photo by **Andrew Wood**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Woodland_Edge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6543454.jpg

Part 2: Scrogs in Scottish Song, Poetry, and Story

(66) **Morton Castle, near Thornhill in Dumfries and Galloway, southwest Scotland.** *Morton Castle, Thornhill, Dumfries and Galloway – approach road.* Photo by **Roger Griffith** (**Rosser1954** on Wikimedia), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Morton_Castle,_Thornhill,_Dumfries_and_Galloway_-_approach_road.jpg

(67) **The Scrogs of Drumruck in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland.** *Woodland at Scrogs of Drumruck – Geograph 4485192.* Photo by **Billy McCrorie**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Woodland_at_Scrogs_of_Drumruck_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4485192.jpg

(68) **Blackthorn Tunnel**. (Near Burnham-on-Crouch in the Maldon District of Essex in the East of England.) *Blackthorn Tunnel – Geograph 370978*. **Photographer's notes:** Blackthorn Tunnel. A series of "tunnels" through the thick blackthorn hedge on the north bank of the Lion Creek lagoon, provide a hidden route to the hide on the bird sanctuary. This is a former section of the Roach Valley Way, now rerouted to minimise bird disturbance. Photo by **John Myers**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blackthorn_Tunnel_-_geograph.org.uk_-_370978.jpg

(69) **Yellowhammer (*Emberiza citrinella*).** *Emberiza citrinella – Midtjylland, Denmark -male-8*. Yellowhammer - Emberiza citrinella - Gultittlingur. A male Yellowhammer in Midtjylland, Denmark. Photo by **Ómar Runólfsson** (**omarrun** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Emberiza_citrinella_-Midtjylland,_Denmark_-male-8.jpg

(70) **Adult red fox (*Vulpes vulpes*).** *Red fox (Vulpes vulpes) – Izembek National Wild.* Adult red fox (*Vulpes vulpes* Linn) at Izembek National Wildlife Refuge, near Cold Bay, Alaska on September 7, 2018. Photo by **Gordon Leggett**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2018-09-07_01_Red_fox_(Vulpes_vulpes)_-_Izembek_National_Wild.jpg

(71) **"Johnie of Breadislee," illustrated by Thomas Sibson** (1817-1844), **engraved by William James Linton** (1812-1897), from page 226 in *The Book of British Ballads* (1842), edited by Samuel Carter Hall (1800-1889). Public Domain. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Johnie_of_Breadislee_(Sibson).jpg

(72) **"Johnny of Braidislee"** (1872) by English painter **Samuel Edmund Waller** (1853-1903). Public Domain.

(73) **The Lyne Water Valley.** *Lyne Water – Geograph 634879.* Looking down the Lyne Water with a flat-bottomed valley. Broughton Heights in the distance. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_634879.jpg

(74) **Coat of Arms attributed to the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire (Traditional)**. Coat of arms of the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire, reconstructed by the Author from historical blazons in the Public Domain (see *The Visitations of Bedfordshire AD 1566, 1582, and 1634*, published 1884 by the Harleian Society, at pages 154 & 195). This version features traditional heraldic colors like the "Or" (Gold) for the birds on the shield, the "Argent" (White/Silver) for the bird on the crest, and "Gules" (Red) for the crest bird's collar. Available under the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bedfordshire_Coat_of_Arms_-_Traditional_VERSION_2.png

(75) **Morton Castle. Dumfries and Galloway, southwest Scotland.** *Morton Castle – Geograph 1234045*. Morton Castle. Built on the site of an earlier castle; this ruin dates from the 15th century. Photo by **Iain Russell**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Morton_Castle_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1234045.jpg

(76) **Lyne Water at Hamildean.** *Lyne Water at Hamildean – Geograph 6308877*. Photo by **Alan O'Dowd**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_at_Hamildean_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6308877.jpg

Part 3: The Land of Scrogges

Figure Attributions:

- **Figure 1. Map of the Land of Scrogges,** historic Peeblesshire county, Scotland.
  - Reconstructed from medieval charter boundaries and overlaid on the Ordnance Survey 2nd Edition map (c. 1888–1915). The tract lies between the Lyne Water, Scrog Dene (Gilmiminerdene), and Westerdene (Hagging Hope), with adjacent features including Stevenson Hill and Hamildean Hill.
  - **Base map:** Ordnance Survey map, 2nd Edition (six-inch, c. 1888–1915). Image courtesy of the National Library of Scotland. Public Domain. Available at https://maps.nls.uk/os/6inch-2nd-and-later/
  - **Overlay and interpretation:** Author.
- **Figure 2: Topographic Setting of the Land of Scrogges (overhead view)**
  - LiDAR-derived visualization showing the natural basin defined by the Lyne Water, Scrog Dene, and Hagging Hope/How Burn. The terrain illustrates how the landholding forms a coherent agricultural unit bounded by watercourses and slopes.
  - **LiDAR data:** © Crown copyright and database right 2026, Scottish Remote Sensing Portal, licensed under the Open Government Licence v3.0. https://remotesensingdata.gov.scot/about
    - LiDAR data from Scottish Remote Sensing Portal available at: https://remotesensing-data.gov.scot/
    - Open Government Licence v3.0 available at: https://www.nation-alarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/
  - **Visualization and interpretation:** Author (rendered using Fugro Viewer).
- **Figure 3: Oblique Topographic View of the Land of Scrogges**
  - Angled LiDAR visualization highlighting the slopes, denes, and watercourses that define the natural boundaries of the landholding. The terrain shows how Scrogges sits within a shallow basin draining toward the Lyne Water.
  - **LiDAR data:** © Crown copyright and database right 2026, Scottish Remote Sensing Portal, licensed under the Open Government Licence v3.0. https://remotesensingdata.gov.scot/about
    - LiDAR data from Scottish Remote Sensing Portal available at: https://remotesensing-data.gov.scot/
    - Open Government Licence v3.0 available at: https://www.nation-alarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/
  - **Visualization and interpretation:** Author (rendered using Fugro Viewer).
- **Figure 4. Boomerang Overlay on Land of Scrogges Topography**
  - LiDAR-derived visualization overlaying a boomerang shape on the hill and ridge formations running across the Land of Scrogges.

- **LiDAR data:** © Crown copyright and database right 2026, Scottish Remote Sensing Portal, licensed under the Open Government Licence v3.0. https://remotesensingdata.gov.scot/about
  - LiDAR data from Scottish Remote Sensing Portal available at: https://remotesensing-data.gov.scot/
  - Open Government Licence v3.0 available at: https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/
- **Visualization and interpretation:** Author (rendered using Fugro Viewer).

Non-Figure Attributions:

(77) **The Lyne Water, looking upstream near Hamildean.** *Looking up the Lyne Water – Geograph 1337626.* Looking upstream near Hamildean on a fine afternoon at the end of May. Photo by **Mary and Angus Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Looking_Up_The_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1337626.jpg

(78) **Down the Lyne**. *Down the Lyne – Geograph 937380.* **Photographers' notes:** Looking downstream from a convenient roadside lay-by. A notice advises that the trout and grayling fishing is strictly preserved, and that anglers must obtain a permit to fish this water. More information on fishing is available at www.peeblesshiretroutfishing.co.uk. Photo by **Mary and Angus Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Down_The_Lyne_-_geograph.org.uk_-_937380.jpg

(79) **By the Lyne Water.** *By the Lyne Water – Geograph 1337733.* **Photographers' notes (with Author's note inserted in [brackets]):** Looking upstream near Hallyne [near Lyne Kirk]. The edge of the small flood plain is visible on the other side of the river. Photo by **Mary and Angus Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:By_The_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1337733.jpg

(80) **Meldon Burn, southwest of White Meldon.** *The Meldon Burn SW of White Meldon – Geograph 6629840.* Photo by **Gordon Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Meldon_Burn_SW_of_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6629840.jpg

(81) **Snapshot from the 1654 Blaeu Atlas of Scotland**. Map by Dutch cartographer **Joan Blaeu** based in part on earlier work by Scottish cartographer **Timothy Pont**. Public Domain. Image courtesy of National Library of Scotland: https://maps.nls.uk/atlas/blaeu/

(82) **The Lyne Water.** *The Lyne Water – Geograph 930323.* Photo by **Sarah Charlesworth**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_930323.jpg

(83) **The Lyne Water with Hamildean Hill in the background**. *Lyne Water – Geograph 3318592.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3318592.jpg

(84) **First Edition Ordnance Survey (OS) map** (six-inch, 1840s-1880s), Peeblesshire, showing Hamildean Hill, Scrog Hope, and Scrog Dene. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the **National Library of Scotland**, Ordnance Survey Maps – Six-inch, 1st edition, Scotland, 1843-1882. Available at https://maps.nls.uk/os/6inch/

(85) **Kilmun Parish Church with Argyll Mausoleum and Holy Loch in the Argyll and Bute council area of western Scotland**. *Kilmun Church*. Kilmun Church and Holy Loch, Scotland. Photo by **David Kelly** (**Stevouk** at **English Wikipedia**), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kilmunchurch.jpg

(86) **Scrog Dene, anciently called Gilmimenerdene.** *Scrog Dean – Geograph 2549310*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Dean_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549310.jpg

(87) **Lyne Water**. *Lyne Water – Geograph 6733105*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733105.jpg

(88) **Hagging Hope, once called Westerdene**. *Haggin Hope – Geograph 6733068*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Haggin_Hope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733068.jpg

(89) **Wall Junction on Stevenson Hill.** *Wall junction, Stevenson Hill – Geograph 2502188*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wall_junction,_Stevenson_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2502188.jpg

(90) **Hamildean Hill**. *Hamildean Hill – Geograph 3609446*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hamildean_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3609446.jpg

(91) **Above Hagging Hope**. *Above Haggin Hope – Geograph 3609422*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Above_Haggin_Hope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3609422.jpg

(92) **Modern satellite oblique view of the Land of Scrogges and surrounding features (with labeled pins added by the Author)**. Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(93) **Scrogs Field and surrounding hills on the Land of Scrogges.** Photo dated July 2015. *Field shapes above the Lyne Water – Geograph 4568672*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Field_shapes_above_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4568672.jpg

(94) **Excerpt from Roy Military Survey of Scotland, 1747–1755. Major-General William Roy** (1726-1790) served as Chief Surveyor for this "Great Map" created after the Jacobite rebellion, with assistance from other surveyors including **Paul Sandby** and **John Manson**. **Lieutenant-Colonel David Watson** initiated the project, which was approved by King George II of England. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the National Library of Scotland. Available at https://maps.nls.uk/roy/

(95) **View from the north slope of Riding Hill (cropped and annotated by the Author).** *On the north slope of Riding Hill – Geograph 375870*. Photo by **Eileen Henderson** (cropped and annotated by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:On_the_north_slope_of_Riding_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_375870.jpg

(96) **View of Hamildean Hill across the Lyne Water.** *Hamildean View – Geograph 1337648*. **Photographers' notes:** Looking across the Lyne Water over rich grazing land at Hamildean Farm. Hamildean Hill is in the background, on the left. Photo by **Mary and Angus Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hamildean_View_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1337648.jpg

(97) **Scrogs Field in the Land of Scrogges**. *Excess Water – Geograph 2549319*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Excess_water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549319.jpg

(98) **The Land of Scrogges and the Lyne Water Valley.** *Wester Happrew – Geograph 6733058*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wester_Happrew_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733058.jpg

(99) **Arable land beside the Lyne Water.** *Arable land beside the Lyne Water – Geograph 6733090*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Arable_land_beside_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733090.jpg

(100) **Hill pasture north of Hagging Hope.** *Hill pasture north of Hamildean Hill – Geograph 6137670*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hill_pasture_north_of_Hamildean_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137670.jpg

(101) **Deep Hope**. *Deep Hope – Geograph 6137682*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Deep_Hope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137682.jpg

(102) **From the Southwest Hilltop of Wide Hope Shank**. *From the southwest top of Wide Hope Shank – Geograph 2502214*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:From_the_southwest_top_of_Wide_Hope_Shank_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2502214.jpg

(103) **From the Northeast Hilltop of Wide Hope Shank**. *White Hope Shank – Geograph 3278099*. [**Author's note:** I checked the coordinates on Geograph and the GPS coordinates listed on Wikimedia Commons and confirmed that this photo is from the northeast hilltop of Wide Hope Shank by Deep Hope in the Lyne area of historic Peeblesshire, Scotland.] Photo by **Rude Health**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:White_Hope_Shank_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3278099.jpg

(104) **Standing Stones on Sheriff Muir, Lynesmill.** *Standing Stones on Sherriff Muir, Lynesmill – Geograph 1703416*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Standing_Stones_on_Sherriff_Muir,_Lynesmill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1703416.jpg

(105) **Lyneside Meadow with Hamildean Hill in background**. *Lyneside Meadow – Geograph 7789803*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyneside_meadow_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7789803.jpg

(106) **Black Meldon from Harehope Hill.** *Black Meldon from the northwest – Geograph 6137814*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Black_Meldon_from_the_northwest_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137814.jpg

(107) **Lyne Roman Fort near Peebles in the Scottish Borders (cropped).** Drone Photograph by **John Reid, Trimontium Museum** (cropped by the Author), via the Trimontium Museum Archive: https://www.trimontium.co.uk/archive-item/lyne-roman-fort-nr-peebles-scottish-borders/ . Reproduced by permission of John Reid and the Trimontium Museum. All rights reserved.

(108) **Lyne Kirk.** *Lyne Kirk*. Photo by **Adam Sommerville**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:LYNE.jpg

(109) **Lyne Roman Fort and Surrounding Area.** Drone Photograph by **John Reid, Trimontium Museum**, via the Trimontium Museum Archive: https://www.trimontium.co.uk/archive-item/lyne-roman-fort-nr-peebles-scottish-borders/ . Reproduced by permission of John Reid and the Trimontium Museum. All rights reserved.

(110) **Lyne Roman Fort.** *Lyne Roman Fort – Geograph 992346*. **Photographer's notes:** At the southeast corner of this 2nd century AD Antonine fort with defensive ditches still visible. The hill in the background is Torbank Hill. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Roman_Fort_-_geograph.org.uk_-_992346.jpg

(111) **Lyne Water and Roman Fort Site.** *Lyne Water and Roman Fort site – Geograph 1703401*. **Photographer's notes:** The remains of a Roman fort c AD 158, possibly a garrison for cavalry, are sited on the flat ground beyond the trees. (Source: John R Baldwin, Exploring Scotland's Heritage, Lothian and the Borders, HMSO Edinburgh 1985). Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_and_Roman_Fort_site_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1703401.jpg

(112) **Standing Stones on Sheriff Muir.** *Standing Stones – Geograph 7123240*. Photo by **Rab McMurdo**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Standing_Stones_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7123240.jpg

(113) **Sheriff Muir**. *Sherrif Muir – Geograph 8889*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sherriff_Muir._-_geograph.org.uk_-_8889.jpg

(114) **Hillfort on Tor Hill**. *Hill-fort, Torbank – Geograph 590685*. **Photographer's notes:** The outline of the fort can just be seen in the grass and heather. Atlas of hillforts number 3629. Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hill-fort,_Torbank_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590685.jpg

(115) **The Lyne Water near Lyne Kirk**. *The Lyne Water at Hallyne – Geograph 1337727*. **Photographers' notes:** Looking downstream on a fine late-May afternoon. Photo by **Mary and Angus Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Lyne_Water_at_Hallyne_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1337727.jpg

(116) **Southward View toward Hamildean Hill from the Land of Scrogges**. *Summit spot height 398 m by Hamildean Hill – Geograph 3609432*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Summit_spot_height_398m_by_Hamildean_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3609432.jpg

(117) **The Battle of Inab (Ard al-Hatim), from *Passages d'outremer* by Jean Colombe** (1430-1493) (with text by Sébastien Mamerot, born *circa* 1418-1440, died 1490), dated to the 14th century. Public Domain. Image courtesy of Gallica Digital Library, via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BattleOfInab.jpg **. Notes on the artwork from the uploader:** The Battle of Inab (also named Ard al-Hatim). Below: The recovery of Raymond of Poitier's body after the battle. The manuscript comes from the *Passages d'outremer* by Jean Colombe, which contains 66 full-page miniatures.

(118) **Scottish Borders: Autumn landscape.** *Scottish Borders autumn landscape.* Photo by **Caroline Legg** (**cazalegg** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scottish_Borders_autumn_landscape.jpg

(119) **Charter of Robert Edward,** parson of church at Sweynesthorp (Norfolk, east England), dated 1423. Public Domain. Image courtesy of University of Victoria Libraries (UVicLibraries on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr): https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Norfolk,_Charter_(18463919602).jpg . **Uploader's notes: Norfolk, Charter.** Charter of Robert Edward, parson of the church at Sweynesthorp; Thomas Glyse, chaplain; Edward Man, cordwainer of the City of Norwich; and John de Dunstone, enfeoffing Nicholas Norton of Brakene and Thomas Chaunseys of Hethill with the lands and tenements formerly belonging to Richard Dunstone in Brakene, Mulkeberton and Carleton. Dated at 'Brakene', 24 June, 1 Henry VI (1423). https://www.flickr.com/photos/128520551@N04/18463919602 (labeled "No known copyright restrictions" on Flickr).

(120) **Hillside with sheep near northeast boundary of the Land of Scrogges.** *Hillside with Sheep – Geograph 2502453.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hillside_with_sheep_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2502453.jpg

(121) **Keys (cast iron)**. *001 2019 06 23 Schluessel und Schluesselloecher.* Decoration keys made of cast iron. Photo by **Friedrich Haag**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:001_2019_06_23_Schluessel_und_Schluesselloecher.jpg

(122) **Gate and wall, Hamildean Hope.** *Gate and wall, Hamildean Hope – Geograph 590760.* Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gate_and_wall,_Hamildean_Hope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590760.jpg

(123) **Boundary wall, Wide Hope Shank.** *Boundary wall, Wide Hope Shank – Geograph 2502165.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Boundary_wall,_Wide_Hope_Shank_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2502165.jpg

(124) **Glasgow Cathedral viewed from the Necropolis.** *Glasgow Cathedral.* Photo by **Ewan McAndrew** (**Stinglehammer** on Wikimedia), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Glasgow_Cathedral_viewed_from_the_Necopolis_03.jpg

(125) **The Lyne Water with Torbank Hill in the background.** *Lyne Water – Geograph 44951.* Lyne Water. Tributary of the Tweed with Torbank hill in the background. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_44951.jpg

(126) **Riding Hill from Penvalla**. *Riding Hill from Penvalla – Geograph 5066376*. Photo by **Alan O'Dowd**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Riding_Hill_from_Penvalla_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5066376.jpg

(127) **View from the north slope of Riding Hill**. *On the north slope of Riding Hill – Geograph 375870*. Photo by **Eileen Henderson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:On_the_north_slope_of_Riding_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_375870.jpg

(128) **View westwards from Riding Hill**. *Westwards from Riding Hill – Geograph 4568641*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Westwards_from_Riding_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4568641.jpg

(129) **Clues**. *Clues 0068*. Clues bei Syke. Photo by **Syker Fotograf**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under the GNU General Public License. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Clues_0068.JPG

(130) "**The Battle of Hastings in 1066**" an **1814 oil painting** by **Francois Hippolyte Debon** (1807-1892). Public Domain. Image courtesy of Musee des Beaux-Arts de Caen, via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Battle_of_Hastings_in_1066.JPG

(131) **Sheriff Muir.** *Sheriff Muir – Geograph 3010467*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sheriff_Muir_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3010467.jpg

(132) **Lyne Water meets the River Tweed**. *River Tweed and Lyne Water – Geograph 3191191*. **Author's Note:** In this photo, the Lyne Water is on the north side (left) and the River Tweed is on the south side (right). Photo by **Frank Smith**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Tweed_and_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3191191.jpg

(133) **Hogg Hill and Westerdene.** *Hogg Hill – Geograph 1489173*. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hogg_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1489173.jpg

(134) **Hamildean Farm**. *Hamildean Farm – Geograph 590720*. Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hamildean_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590720.jpg

(135) **Modern satellite overhead view of the Land of Scrogges and surrounding features (with labeled pins added by the Author)**. Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(136) **Scrog Dene.** *Scrog Dean – Geograph 2549310*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Dean_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549310.jpg

(137) **Modern satellite oblique view of the Land of Scrogges and surrounding features (with labeled pins added by the Author)**. Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(138) **Simplified Soil Map of Scrogges Landscape (1).** Adapted by the Author from soil data provided by the interactive map of **Scotland's Soils (James Hutton Institute)**, using detailed soil mapping derived from

the 1:25,000 scale Soil Map of Scotland. Contains James Hutton Institute materials, © and database right **James Hutton Institute** 2026. Used with permission of The James Hutton Institute. All rights reserved. Any public sector information contained in these data is licensed under the Open Government Licence v2.0. Reproduced under the Institute's Open Data License freely permitting non-commercial use. https://www.hutton.ac.uk/soil-maps/ & https://www.hutton.ac.uk/wp-content/uploads/2024/05/The-James-Hutton-Institute-Open-Data-Licence-download.pdf . Reference maps available at National Soil Map of Scotland (1:250,000 scale): https://soils.environment.gov.scot/maps/soil-maps/national-soil-map-of-scotland/ and Soil Map of Scotland (Partial Cover, 1:25,000 scale): https://soils.environment.gov.scot/maps/soil-maps/soil-map-of-scotland-partial-cover/

(139) **Simplified Soil Map of the Scrogges Landscape (2).** Adapted by the Author from soil data provided by the interactive map of **Scotland's Soils (World Reference Base classification), James Hutton Institute**. Contains James Hutton Institute materials, © and database right **James Hutton Institute** 2026. Used with permission of The James Hutton Institute. All rights reserved. Any public sector information contained in these data is licensed under the Open Government Licence v2.0. Reproduced under the Institute's Open Data License freely permitting non-commercial use. https://www.hutton.ac.uk/soil-maps/ & https://www.hutton.ac.uk/wp-content/uploads/2024/05/The-James-Hutton-Institute-Open-Data-Licence-download.pdf . Reference maps available at: https://soils.environment.gov.scot/maps/soil-maps/world-reference-base-soil-map/

(140) **The Dartmoor Cist**. (Dartmoor, southern Devon, Southwest England, in/near Dartmoor National Park.) *The Crock of Gold cist – Dartmoor – Geograph 172836*. **Photographer's notes:** The Crock of Gold cist – Dartmoor. A Bronze Age tomb. The dislodged cover stone lies behind and the whole cist is contained within a small stone circle. Photo by **Richard Knights**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Crock_of_Gold_cist_-_Dartmoor_-_geograph.org.uk_-_172836.jpg

(141) **Fields and Woodland.** (Near Bottomstead Farm in Southern England, near Newbury and Marlborough in County Wiltshire.) *Fields and Woodland near Bottomstead Farm – Geograph 62399*. **Photographer's notes:** Fields and Woodland near Bottomstead Farm. This view of the fields and the copse south west of Bottomstead Farm was taken from the Wayfarer's Walk. Note the fringe of maize plantation on the perimeter of the fields. This gives the fields a beautifully "manicured" look to them. Photo by **Pam Brophy**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fields_and_Woodland_near_Bottomstead_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_62399.jpg

(142) **"Woodsmen Returning Home":** an 1899 oil painting by **Károly Ferenczy** (1862-1917). Public Domain. Image courtesy of Hungarian National Gallery, via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ferenczy,_K%C3%A1roly_-_Woodsmen_Returning_Home_(1899).jpg

(143) **Stevenson Hill (southeast side) on a frosty afternoon.** *Stevenson Hill – Geograph 1070010*. Steep ground north of the Lyne Water on a frosty afternoon. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Stevenson_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1070010.jpg

(144) **Hawthorn Tree at Woodland Edge.** *Crataegus monogyna subsp. Monogyna sl4*. **Photographer's notes (with Author's clarifications in [brackets]):** Taxonym: *Crataegus monogyna* (*subsp. monogyna*) ss Fischer et al. EfÖLS 2008 ISBN 978-3-85474-187-9. Location: Steinberg near Niederhollabrunn, district Korneuburg, Lower Austria – ca. 375 m a.s.l. [*circa* 375 m above sea level]. Habitat: semi-dry grassland. Photo by **Stefan**

Lefnaer, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Crataegus_monogyna_subsp._monogyna_sl4.jpg

(145) **Birch Forest** at the Sipmolvárri in Narvik, Norway. *Birch forest at the Sipmolvárri in Narvik*. Photo by **Leonhard Lenz**, via Wikimedia Commons, available under Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Birch_forest_at_the_Sipmolv%C3%A1rri_in_Narvik_2022-08-21_08.jpg

(146) **Red Fox (*Vulpes vulpes*).** *Red Fox (Vulpes vulpes).* **Photographer's notes:** Kingdom: Animalia Phylum: Chordata Class: Mammalia Order: Carnivora Suborder: Caniformia Family: Canidae Genus: Vulpes Species: V. vulpes. The classifications on my photostream are in most cases "best guess" classifications by myself or other amateurs. The accuracy may in some cases be questionable. Constructive comments and/or corrections are encouraged. Photo by **Jon Glittenberg** (@Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red_Fox_(Vulpes_vulpes)_(36030818075).png

(147) **Viking Boat replica in Corrie Harbour.** *Corrie Harbour, Viking Boat – Geograph 1462867*. The Vikings were all in the pub planning a barbie and a big bonfire. Photo by **Alisdair Mclean**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Corrie_Harbour,Viking_Boat_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1462867.jpg

(148) **"Guðrún by Sigurður's deathbed"** (1888) by **Johannes Gehrts** (1855–1921). From the book *Walhall : Germanische Götter- und Heldensagen für Alt und Jung am deutsche Herd erzählt* by Felix Dahn (1834-1912). Public Domain. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gudrun_an_Sigurds_Bahre.png

(149) **Sigurd kills the dragon Fafnir.** Siegfried kills the dragon Fafnir with his legendary magical sword, Nothung. From 32 colour plates illustrating Richard Wagner's "Siegfried." Specifically, from *Richard Wagner, Siegfried & The Twilight of the Gods* (1911) by **Arthur Rackham** (1867-1939). Public Domain. Published before 1931, artist passed away over 86 years ago. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Siegfried_kills_Fafnir.jpg

(150) **William the Conqueror, as portrayed in the Genealogical Chronicle of the English Kings.** *William the Conqueror Illumination.* William the Conqueror of England portrayed in the Genealogical Chronicle of the English Kings. **Anonymous Author**, 13th century. Public Domain. Image via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:William_the_Conqueror_Illumination.png

(151) **White Meldon from the northwest.** *White Meldon from the northwest – Geograph 6137827*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:White_Meldon_from_the_northwest_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137827.jpg

(152) **Westward view from the hill fort on White Meldon**. *Black Meldon from the fort on White Meldon – Geograph 7992052*. Photo by **Iain Lees**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Black_Meldon_from_the_Fort_on_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7992052.jpg

(153) **Summit of White Meldon**. *The summit of White Meldon – Geograph 37958*. Photo by **Kevin Rae**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_summit_of_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_37958.jpg

(154) **Hill Fort on White Meldon** . *Hill fort, White Meldon summit – Geograph 1391097*. **Photographer's notes:** Hill fort, White Meldon summit At approximately 200m x 300m this is the largest native hill fort in the area, and its size doesn't make it easy to photograph in situ. It had four concentric lines of defence within which traces of 29 houses have been found. The photograph shows part of one rampart on the NE side of the summit. ('Peeblesshire - An Inventory of the Ancient Monuments', The Royal Commission on the Ancient and Historical Monuments of Scotland, HMSO 1967). Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hill_fort,_White_Meldon_summit_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1391097.jpg

(155) **Anthropic Farm Units**. *Anthropic Farm Units*. **Uploader's notes:** This derivative work depicts six historical units of land measurement: the furlong, the rod, the oxgang, the virgate, the carucate, and the acre. This work is derivative of Ploughmen – Facsimile of a Miniature in a medieval manuscript published by Shaw, with legend "God Spede þe plough, and send us korne enow." Note that "þe" should be transliterated "the". Project Gutenberg text 10940 Title: Manners, Custom and Dress During the Middle Ages and During the Renaissance Period. Public Domain. Image courtesy of **Unitfreak** (on English Wikipedia), via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Anthropic_Farm_Units.png

(156) **Sheep Pasture**. *Sheep Pasture – Geograph 981803*. Sheep Pasture. Viewed from Abbey Knowe with Hamildean Farm and Hamildean Hill in the background. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sheep_pasture_-_geograph.org.uk_-_981803.jpg

(157) **Avena sativa (the common oat), growing in a field.** *Avena sativa – cultivated oats*. The large glumes enveloping 2-4 glabrous and mostly awnless florets characterized the spikelet of cultivated oats. Photo by **Matt Lavin** (@Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Avena_sativa_(3873732125).jpg

(158) **First Edition Ordnance Survey map (six-inch, 1840s-1880s)** showing Lyne Station, Lynesmill Bridge, and the site of Lynes Mill (ruins) near the Lyne Water. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the **National Library of Scotland**, Ordnance Survey Maps, Six-Inch 1st edition, Scotland (1843-1882). Available at https://maps.nls.uk/os/6inch/

(159) **Lynesmill Bridge**. *Lynesmill Bridge – Geograph 6185509*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lynesmill_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6185509.jpg

(160) **Avena sativa (common oat), harvested.** *Avena sativa 004*. *Avena sativa*, Poaceae, Common Oat, fruits and seeds; Zell am Harmersbach, Germany. Photo by **H. Zell**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Avena_sativa_004.JPG

(161) **Scrogs Field and surrounding hills on the Land of Scrogges.** *Field shapes above the Lyne Water – Geograph 4568672*. **Author's note:** The viewpoint is from Riding Hill in July 2015. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Field_shapes_above_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4568672.jpg

(162) **Drochil Castle (from afar).** *Drochil Castle – Geograph 1489134*. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Drochil_Castle_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1489134.jpg

(163) **Drochil Castle (closer view).** *Schotland Drochil Castle 6-05-2010 16-51-45*. Drochil Castle, south of West Linton, Scotland. Photo by **Paul Hermans**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Schotland_Drochil_Castle_6-05-2010_16-51-45.JPG

(164) **First Edition Ordnance Survey map (six-inch, 1840s-1880s),** Peeblesshire, showing the "Site of Scrogs" between Scrog Hope and a funnel-shaped cluster of trees. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the **National Library of Scotland**, Ordnance Survey Maps, Six-Inch 1st edition, Scotland (1843-1882). Available at https://maps.nls.uk/os/6inch/

(165) **Viking Longhouse (exterior) at Haroldswick.** On the island of Unst in the Shetland Islands, Scotland. *The Viking Longhouse at Haroldswick – Geograph 7995478*. Photo by **Iain Lees**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Viking_Longhouse_at_Haroldswick_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7995478.jpg

(166) **Viking Longhouse (interior) at Haroldswick.** On the island of Unst in the Shetland Islands, Scotland. *Viking Longhouse reconstruction (2) – Geograph 7555844*. Photo by **Carroll Pierce**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Viking_Longhouse_reconstruction_(2)_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7555844.jpg

(167) **Viking Longhouse Interior (illustration by Dag Frognes)**. *Langhus fra vikingtiden*. The interior of a typical longhouse from the Migration Period/Viking Age. Illustration by **Dag Frognes**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Langhus_fra_vikingtiden.jpg

(168) **The Wooden Church in Romania.** *Voroveni AG.bislemn.SE altar*. Voroveni, Argeş county, Romania: the wooden church. Photo by **Alexandru Baboş** (**Albabos** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Voroveni_AG.bislemn.SE_altar.jpg

(169) **Morton Castle and Loch near Thornhill.** *Morton Castle and Loch near Thornhill – Geograph 6507958*. Photo by **Colin Park**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Morton_Castle_and_Loch_near_Thornhill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6507958.jpg

(170) **Dunstanburgh Castle.** *Craster – Dunstanburgh Castle*. Craster, Dunstanburgh Castle. This is a photo of listed building number 1153477. Photo by **IanChristopherWeston**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Craster_-_Dunstanburgh_Castle_-_20210420140152.jpg

(171) **Hamildean Wall & Gate.** *Gate and Wall, Hamildean Hope – Geograph 590760*. Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gate_and_wall,_Hamildean_Hope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590760.jpg

(172) **The Famous "Galloway" Pony.** *The famous "Galloway" pony – Geograph 951941*. **Photographer's notes:** The famous Galloway ponies stood 13 to 15 hands high, and were fast sure-footed animals, ideally suited

to cavalry work over any terrain. Photo by **Malcolm Carruthers**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_famous_%22Galloway%22_Pony_-_geograph.org.uk_-_951941.jpg

(173) **Medieval Plowing with Oxen (from a 14th century manuscript)**. **Unknown Author**. Public Domain. Source: *Mediaeval and Modern History* (1885, rev. ed. 1905) by P.V.N. (Phillip Van Ness) Myers (1846-1937), at page 218, Figure 42: Plowing Scene. (From a manuscript of the fourteenth century). Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Medievalplowingwoodcut.jpg

(174) **Highland Cattle (father and son), Scotland**. From a photomechanical color print dated *circa* 1890-1900 attributed by the Library of Congress to the Detroit Publishing Co., Catalog J – foreign section, Print No. 11206 from "Views of the British Isles" (1905) in the Photochrom print collection. Public Domain, no known copyright restrictions. Image courtesy of **The Library of Congress** (LOC's photostream @Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr): https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:(Father_and_son_(highland_cattle))_(LOC)_(16615444570).jpg ; *see also* https://www.flickr.com/photos/library_of_congress/16615444570/

(175) **Shetland-Hebridian Lambs.** *Shetland-Hebridian lambs.* Three Shetland-Hebridian lambs about six months old. Sired by white Shetland ram out of Hebridian ewes. Photo by **Richard New Forest**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Shetland_-_Hebridean_lambs.jpg

(176) **North hillside on the Land of Scrogges with sheep grazing near grassy sheepwalks.** *Hillside north of Hamildean Hill – Geograph 6137113.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hillside_north_of_Hamildean_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137113.jpg

(177) **Lambing Time**. *Lambing time at Bagh an t-Srathaidh – Geograph 1639021.* Photo by **Lee Roberts**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lambing_time_at_Bagh_an_t-Srathaidh_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1639021.jpg

(178) **Making Hay at Wester Happrew.** *Arable land beside the Lyne Water – Geograph 6733075.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Arable_land_beside_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733075.jpg

(179) **Southeastern slopes, Torbank Hill in Autumn.** *Southeastern slopes, Torbank Hill – Geograph 590675.* Photo dated 21 Oct 2007. **Photographer's note:** The shallow valley is the headwater of the Clayhouse Burn. Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Southeastern_slopes,_Torbank_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590675.jpg

(180) **Lyne in Winter snow, with Torbank Hill in the background**. *Lyne – Geograph 7384178.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7384178.jpg

(181) **Birch Woodland in Glen Affric**. *Birch woodland in Glen Affric – Geograph 2894277.* **Author's note:** Glen Affric is a National Nature Reserve southwest of Cannich, in the northwest Highlands of Scotland. Photo by **Mike Pennington**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-

SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Birch_woodland_in_Glen_Affric_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2894277.jpg

(182) **Birch Forest.** *Birch forest.* Photo by **ecom** (on Panoramio), via Wikimedia Commons (through Panoramio), licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Birch_forest_-_panoramio_(1).jpg

(183) **Larch Wood.** *Larch Wood – Geograph 2549331.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Larch_wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549331.jpg

(184) **Downy Birches.** *Betula pubescens subsp. tortuosa Saana.* Arctic Downy Birches (*Betula pubescens subsp. tortuosa*) near Saana fell, Finland. Photo by **kallerna** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Betula_pubescens_subsp._tortuosa_Saana.jpg

(185) **Lone Silver Birch.** *Ilsfeld – Schozach – Schozacher Birke vor Sonnenuntergangs-Himmel.* **Photographer's caption:** A birch (*Betula pendula*) on the Schozacher Höhe near Schozach, a district of Ilsfeld, Germany. **Photographer's notes / description:** Solitary birch (*Betula pendula*) on the *Schozacher Höhe* near Schozach, a district of Ilsfeld, Germany. Photo taken in January during sunset, looking southwards over the tertiary road K 2083. **©Roman Eisele / CC BY-SA 4.0** https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ , Reference No. RQBB4727. Photo by **Roman Eisele**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ilsfeld_-_Schozach_-_Schozacher_H%C3%B6he_-_Birke_vor_Sonnenuntergangs-Himmel_(1).jpg

(186) **Dwarf Birch.** Dwarf Birch (*Betula nana*). *Photo 88888355, Dwarf Birch (Betula nana).* Photo by **Dag Terje Filip Endresen** (**dagendresen** on iNaturalist), via Wikimedia Commons (through iNaturalist), available under CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Betula_nana_88888355.jpg

(187) **Vihta of Birch Twigs**. *Vihtoja.* **Photographer's notes:** Finnish vihta (in East Finland called vasta), made of birch. It is used in traditional sauna-bathing for massage and stimulation of the skin. Two of the vihtas to the right are made in the traditional way, bound together with a rope made of a birch branch. Photo by **kallerna** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vihtoja.jpg

(188) **Scrog Dene**. *Scrog Dean – Geograph 2549310.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Dean_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549310.jpg

(189) **"The Last of the Clan"** (1865) by **Thomas Faed** (1825-1900). Public Domain. Image courtesy of **Art UK**, part of The Fleming Collection, via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Thomas_Faed_(1825-1900)_-_The_Last_of_the_Clan_-_FWAF-RF43_-_The_Fleming_Collection.jpg

(190) **Satellite view of Scrog Hope, Scrog Dene, and west side of Hamildean Hill (with labeled pins added by the Author).** Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with image use guidelines for Google Earth: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/.

(191) **Cut Firewood**. *Coggins Mill, Little Trogers Lane: Furnace Wood Firewood – Geograph 6616581.* Photo by **Michael Garlick**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Coggins_Mill,_Little_Trogers_Lane,_Furnace_Wood_Firewood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6616581.jpg

(192) **Wood Fire**. *Fireplace-RM*. Fire. Photo by **Ryan Mahle** (**rmahle** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fireplace-RM.jpg

(193) **Penny (Pence) of King William I ("the Lion") of Scotland.** *William I penny 1205*. **Photographer/Uploader's notes:** Description: Scotland. William I of Scotland, the Lion. 1165-1214. AR Penny (19mm, 1.45 gm, 2h). Short cross and stars coinage Phase B, 1205-1230. Perth mint; Henry le Roux, mintmaster. +WILAM R', crowned head left, holding sceptre with pellet on shaft. +hENRI LE RVS, voided short cross; stars in quarters. Burns I -; SCBI 35 (Ashmolean) -; SCBC 5031. Good VF, toned, remarkably complete strike. **N.B.:** The rarest of William's moneyers, with an unrecorded obverse legend. Photo by **CNG** (**Classical Numismatic Group, Inc., https://www.cngcoins.com/**), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:William_I_penny_1205_756859.jpg

(194) **Saint Martin dividing his cloak.** *Kloster Wettingen Ost*. **Photographer's notes (in German): Deutsch:** Figurenscheibe des Standes Uri im Kreuzgang des Klosters Wettingen: Ost IV 1. **Author's translation (in English):** Figure panel of the canton of Uri in the cloister of Wettingen Monastery: East IV 1. Photo by **Badener** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kloster_Wettingen_Ost_IV_1.jpg

(195) **Scottish King William the Lion recklessly charges the English army at the Battle of Alnwick (1174) and is captured**. From an 1864 engraving by **Edmund Evans** (1826-1905) for "Henry II" in *A Chronicle of England: B.C. 55 – A.D. 1485* (1864) by James William Edmund Doyle (1822-1892), at page 184. Public Domain. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_Chronicle_of_England_-_Page_184_-_William_the_Lion_Taken_Prisoner.jpg

(196) **Temple Old Kirk in Temple (formerly Balantrodach), Midlothian, Scotland.** *Templechurch-wyrdlight*. Temple Church Temple Midlothian. Photo by **Antony McCallum** (**WyrdLight.com**, https://www.wyrdlight.com/), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Templechurch-wyrdlight.jpg

(197) **Lyne Kirk: stained glass window (1).** *Lyne Kirk stained glass window – Geograph 1484622*. Stained glass window and flower arrangement. Photo by **Adam Sommerville**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Kirk_stained_glass_window_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1484622.jpg

(198) **Lyne Kirk (interior).** *Lyne Kirk in Peeblesshire – Geograph 2376170*. Photo by **James Denham**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Kirk_In_Peeblesshire_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2376170.jpg

(199) **Lyne Kirk: stained glass window (2).** *Lyne Kirk stained glass window – Geograph 1484658*. **Photographer's notes:** Lyne Kirk stained glass window. This is probably the prettiest church I've ever visited. Photo by **Adam Sommerville**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Kirk_stained_glass_window_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1484658.jpg

(200) **Glasgow Cathedral during the Fall.** *Glasgow Cathedral during the fall*. Warm autumn evening in Glasgow. This is a photo of listed building number 32654. Photo by **Annboeva**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Glasgow_Cathedral_during_the_fall.jpg

(201) **Lyne Kirk.** *Lyne Kirk*. Lyne Kirk, near Peebles, in the Scottish Borders. Photo by **Supergolden** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:LyneKirk.jpg

(202) **Ruins of Kelso Abbey with flowers in bloom**. *Kelso Abbey with flowers*. Photo by **Bob Lawson** (**Scotfocus** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kelso_abbey_with_flowers.jpg

(203) **Valley mist above the River Tweed.** *Valley mist above the Tweed – Geograph 6733796*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Valley_mist_above_the_Tweed_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733796.jpg

(204) **Hawthorn trees on a hill.** *Hawthorn tree on a hill – Geograph 1615852*. **Photographer's notes:** Hawthorn tree on the hill. One of a number on these slopes, all bent by the prevailing wind. At this time of year they add a distinctive touch to the scene. Photo by **Nigel Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hawthorn_tree_on_the_hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1615852.jpg

(205) **Great Hill from Torbank Hill.** *Great Hill from Torbank Hill – Geograph 1064547*. Frosted heather on Torbank Hill with the tree topped Great Hill rising above the fog filling Tweeddale. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Great_Hill_from_Torbank_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1064547.jpg

(206) **River Tweed with a light fog**. *River Tweed near Dawyck – Geograph 1574102*. Photo by **Calum McRoberts**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Tweed_near_Dawyck_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1574102.jpg

(207) **Scroggs poised to take over a field just north of Scroggs Bridge**. *Field north of Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 3542828*. Photo by **Nigel Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Field_north_of_Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3542828.jpg

(208) **Scrog Hill and Dunstanburgh Castle.** *Dunstanburgh Castle behind Scrogg Hill – Geograph 1060000*. Photo by **Nigel Chadwick**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dunstanburgh_Castle_behind_Scrogg_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1060000.jpg

(209) **Hawthorn Tree bent by the wind.** *Bent hawthorn tree at Lads Head – Geograph 7285775*. Photo by **Neil Theasby**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bent_hawthorn_tree_at_Lads_Head_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7285775.jpg

(210) **Blooming Heather (cropped).** *Blooming heather with dry stone wall – Geograph 6931550*. Photo by **Trevor Littlewood** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blooming_heather_with_dry_stone_wall_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6931550.jpg

(211) **I was a tree once**. *I was a tree once – Geograph 983732*. **Photographer's notes:** A substantial trunk remains, for a few feet. Behind the blackthorn starts to flower. Photo by **Graham Horn**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:I_was_a_tree_once_-_geograph.org.uk_-_983732.jpg

(212) **Juniper on coastal rocks.** *Juniper communis at Litlandstabben, Moskenesoya, Lofoten, Norway 205 September*. **Photographer's notes:** A low common juniper (*Juniperus communis*) at Litlandstabben on island Moskenesøya, Lofoten archipelago, Nordland, Norway in 2015 September. Litlandstabben hill is located near by village Å i Lofoten. In the background the islands belong to Værøy. The bay is Andstabbvika. Photo by **Simo Räsänen** (**Ximonic** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Juniperus_communis_at_Litlandstabben,_Moskenes%C3%B8ya,_Lofoten,_Norway,_2015_September.jpg

(213) **Rowan Tree in fabulous Autumn colors**. *Rowan tree – Geograph 1006469*. Photo by **Jackie Proven**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Rowan_tree_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1006469.jpg

(214) **Birch Forest.** *Birch forest at the Sipmolvárri in Narvik*. Photo by **Leonhard Lenz**, via Wikimedia Commons, available under Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Birch_forest_at_the_Sipmolv%C3%A1rri_in_Narvik_2022-08-21_11.jpg

(215) **Yellowhammer Singing.** *Yellowhammer*. This Yellowhammer was captured singing in a hedgerow bordering wheat fields. Photo by **Andy Morffew** (@Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://flickr.com/photos/66020093@N03/8923395365 ; *see also* https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Yellowhammer_(8923395365).jpg

(216) **Sambucus Berries (Elderberries).** *Sambucus berries*. Ripe berries on an Elder bush. Photo by **Edal Anton Lefterov**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sambucus-berries.jpg

(217) **Lyne Kirk.** *Lyne Parish Church*. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Kirk.jpg

(218) **Scottish Highlands Watermill.** *Glendale watermill / Muileann Ghleann Dail – Geograph 3955485*. Photo by **Tiger** (on Geograph), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Glendale_watermill_-_Muileann_Ghleann_Dail_(geograph_3955485).jpg

(219) **Viking Longhouse.** *Viking longhouse in Borg, Vestvågøy/Lofoten, Norway*. Reconstructed long house in the Vikingmuseum in Borg, Vestvågøy/Lofoten, Norway. Photo by **Jörg Hempel**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 Germany. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Borg_Vestv%C3%A5g%C3%B8y_LC0165.jpg

(220) **Meldon Burn and White Meldon.** *Meldon Burn and the south west flank of White Meldon – Geograph 516188*. Photo by **Keith Salvesen**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Meldon_Burn_and_the_south_west_flank_of_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_516188.jpg

(221) **View from White Meldon (cropped).** *Black Meldon from the Fort on White Meldon – Geograph 7992052*. Photo by **Iain Lees** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland),

licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Black_Meldon_from_the_Fort_on_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7992052.jpg

(222) **Penvalla.** *Penvalla – Geograph 43601.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Penvalla_-_geograph.org.uk_-_43601.jpg

(223) **Fields of King's Crown.** *Fields of King's Crown – Geograph 7534011.* Photo by **Ralph Greig**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fields_of_King%27s_Crown_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7534011.jpg

(224) **Dens of Crichie.** *Dens of Crichie – Geograph 1299804.* **Photographer's notes:** Dens of Crichie. Dens stands above fields of rape, on the slopes of the Hill of Dens. Photo by **Anne Burgess**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dens_of_Crichie_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1299804.jpg

(225) **Sign for Dens of Crichie.** *Dens of Crichie – Geograph 433029.* Photo by **Les Harvey**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dens_of_Crichie_-_geograph.org.uk_-_433029.jpg

(226) **St Machar's Cathedral in Old Aberdeen, Scotland**. *Aberdeen St Machar cathedral 01.* Photo by **Gunther Tschuch** (**PaulT** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Aberdeen_St_Machar_cathedral_01.jpg

(227) **Cairn, Torbank Hill.** *Cairn, Torbank Hill – Geograph 590679.* On the East ridge at 432 m (elevation). Photo by **Chris Eilbeck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cairn,_Torbank_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_590679.jpg

(228) **Boundary of the hill fort at Black Meldon**. *Boundary of the hill fort, Black Meldon – Geograph 5860874.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Boundary_of_the_hill_fort,_Black_Meldon_(geograph_5860874).jpg

(229) **Harehope Estate and White Meldon**. *Harehope Estate and White Meldon – Geograph 6137795.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Harehope_Estate_and_White_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137795.jpg

(230) **The A72 running beside the Lyne Water with Torbank Hill in the background**. *Beside the Lyne Water – Geograph 1065287.* Beside the Lyne Water. The A72 running beside the Lyne Water. Torbank Hill in the background. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Beside_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1065287.jpg

(231) **Stevenson Hill (west side)**. *Stevenson Hill – Geograph 6733061.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Stevenson_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733061.jpg

(232) **A Little Used Track on the west side of the Land of Scrogges**. *A little used track – Geograph 2549336.* Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC

BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_little_used_track_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2549336.jpg

(233) **View of Lyne Water Valley from summit of Black Meldon (cropped).** *Summit cairn, Black Meldon – Geograph 1939022*. Photo by **Jim Barton** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Summit_cairn,_Black_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1939022.jpg

(234) **Summit Cairn on Black Meldon**. *Summit cairn, Black Meldon – Geograph 5860995*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0, https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Summit_cairn,_Black_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5860995.jpg

(235) **Black Meldon from near the stone wall of a sheepfold.** *Black Meldon from the sheepfold – Geograph 6137104*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Black_Meldon_from_the_sheepfold_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6137104.jpg

(236) **Post Road & Drove Road.** *Post Road and Drove Road Meet – Geograph 980681*. **Photographer's notes (with clarifications from the Author in [brackets]):** Post Road and Drove Road meet. The Drove Road joins the track from the right a few yards beyond the gate. The information board shown in [Geograph photo number] 909389 is near the centre of the photograph. The hills beyond are White Meldon (left) and Black Meldon (right). Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Post_Road_and_Drove_Road_meet_-_geograph.org.uk_-_980681.jpg

(237) **View from Black Meldon Summit (cropped).** *Black Meldon – Geograph 3278032*. Photo by **Rude Health** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Black_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3278032.jpg

(238) **Track Below Black Meldon.** *Track below Black Meldon – Geograph 5861015*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Track_below_Black_Meldon_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5861015.jpg

(239) **Track to Scrogs Wood.** *Track to Scrogs Wood – Geograph 7626121*. Photo by **DS Pugh**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Track_to_Scrogs_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7626121.jpg

(240) **Scrogs Wood near Sand Hutton in North Yorkshire, England.** *Scrogs Wood – Geograph 5492614*. Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrogs_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5492614.jpg

(241) **Scrogs Wood (cropped).** *Scrogs Bottom – Geograph 6123795*. Photo by **DS Pugh** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrogs_Bottom_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6123795.jpg

(242) **Farm track into Scrogs Bottoms (cropped).** *Farm track, Scrogs Bottoms – Geograph 2372273*. Photo by **JThomas** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Farm_track,_Scrogs_Bottoms_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2372273.jpg

Part 4: The Many Faces of British Scrogs

(243) **Dunstanburgh Dawn.** *Dunstanburgh Dawn.* **Photographer's Notes:** Dunstanburgh Dawn. From Scrog Hill, a high point behind the castle, I got the angle on the sunrise I was after. The sun is just breaking over the horizon and the yellow gorse helps to balance the colours of the sunrise. Photo by **Malcolm Bawn** (malcbawn.photos on Flickr and online at https://malcbawn.photos/). Reproduced by permission of Malcolm Bawn. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/malcbawn/28424502168

(244) **Scroggs Bridge near Staveley**. *Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 257545.* **Photographer's notes:** Scroggs Bridge. Carries the Staveley to Kentmere Road over the River Kent about 1mile N of Staveley. Photo by **Alexander P Kapp**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_257545.jpg

(245) **Start of the bridleway to Scroggs Farm near Staveley, Cumbria**. *Start of the bridleway to Scroggs Farm – Geograph 5688396*. Photo by **Alec MacKinnon**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Start_of_the_bridleway_to_Scroggs_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5688396.jpg

(246) **River Kent from the bottom of Scroggs Lane, south of Helsington**. *River Kent near Scroggs Lane – Geograph 1093927*. **Photographer's notes:** View taken at the bottom of Scroggs Lane and shows the weir on the Kent and the many ducks and geese waiting to be fed. The weir was formed to provide a 'head' for the snuff mill which was water powered and closed down in the late 1970's. Kendal is well known for its snuff manufacture. Photo by **Graham Fell**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Kent_near_Scroggs_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1093927.jpg

(247) **Looking over the valley of the River Rawthey.** *Looking over the valley of the River Rawthey – Geograph 7514922.* Photo by **Graham Hogg**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Looking_over_the_valley_of_the_River_Rawthey_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7514922.jpg

(248) **Cockden Bridge, Lancashire**. *Cockden Bridge – Geograph 675074.* **Photographer's notes:** Thursden Brook becomes the River Don at Cockden Bridge and runs through Scrogg's Wood near Heasandford, flowing into the River Brun at Netherwood Bridge. Photo by **Kevin Rushton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cockden_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_675074.jpg

(249) **Track into Wauldby Scrogs**. *The track down to Wauldby Scrogs – Geograph 565056*. The track down to Wauldby Scrogs, Wauldby, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Photo by **Andy Beecroft**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_track_down_to_Wauldby_Scrogs_-_geograph.org.uk_-_565056.jpg

(250) **Scrog Wood, near Hutton Hang**. *Scrog Wood – Geograph 6488114.* Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6488114.jpg

(251) **Long Tongue Scrog Lane**. *Long Tongue Scrog Lane, Houses Hill – Geograph 901947.* **Photographer's Notes:** As you can see the path is now edged by bushes and trees so this is probably how the name Scrog

came to be used, one definition I came across used in the North of England and Scotland was that Scrog is any natural stunted tree or bush don't know about the Long Tongue part though. I also see that the path has been cobbled at some time in the past so must have been used extensively as there was Levi's Mill just across the fields at Gawthorpe Green. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Houses_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901947.jpg

(252) **The Scrog near Castleside**. Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(253) **Scrog Hill near Stanhope in County Durham, northeast England.** *Scrog Hill – Geograph 6237279*. Photo by **Mike Quinn**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6237279.jpg

(254) **The River Kent running through Kendal in Cumbria, northwest England (cropped).** *River Kent in Kendal (6942)*. Photo by **Nilfanion** (on Wikimedia Commons & English Wikipedia) (photo cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Kent_in_Kendal_(6942).jpg

(255) **Relief Location Map of England in the United Kingdom (with annotations by the Author)**. Relief Map by **Nilfanion** (on Wikimedia Commons & English Wikipedia) (annotations to the map by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:England_relief_location_map.jpg

(256) **View towards Staveley and Scroggs Wood.** *From the flanks of Brunt Knott – Geograph 193693*. Photo by **Ron Shirt**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:From_the_flanks_of_Brunt_Knott_-_geograph.org.uk_-_193693.jpg

(257) **Eastern Edge of Scroggs Wood.** *Wall above Hall Beck – Geograph 2075525*. Photo by **Derek Harper**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wall_above_Hall_Beck_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2075525.jpg

(258) **Southeastern Edge of Scroggs Wood near Staveley.** *Fields west of Hall Lane – Geograph 3542681*. Photo by **Nigel Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fields_west_of_Hall_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3542681.jpg

(259) **View up the Kent Valley with Scroggs Wood.** *View up the Kent valley – Geograph 7294279*. Photo by **Mick Garratt**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_up_the_Kent_valley_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7294279.jpg

(260) **Scroggs Bridge.** *Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 8131375*. Photo by **Peter McDermott**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_8131375.jpg

(261) **Scroggs Bridge near Staveley on map of the county of Westmoreland by Thomas Jefferys (Annotated).** "The county of Westmoreland, 1770y" by **Thomas Jefferys** (annotated by the Author). Public Domain. Image courtesy of the National Library of Scotland, available at https://maps.nls.uk/joins/10472.html (bottom left quadrant of the 4 sub-maps)

(262) **The River Kent from Scroggs Bridge.** *The River Kent above Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 3542120*. Photo by **Nigel Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_River_Kent_above_Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3542120.jpg

(263) **Scroggs Bridge (south side).** *Scroggs Bridge over the Kent River – Geograph 5414627*. Photo by **Russel Wills**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bridge_over_the_Kent_River_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5414627.jpg

(264) **Scroggs Bridge (west side).** *Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 3132599*. Photo by **Mark Anderson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3132599.jpg

(265) **Scroggs Bridge (east side).** *Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 5455610*. Photo by **Andrew Abbott**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5455610.jpg

(266) **Field North of Scroggs Bridge.** *Field north of Scroggs Bridge – Geograph 3542828*. Photo by **Nigel Brown**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Field_north_of_Scroggs_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3542828.jpg

(267) **Scroggs Cleuch.** *Scroggs Cleuch – Geograph 4720490*. Photo by **Jonathan Thacker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Cleuch_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4720490.jpg

(268) **"View of Scrogg's Farm, Staveley" (1870)**, an oil painting by **William Taylor Longmire** (1841-1914). Public Domain. Image courtesy of the **UK National Trust** (The National Trust for Places of Historic Interest or Natural Beauty), via Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:William_Taylor_Longmire_(1841-1914)_-_View_of_Scrogg%27s_Farm,_Staveley_-_478852_-_National_Trust.jpg

(269) **Scroggs Farm Gate.** *Gate near Scroggs Farm, lower Kentmere – Geograph 3254668*. Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gate_near_Scroggs_Farm,_lower_Kentmere_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3254668.jpg

(270) **Sheep at Scroggs Farm.** *Sheep at Scroggs Farm, lower Kentmere – Geograph 3255022*. Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sheep_at_Scroggs_Farm,_lower_Kentmere_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3255022.jpg

(271) **Scroggs Farm.** *Scroggs Farm – Geograph 5455613*. Scroggs Farm. Farm, Over Staveley. Photo by **Andrew Abbott**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5455613.jpg

(272) **View towards Staveley.** *Looking down on the village of Staveley – Geograph 3673741*. Photo by **Peter S**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Looking_down_on_the_village_of_Staveley_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3673741.jpg

(273) **Old Tires at the edge of Scroggs Wood.** *Old tyres – Geograph 5455612*. Photo by **Andrew Abbott**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Old_tyres_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5455612.jpg

(274) **View from Hall Lane.** *Hall Beck from Hall Lane – Geograph 2075536*. Photo by **Derek Harper**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hall_Beck_from_Hall_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2075536.jpg

(275) **Scroggs Lane near Staveley in May.** *screensaver sr 2005 (18)*. Photo taken on 14 May 2005. Photo by **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/). Reproduced by permission of Annie-Sue Jyelra. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/6310634492

(276) **Sunrise breaking through the mist over Scroggs Wood from a frosty Scroggs Lane.** *Scroggs Lane*. Photo taken on 28 Feb 2017. Photo by **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/). Reproduced by permission of Annie-Sue Jyelra. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/33107572972

(277) **Scroggs Lane near Staveley.** *scroggs lane*. Photo taken on 1 May 2010. Photo by **Annie-Sue Jyelra** (@Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/). Reproduced by permission of Annie-Sue Jyelra. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/6322085044

(278) **Looking Down on Staveley.** *Looking down on Staveley – Geograph 5342433*. Photo by **David Purchase**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Looking_down_on_Staveley_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5342433.jpg

(279) **Reston Scar Panorama.** *Reston Scar above Staveley from across the valley*. **Photographer's note:** A panorama of Reston Scar, with the village of Staveley at its foot, seen from across the valley. Photo by **David Edgar**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Reston_Scar_above_Staveley_from_across_the_valley.JPG

(280) **Scroggs Lane through Scroggs Wood.** *Lane through Scroggs Wood – Geograph 3804429*. Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lane_through_Scroggs_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3804429.jpg

(281) **Alder Trees.** *Alders (Alnus) along it Prinses Margriet Canal*. Photo by **Agnes Monkelbaan**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Elzen_(Alnus)_langs_het_Prinses_Margrietkanaal_17-01-2023_(actm.)_01.jpg

(282) **Goat Willow (*Salix caprea*).** *Poertschach Halbinselpromenade Uferzone mit Salix capre a und Schilfrohr 21012016 0256*. Willow (salix caprea) by the waterline of Lake Woerth on peninsula promenade, municipality Pörtschach am Wörthersee, district Klagenfurt Land, Carinthia, Austria, EU. Photo by **Johann Jaritz**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Poertschach_Halbinselpromenade_Uferzone_mit_Salix_caprea_und_Schilfrohr_21012016_0256.jpg

(283) **Scroggs Wood by River Kent.** *River Kent by Scroggs Wood – Geograph 3866500*. Photo by **Bill Boaden**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Kent_by_Scroggs_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3866500.jpg

(284) **Yellow star-of-Bethlehem (*Gagea lutea*).** *Gagea lutea kz01*. Gagea lutea in Stefan Żeromski Park in Szczecin, NW Poland. Photo by **Krzysztof Ziarnek** (**Kenraiz** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia

Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gagea_lutea_kz01.jpg

(285) **Scroggs Wood Sunset.** *20/365 – Scroggs Wood Sunset*. From **Photographer's Notes (with omissions by the Author marked in ellipses "…"):** "Sometimes it's good to go all out! I was chatting to a guy who was out with his dog whilst photographing this scene, we both agreed how unreal it looked. In fact, I've desaturated this, the actual sky was such an unnatural colour! … there is a wire fence that runs right along the top of this wall and went into the horizon which I removed. …". Photo by **Richard Berry** (reel things film & photography, https://www.reelthings.co.uk/). Reproduced by permission of Richard Berry. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/richardmberry/8136357450

(286) **Helsington: Countryside Scenery.** *Helsington: Countryside Scenery – Geograph 6307776*. Photo by **Lewis Clarke**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Helsington_,_Countryside_Scenery_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6307776.jpg

(287) **Scroggs Weir.** *Scroggs Weir – Geograph 1195972*. **Photographer's notes:** The first obstacle on a descent of the River Kent from Kendal is Scroggs Weir at Helsington. Even when there is enough water to make the rest of the river a pleasant trip, this weir is wide that the water is shallow and a slide down the face of the weir is a bumpy experience. The water is deepest at the far left, but awkward rocks lie in wait below. Photo by **Andy Waddington**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Weir_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1195972.jpg

(288) **Helsington Barrows.** *Helsington Barrows – Geograph 2037786*. Photo by **Mick Garratt**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Helsington_Barrows_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2037786.jpg

(289) **Rawthey Valley east of Sedbergh.** *Rawthey Valley E of Sedbergh – Geograph 1128651*. Rawthey Valley E of Sedbergh. View from Crook in the Howgills. Pasture land in foreground with moorland and Garsdale and Dent Valleys in the background. Photo by **Paula Healey**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Rawthey_Valley_E_of_Sedbergh_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1128651.jpg

(290) **House at Scrogg House Farm.** *Scrogg House – Geograph 1885946*. Photo by **Roger Templeman**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrogg_House_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1885946.jpg

(291) **Barn at Scrogg House Farm.** *Barn beside A683 at Scrogg House – Geograph 4192890*. Photo by **Roger Templeman**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Barn_beside_A683_at_Scrogg_House_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4192890.jpg

(292) **River Rawthey.** *River Rawthey – Geograph 7133692*. Photo by **Trevor Littlewood**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Rawthey_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7133692.jpg

(293) **The River Rawthey & Howgill Fells.** *The River Rawthey – Geograph 5317670*. Photo by **Steven Ruffles**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_River_Rawthey._-_geograph.org.uk_-_5317670.jpg

(294) **Bowderdale in the Howgill Fells.** *Bowderdale in the Howgill Fells*. **Photographer's note:** Looking due north up Bowderdale, a fine glacial valley in the Howgill Fells, Cumbria. Photo by **Peer Lawther**

(**walkinguphills** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bowderdale_in_the_Howgill_Fells_(6073968037).jpg ; *see also* https://flickr.com/photos/99917955@N00/6073968037

(295) **Buckbank Lane.** *Buckbank Lane – Geograph 2512862.* **Photographers' notes:** The white house is Ellerthwaite and the surfaced lane leads to Thursgill then on to Fawcett Bank as a rough track. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/2512862. Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Buckbank_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2512862.jpg

(296) **The Howgill Fells in July.** *The Howgill Fells – Geograph 3849560.* Photo by **Jeff Buck**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3849560.jpg

(297) **The Howgill Fells: Summer Dream (cropped).** *Howgill Fells – Geograph 7826904.* Photo by **Peter McDermott** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7826904.jpg

(298) **The Heather & the Howgill Fells.** *Howgill Fells – Flicker – Robert J Heath.* Photo by **Robert J Heath** (@Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Howgill_Fells_-_Flickr_-_Robert_J_Heath.jpg *see also Howgill Fells.* https://flickr.com/photos/67769979@N06/49842671816

(299) **Swaledale Sheep and the Howgill Fells.** *Swaledale sheep and the Howgill Fells – Geograph 2773054.* Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Swaledale_sheep_and_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2773054.jpg

(300) **Horses among the Howgill Fells.** *Horses and the Howgill Fells – Geograph 2682405.* Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Horses_and_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2682405.jpg

(301) **The Howgill Fells in October.** *Howgill Fells – Geograph 7909459.* Photo by **Peter McDermott**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7909459.jpg

(302) **The Howgill Flanks, like a Slumbering Dinosaur.** *Howgill flanks – Geograph 1624992.* **Photographer's note:** I often think the Howgills resemble a slumbering dinosaur, and this shot reinforces that impression. Photo by **Bill Boaden**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Howgill_flanks_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1624992.jpg

(303) **Dark Skies over the Howgill Fells.** *Dark skies over the Howgill Fells – Geograph 2615416.* Photo by **Andrew Curtis**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dark_skies_over_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2615416.jpg

(304) **Snow-covered Howgill Fells over the Lune Valley.** *The Lune Valley under the Howgill Fells – Geograph 4281276.* Photo by **M J Richardson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Lune_Valley_under_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4281276.jpg

(305) **Overlooking Langdale, Howgill Fells.** *Overlooking Landale, Howgill Fells – Geograph 3381857.* Photo by **Karl and Ali**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Overlooking_Langdale,_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3381857.jpg

(306) **Snow-capped Howgill Fells.** *The Howgill Fells – Geograph 768311.* **Photographer's note:** The picture was taken from Green Lane (no so green any more, due to misuse by the off-road brigade), above Dent. Photo by **Gordon Mabson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_768311.jpg

(307) **View towards the Howgill Fells.** *View towards the Howgill Fells – Geograph 7384074.* Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_towards_the_Howgill_Fells_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7384074.jpg

(308) **Langdale in the Howgills.** *Langdale in the Howgills.* **Photographer's notes:** Not that Langdale, but the one in the Howgills, stretching down from Windscarth Wyke. Not a great resolution - had to crop it quite a bit. Photo by **Peer Lawther** (**walkinguphills** on Flickr), via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Langdale_in_the_Howgills_(6074434148).jpg *see also Langdale in the Howgills* https://flickr.com/photos/99917955@N00/6074434148

(309) **Roadside Viewpoint Marker near the Howsgill Fells.** *Howgill Fell – Geograph 3172204.* Photo by **Sheena Pawson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Howgill_Fell_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3172204.jpg

(310) **Tawny Owl (*Strix aluco*).** *Strix aluco (Linnaeus, 1758).* Tawny Owl in the Luneburg Heath Wildlife Park near Nindorf, Hanstedt, Germany. Photo by **Michael Gäbler**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Strix_aluco_(Linnaeus,_1758).jpg

(311) **Woodland in Scroggs Wood (January).** *Woodland in Scrogg's Wood – Geograph 7070630.* Photo by **Bill Boaden**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Woodland_in_Scrogg%27s_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7070630.jpg

(312) **In Scroggs Wood (June).** *In Scroggs Wood – Geograph 4980605.* Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:In_Scroggs_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4980605.jpg

(313) **Scroggs Wood on the edge.** *Heasandford Industrial Estate – Geograph 1220735.* Photo by **Kevin Rushton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0 https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Heasandford_Industrial_Estate_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1220735.jpg

(314) **Footpath between Industrial Estate and Scroggs Wood.** *Footpath leading towards Widow Hill Road – Geograph 4980612.* Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Footpath_leading_towards_Widow_Hill_Road_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4980612.jpg

(315) **Footbridge across the River Don, at the edge of Scroggs Wood.** *Footbridge across the River Don – Geograph 7070721.* Photo by **Bill Boaden**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Footbridge_across_the_River_Don_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7070721.jpg

(316) **The River Don Passing Cockden Bridge.** *River Don – Geograph 772094*. River Don: As it passes under Cockden Bridge. Photo by **Alexander P Kapp**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Don_-_geograph.org.uk_-_772094.jpg

(317) **Confluence of the River Don and the River Brun.** *Confluence of the Rivers Don and Brun – Geograph 7069888*. Photo by **Bill Boaden**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Confluence_of_the_Rivers_Don_and_Brun_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7069888.jpg

(318) **The River Brun.** *The River Brun – Geograph 4972167*. Photo by **Ian Greig**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_River_Brun_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4972167.jpg

(319) **Netherwood Farm.** *Netherwood Farm – Geograph 1220696*. Photo by **Kevin Rushton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Netherwood_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1220696.jpg

(320) **Farm Track through the edge of Scroggs Wood.** Photo by **Barry Noon**. Reproduced by permission of Barry Noon. All rights reserved. This photo is not to be used for any commercial venture. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/highnoon2012/54015176186 .

(321) **Scroggs Wood in Late October.** Photo by **Barry Noon**. Reproduced by permission of Barry Noon. All rights reserved. This photo is not to be used for any commercial venture. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/highnoon2012/54864417654

(322) **Entrance Sign for Nut Wood and Wauldby Scrogs.** *Entrance to Nut Wood and Wauldby Scrogs – Geograph 7756522*. Photo by **Marathon**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Entrance_to_Nut_Wood_and_Wauldby_Scrogs_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7756522.jpg

(323) **Constantine Wood in front, with Nut Wood behind it.** *Decision time – Geograph 1368219*. **Photographer's notes: English:** Raywell, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Decision time! The photo shows the paths leading around Constantine Wood (in the foreground) and Nut Wood (in the background), a popular circular walk. Photo by **Dr. Patty McAlpin**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Decision_time%5E_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1368219.jpg

(324) **Nut Wood.** *Nutwood, Raywell*. Nutwood, Raywell, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (@Panoramio), via Wikimedia Commons (through Panoramio), licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nutwood,_Raywell_-_panoramio_(2).jpg

(325) **Bluebells and Garlic Blossoms in Nut Wood.** *Bluebells and Wild Garlic – Geograph 1285306*. **Photographer's notes:** Bluebells and Wild Garlic, Wauldby, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. For a short period just before the leaf cover blocks the sunshine, these woods are carpeted with flowers, mainly the aromatic garlic and widespread bluebells, but also stitchwort, red campion, celandine, and the inevitable dandelion. Photo by **Peter Church**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bluebells_and_Wild_Garlic_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1285306.jpg

(326) **Wauldby Scrogs.** *Wauldby Scrogs and Nut Wood – Geograph 790967*. **Photographer's notes (with edits by the Author in [brackets] & omissions by the Author in ellipses "…"):** The definition of "Wauldby Scrogs" is unclear from the maps. One the best O.S. maps it seems to refer to the area in the photograph, but in other maps it could be the western end of the wood, and in another the farmland to the south of the wood. However, as "Scrogs" refers to stunted trees and bushes (see …[web link omitted – no longer active]…) the best guess is that Wouldby Scrogs are the trees and bushes in the photograph. The wood is approximately 800 metres long and about 300 metres wide at the widest point. Between the advent of spring and the trees putting out their full leaf cover, the floor of the wood is a riot of bluebells, wood anemones, wild garlic, and so forth. The birds (finches) claim their territory with much song. The woods are mixed beech, ash and sycamore, with no invasive foreign species. The eastern end of the wood is labelled "Constantine Wood" on the maps. There is tell of a resident deer. Photo by **Peter Church**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Irelands), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wauldby_Scrogs_and_Nut_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_790967.jpg

(327) **Skirting Wauldby Scrogs.** *Skirting Nut Wood – Geograph 1368496*. Skirting Nut Wood, Wauldby, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Looking back along the shaded path from Wauldby Scrogs, as it skirts the edge of Nut Wood, a popular route for walkers. Photo by **Dr. Patty McAlpin**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Skirting_Nut_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1368496.jpg

(328) **Wauldby Green and Braffords Clump.** *Wauldby Green – Geograph 1368614*. Photo by **Dr. Patty McAlpin**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wauldby_Green_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1368614.jpg

(329) **Tree arch over the bridleway near Wauldby Scrogs.** *Tree arch over the bridleway near Wauldby Scrogs – Geograph 4860887*. Photo by **Chris**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tree_arch_over_the_bridleway_near_Wauldby_Scrogs_(geograph_4860887).jpg#

(330) **Where Field Meets Wauldby Scrogs** *Nutt Wood – Wauldby Scrogs IMG_8697*. Photo taken on 19 Nov 2011. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (oddlegs on Flickr). Reproduced by permission of Paul Lakin. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/oddlegs/6368060477

(331) **Autumn at Wauldby Scrogs**. *Wauldby Scrogs IMG_2862*. Photo taken on 8 Nov 2017. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (oddlegs on Flickr). Reproduced by permission of Paul Lakin. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/oddlegs/24410540988

(332) **Wauldby Scrogs: Family Portrait (Annotated).** *Wauldby Scrogs IMG_2862*. Photo taken on 8 Nov 2017. Original photo by **Paul Lakin** (oddlegs on Flickr). Annotations by the Author. Photo reproduced by permission of Paul Lakin. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/oddlegs/24410540988

(333) **East side of Wauldby Scrogs & West side of Nut Wood.** *Nutwood_IMG_9083*. Nutwood, Wauldby, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Photo dated 21 Dec 2015. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (@Panoramio), via Wikimedia Commons (through Panoramio), licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nutwood_IMG_9083_-_panoramio.jpg

(334) **The Light of Nut Wood.** *Nutwood, Raywell.* Nutwood, Raywell, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. Photo dated 19 Nov 2011. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (@Panoramio), via Wikimedia Commons (through Panoramio),

licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nutwood,_Raywell_-_panoramio_(3).jpg

(335) **Wild Garlic in Nut Wood (cropped).** *Wild garlic in Nut Wood – Geograph 7756545.* Photo by **Marathon** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wild_garlic_in_Nut_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7756545.jpg

(336) **Bluebells in Nut Wood.** *Bluebells in Nut Wood, Raywell – Geograph 2930943.* Photo by **Paul Harrop**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bluebells_in_Nut_Wood,_Raywell_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2930943.jpg

(337) **Snails on Ash tree, Nut Wood.** *Snails in the trees – Geograph 1285334.* **Photographer's notes:** Snails in the trees. Wauldby, East Riding of Yorkshire, England. The snails seemed to love the trunks of ash and beech ascending to about 3 metres and often in pairs. Photo by **Peter Church**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Snails_in_the_trees_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1285334.jpg

(338) **Blackthorn Light through Nut Wood into Wauldby Scrogs.** Photo taken on 19 Nov 2011. Photo by **Paul Lakin** (oddlegs on Flickr). Reproduced by permission of Paul Lakin. All rights reserved. Flickr: https://www.flickr.com/photos/oddlegs/6368062221

(339) **A Bird's Eye View with Braffords Farm, Raywell, Nut Wood, Wauldby Scrogs, & Constantine Wood.** *Raywell and Braffords Farm: aerial 2024 – Geograph 7845430.* Photo by **Chris**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Raywell_and_Braffords_Farm,_aerial_2024_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7845430.jpg

(340) **Scrog Wood (early March).** *Scrog Wood – Geograph 6093229.* Photo by **Christine Johnstone**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6093229.jpg

(341) **Scrog Wood (late May).** *Scrog Wood – Geograph 4487225.* Photo by **Tony Simms**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Wood_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4487225.jpg

(342) **Farm Road to Scrogg House Farm, running right by Scrog Wood.** *Farm road and footpath to Scrogg Farm – Geograph 6423485.* Photo by **Gordon Hatton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Farm_road_and_footpath_to_Scrogg_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6423485.jpg

(343) **Hedged fields near Scrogg House Farm.** *Hedged fields, near Scrogg House Farm – Geograph 6093233.* Photo by **Christine Johnstone**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hedged_fields,_near_Scrogg_House_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6093233.jpg

(344) **Scrogg House Farm.** *Scrogg House Farm – Geograph 6488100.* Photo by **Chris Heaton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrogg_House_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6488100.jpg

(345) **Scroggs Farm.** *Scroggs Farm – Geograph 4484007*. Photo by **Tony Simms**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scroggs_Farm_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4484007.jpg

(346) **Long Scrog Tongue Lane (with sign).** *Long Scrog Tongue Lane – Geograph 349343*. **Photographer's note:** Long Tongue Scrog Lane possibly the strangest name for a lane. Photo by **Nigel Homer**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_349343.jpg

(347) **Paved walking path along Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Paved section of Long Tongue Scrog Lane – Geograph 3831345*. Photo by **John Slater**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Paved_section_of_Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3831345.jpg

(348) **Long Tongue Scrog Lane at Lane Side.** *Long Tongue Scrog Lane at Lane Side, Kirkheaton – Geograph 6766179*. Photo by **Humphrey Bolton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane_at_Lane_Side,_Kirkheaton_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6766179.jpg

(349) **Sign: Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Strange Road Name*. **Photographer's notes:** Long Tongue Scrog Lane. "Scrog is a dialect word meaning scrubby - the lane is Scrog Lane, but it runs along a narrow field which looks like a long tongue!" Photo by **Tony Hisgett** (**ahisgett** on Flickr), via Flickr, licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://www.flickr.com/photos/hisgett/36043287191

(350) **Satellite Image: Overhead View of Long Tongue Scrog Lane** (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(351) **Satellite Image (Annotated): Long Tongue Scrog Lane** (with annotations and labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(352) **Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Long Tongue Scrog Lane, Kirkheaton – Geograph 6766456*. Photo by **Humphrey Bolton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Kirkheaton_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6766456.jpg

(353) **Long Tongue Scrog Lane (with recent hedgerow planting).** *Recently planted hedge alongside Long Tongue Scrog Lane, Kirkheaton – Geograph 676277*. Photo by **Humphrey Bolton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Recently_planted_hedge_alongside_Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Kirkheaton_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6766277.jpg

(354) **Footpath off of Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Footpath off Long Tongue Scrog Lane, Kirkheaton – Geograph 6766259*. Photo by **Humphrey Bolton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Footpath_off_Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Kirkheaton_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6766259.jpg

(355) **Stile on the path off of Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *A stile on the path from Long Tongue Scrog Lane to Lane Side Lane (KIR/23/30), Kirkheaton – Geograph 8295700*. Photo by **habiloid**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8295700

(356) **Another stile on the path off of Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *A stile on the path from Long Tongue Scrog Lane to Lane Side Lane (KIR/23/30), Kirkheaton – Geograph 8295702*. Photo by **habiloid**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8295702

(357) **View from Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *A view from Long Tongue Scrog Lane (KIR/220/30), Kirkheaton – Geograph 8295699*. Photo by **habiloid**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8295699

(358) **South Royd: When the House was Standing.** *South Royd – Geograph 901974*. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:South_Royd_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901974.jpg

(359) **Ruins of South Royd House: not everything survives.** Image ©2026 **Google**; accessed via Google Earth (imagery dated 8 Apr 2025). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(360) **Long Tongue Lane, between South Royd & Houses Hill.** *Long Tongue Scrog Lane, Houses Hill – Geograph 901947*. **Photographer's notes:** As you can see the path is now edged by bushes and trees so this is probably how the name Scrog came to be used, one definition I came across used in the North of England and Scotland was that Scrog is any natural stunted tree or bush don't know about the Long Tongue part though. I also see that the path has been cobbled at some time in the past so must have been used extensively as there was Levi's Mill just across the fields at Gawthorpe Green. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Long_Tongue_Scrog_Lane,_Houses_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901947.jpg

(361) **Royd, on Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Royd, Houses Hill – Geograph 901878*. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Royd,_Houses_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901878.jpg

(362) **Maple Farm on Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Maple Farm, Houses Hill – Geograph 901860*. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Maple_Farm,_Houses_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901860.jpg

(363) **East End of Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *Houses Hill – Geograph 901269*. Looking back to Houses Hill from Longue Tongue Scrog Lane. Photo by **Stanley Walker**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Houses_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_901269.jpg

(364) **Houses Hill on Healey Green Lane.** *Healey Green Lane, Houses Hill – Geograph 8297361*. Photo by **habiloid**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8297361

(365) **View towards Castle Hill from hilltop above Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *View towards Castle Hill – Geograph 7149012*. Photo by **Stephen Craven**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_towards_Castle_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7149012.jpg

(366) **Gate on the track from Carr Mount to Long Tongue Scrog Lane.** *A gate by the track from Carr Mount to Long Tongue Scrog Lane (KIR/169/10), Kirkheaton – Geograph 8295695*. Photo by **habiloid**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8295695

(367) **The Scrog near Castleside.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(368) **Cattle grazing in a wood pasture.** *Herbstein Lanzenhain Wood Pasture Cattle 2022 SW*. Pasture with Cattle in Lanzenhain, Hesse, Germany. Photo by **UuMUfQ** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Herbstein_Lanzenhain_Wood_Pasture_Cattle_2022_SW.png

(369) **Wood Pasture in St. Helen's Park.** *Wood pasture in St Helen's Park – Geograph 5350915*. Photo by **Patrick Roper**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wood_pasture_in_St_Helen%27s_Park_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5350915.jpg

(370) **Evening at The Scrog.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(371) **Rock & Fallen Limb among Veteran Oaks.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(372) **Veteran oaks rise above mossy stones and fallen deadwood.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(373) **Veteran Survivor of The Scrog.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society.** Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

(374) **Hisehope Burn in its Wooded Valley.** *Hisehope Burn upstream from Hisehope Bridge – Geograph 8306871*. Photo by **Mike Quinn**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8306871

(375) **River Derwent, Muggleswick.** *River Derwent at Lead Mill, Muggleswick – Geograph 5245353*. Photo by **Alan Murray-Rust**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:River_Derwent_at_Lead_Mill,_Muggleswick_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5245353.jpg

(376) **Satellite View of Derwent Gorge Area (annotated).** Image ©2026 **Google** (annotated by the Author); map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(377) **Oblique Satellite View of The Scrog** (with a pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(378) **Overhead Satellite View of The Scrog** (with pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2025 **Airbus** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(379) **The River Derwent in a small rocky gorge at Shotley Grove.** *The River Derwent in a small rocky gorge at Shotley Grove – Geograph 6831717*. **Author's Note:** the site of this photo is about 3.7 miles (6 km) northeast of The Scrog. Photo by **Clive Nicholson**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_River_Derwent_in_a_small_rocky_gorge_at_Shotley_Grove_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6831717.jpg

(380) **Ruins of West Goldhill (cropped).** *Ruins of West Goldhill – Geograph 4039914.* Photo by **Robert Graham** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ruins_of_West_Goldhill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4039914.jpg

(381) **North of The Scrog.** *Farmland east of Goldhill Lane – Geograph 8306870.* Photo by **Mike Quinn**, via Geograph Britain and Ireland, licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8306870

(382) **Northwest of The Scrog (cropped).** *View west from Goldhill Lane – Geograph 4033885.* Photo by **Robert Graham** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_west_from_Goldhill_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4033885.jpg

(383) **Southwest of The Scrog.** *Looking west from Goldhill Lane – Geograph 4033901.* Photo by **Robert Graham**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Looking_west_from_Goldhill_Lane_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4033901.jpg

(384) **Birkhott Waterfall, Hisehope Burn.** *Waterfall on Hisehope Burn – Geograph 8099014.* Photo by **Mike Quinn**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Waterfall_on_Hisehope_Burn_-_geograph.org.uk_-_8099014.jpg

(385) **View over Horsleyhope.** *View over Horsleyhope – Geograph 5642065.* Photo by **Mick Garratt**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_over_Horsleyhope_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5642065.jpg

(386) **Southeast of The Scrog: view across Horsleyhope Burn & Woods to the Horsleyhope Farms (cropped).** *View across to the Horsleyhopes – Geograph 8078738.* **Photographer's notes:** Looking across the valley from Healeyfield Lane to Middle and High Horsleyhope farms. To the right of these, on the horizon, is Goldhill farm. The woods in the foreground are along Horsleyhope Burn. https://www.geograph.org.uk/photo/8078738 Photo by **Robert Graham** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_across_to_the_Horsleyhopes_-_geograph.org.uk_-_8078738.jpg

(387) **Southeast of The Scrog: View over Horsleyhope.** *View of the Horsleyhopes – Geograph 4039889.* Photo by **Robert Graham**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:View_of_the_Horsleyhopes_-_geograph.org.uk_-_4039889.jpg

(388) **Across the Hisehope Burn Valley (cropped).** *Across valley of Hisehope Burn – Geograph 5199949.* Photo by **Trevor Littlewood** (cropped by the Author), via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Across_valley_of_Hisehope_Burn_-_geograph.org.uk_-_5199949.jpg

(389) **Sunset at The Scrog.** Photo by **Alan Draffan** of the **Consett & District Photographic Society**. Reproduced by permission of Alan Draffan. All rights reserved.

Part 5: Scroggs Around the World

(390) **New Zealand: View of the Taieri Plain, Scroggs Hill, and Pacific Ocean.** *Taieri Plain, Otago, New Zealand, June 2009*. Photo by **Phillip Capper** (**PhillipC** on Flickr) from Wellington, New Zealand, via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), licensed under CC BY 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Taieri_Plain,_Otago,_New_Zealand,_June_2009.jpg *see also Strath Taieri, Otago, New Zealand, June 2009* https://www.flickr.com/photos/42033648@N00/3597799593

(391) **Satellite oblique view of Scroggs Hill in New Zealand (1)** (with labeled pins added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2008-2026 **Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(392) **Satellite oblique view of Scroggs Hill in New Zealand (2)** (with labeled pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2008-2026 **Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(393) **Satellite oblique view of Scroggs Hill in New Zealand (3)** (with labeled pin added by the Author). Image ©2026 **Google**; map data ©2008-2026 **Google; Vexcel Imaging US, Inc.; Airbus; and Data SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO** (accessed via Google Earth). Reproduced in accordance with Google Earth image use guidelines: https://about.google/brand-resource-center/products-and-services/geo-guidelines/

(394) **Flowering Mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*).** *Leptospermum scoparium – Manuka bush flowers*. Manuka bush flowers, Silver Peaks, Dunedin, Otago, New Zealand. Photo by **Tomas Sobek**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Leptospermum_scoparium_-_Manuka_bush_flowers.jpg

(395) **Kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*) aka White Tea-Tree.** *Kunzea ericoides 63127649*. Photo by **coenobita** (on iNaturalist), via Wikimedia Commons (through iNaturalist), licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kunzea_ericoides_63127649.jpg

(396) **Thorns and Blooms on a Matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*).** *Matagouri (Discaria toumatou) in flower (close up)*. Photo by **Kimberley Collins**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Matagouri_(Discaria_toumatou)_in_flower_(close_up).jpg

(397) **Matagouri forest.** *Matagouri forest, Anti Crow Hut track, Arthur's Pass, Canterbury, New Zealand*. Matagouri forest, Anti Crow Hut track, Arthur's Pass, Canterbury, New Zealand. Photo by **Michal Klajban**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Matagouri_forest,_Anti_Crow_Hut_track,_Arthur%27s_Pass,_Canterbury,_New_Zealand_10.jpg

(398) **Leaf buds on a prickly Mingimingi.** *Breaking leaf buds on a prickly mingimingi, Kauri Point Centennial Park*. Breaking leaf buds on a prickly mingimingi (*Leptecophylla juniperina*). Kauri Point Centennial Park, Auckland, New Zealand. Photo by **B. Jankuloski** (**Bjankuloski06** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Breaking_leaf_buds_on_prickly_mingimingi,_Kauri_Point_Centennial_Park.jpg

(399) **New Zealand Sheep Farm.** *New Zealand Sheep Farm*. Sheep being farmed in Queenstown New Zealand. Photo by **Cbrann** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:New_Zealand_Sheep_Farm.jpg

(400) **The far hills of Otago, New Zealand.** *The far hills. Otago.* **Photographer's notes:** Otago is a region of New Zealand in the south of the South Island administered by the Otago Regional Council. It has an area of approximately 32,000 square kilometres (12,000 sq mi), making it the country's third largest local government region. Its population was 215,100 in the June 2015 estimate. Photo by **Bernard Spragg** (**Bernard Spragg. NZ** on Flickr) from Christchurch, New Zealand. Image via Wikimedia Commons (through Flickr), available under cc-zero, the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_far_hills._Otago._(23828551393).jpg ; *see also* https://flickr.com/photos/88123769@N02/23828551393

(401) **Panorama of Brighton, New Zealand.** *Panorama of Brighton, New Zealand.* **Photographer's note:** The coast road between Brighton (left) and Ocean View (right). Photo by **Grutness** (on English Wikipedia & Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Panorama_of_Brighton,_New_Zealand.jpg

(402) **City of Dunedin after Sunset, from Signal Hill.** *Dunedin city after sunset from Signal Hill.* **Photographer's notes:** Dunedin city after sunset from Signal Hill, Otago Harbour on the left, Saddle Hill in the distance on the right. Photo by **Pseudopanax** at **English Wikipedia**, via Wikimedia Commons, released into Public Domain by its creator and owner. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dunedin_city_after_sunset_from_Signal_Hill.jpg

(403) **Saddle Hill, east of Scroggs Hill.** *Saddle Hill, Dunedin, NZ.* **Photographer's note:** Saddle Hill, New Zealand, viewed from the Taieri Plains, query Mosgiel-Outram Road. Photo by **Benchill** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saddle_Hill,_Dunedin,_NZ.JPG

(404) **Saddle Hill on a frosty morning.** *2 6 2010 saddlehillfrosty.* **Photographer's notes:** Saddle Hill in heavy frost, viewed from Wingatui Road, Mosgiel, New Zealand. Photo by **Daharja** (on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2_6_2010_saddlehillfrosty.jpg

(405) **Tī koūka Cabbage tree at sunset on Otago Peninsula near Ōtepoti (Dunedin).** *Otago tī kouka31.* **Photographer's notes:** Tī koūka Cabbage tree on Otago Peninsula near Ōtepoti Dunedin. Photo by **Ray O'Brien**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Otago_t%C4%AB_ko%C5%ABka31.jpg

(406) **Otago Harbour, view towards Aramoana & Pacific Ocean.** *Otago Harbour towards Aramoana.* **Photographer's notes:** Otago Harbour towards Aramoana, and Otago Peninsula on the right towards Taiaroa Head. Photo by **Pseudopanax** at **English Wikipedia**, via Wikimedia Commons, released into Public Domain by its creator and owner. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Otago_Harbour_towards_Aramoana.jpg

Part 6: Family History in the Age of AI

(407) **Reimagining the Land of Scrogges: a Human-AI Collaboration.** AI-generated illustration created in collaboration with ChatGPT (OpenAI), based on prompts by the Author. This is an original AI-generated image created by the Author using ChatGPT, with full rights for publication.

(408) **Boston Public Library.** McKim Building Reading Room. *Boston Public Library McKim Building Reading Room.* Reading Room at McKim Building, Boston Public Library. Photo by **Ngok Ching Yuet Suet** (**Ncysea** on Wikimedia Commons), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Boston_Public_Library_McKim_Building_Reading_Room.jpg

(409) **Sketch of the Scruggs Coat of Arms**. From page 8 of *Scruggs Genealogy: with a Brief History of the Allied Families Briscoe, Dial, Dunklin, Leake and Price* (1912), compiled by **Ethel Hastings Dunklin Scruggs**. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the Internet Archive at https://archive.org/details/scruggsgenealogy00dunk/mode/2up

(410) **ChatGPT attempt at the Scruggs Coat of Arms**. AI-generated illustration created in collaboration with ChatGPT (OpenAI), based on prompts by the Author. This is an original AI-generated image created by the Author using ChatGPT, with full rights for publication.

(411) **Coat of Arms attributed to the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire (Modernized)**. Coat of arms of the Scrugges and Scroggs family of Bedfordshire, reconstructed by the Author from historical blazons in the Public Domain (see *The Visitations of Bedfordshire AD 1566, 1582, and 1634*, published 1884 by the Harleian Society, at pages 154 & 195). Modernized by the Author using ChatGPT (Open AI), including naturalistic color for the birds. Available under the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bedfordshire_Scruggs_Coat_of_Arms_-_jpeg.jpg

(412) **First Edition Ordnance Survey map (six-inch, 1840s-1880s), Peeblesshire, showing Hamildean Hill, Scrog Hope, and Scrog Dene**. Public Domain. Image courtesy of the National Library of Scotland, Ordnance Survey Maps, Six-Inch 1st edition, Scotland (1843-1882). Available at https://maps.nls.uk/os/6inch/

(413) **Once I Wandered Here.** *Beauty discovered by accident near Pyramid Lake in California, USA.* **Author & Photographer's note:** In late 2022, I took a long road trip out to the west coast of the USA. About an hour outside of Los Angeles, California, I took an unplanned detour near Pyramid Lake. I parked my car and wandered around on foot. I came across this scene of unexpected beauty and captured it as well as I could in the photograph. It is one of my favorite memories and favorite photographs. The rabbitbrush scrub blooming in yellow near the camera reminds me of the Gorse and other scrog species in this project. Photo by **Brandon Taylor Scroggs** (the Author), published under CC BY-SA 4.0. https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/deed.en

(414) **Truman & "The Buck Stops Here" Sign.** *Truman pass-the-buck.* **Uploader's notes:** Harry Truman poses for a photograph at the recreation of the Truman Oval Office at the Truman Library in 1959. Former US President Truman sits at a recreation of his Oval office at the Truman Library in 1959; the famous "The Buck Stops Here" sign sits on the desk in the foreground. Photo by **Uncredited Photographer**. Prepared by an officer or employee of the U.S. Federal Government as part of that person's official duties. Public Domain. Unrestricted use from the Truman Library, part of the NARA. Image courtesy of Wikimedia Commons: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Truman_pass-the-buck.jpg

(415) **Ancient Settlement by Wester Happrew**. *Ancient settlement near Wester Happrew – Geograph 1965011.* Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-

SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ancient_settlement_near_Wester_Happrew_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1965011.jpg

(416) **Scrog Hill near Dunstanburgh Castle.** *Scrog Hill – Geograph 924397*. Photo by **Chris Gunns**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scrog_Hill_-_geograph.org.uk_-_924397.jpg

(417) **Blooming Gorse at the head of Loch Etive.** (Argyll and Bute, western Scotland.) *Gorse at the head of Loch Etive – Geograph 3477433*. Photo by **Alan O'Dowd**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gorse_at_the_head_of_Loch_Etive_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3477433.jpg

(418) **Common Whitethroat.** *Sylvia communis male ENS des Olivettes 20190525*. Male Common whitethroat at the Natural Sensitive Area (ENS) Les Olivettes near Paris. Photo by **Marie-Lan Taÿ Pamart**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sylvia_communis_male_ENS_des_Olivettes_20190525.jpg

(419) **Hazelnuts and Blackberries on Pancakes.** Looking delicious with raspberries and chocolate. *Слатка_палачинка* – Слатка_палачинка. **Photographer's notes:** Decadent Choco Pancake with Hazelnuts, Blackberries, and Raspberries on a Green Plate – Dessert Delight. Photo by **Mihail Verbal**, via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:%D0%A1%D0%BB%D0%B0%D1%82%D0%BA%D0%B0_%D0%BF%D0%B0%D0%BB%D0%B0%D1%87%D0%B8%D0%BD%D0%BA%D0%B0.jpg

(420) **Lyne Water and the Land of Scrogges**. *Lyne Water – Geograph 6733105*. Photo by **Richard Webb**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6733105.jpg

(421) **Lynesmill Bridge**. *Lynesmill Bridge – Geograph 6006084*. Photo by **Les Hull**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lynesmill_Bridge_-_geograph.org.uk_-_6006084.jpg

(422) **Lyne Parish Church (Lyne Kirk)**. *Lyne Parish Church – Geograph 992341*. **Photographer's notes:** The east gable wall of this small country church on a mound overlooking the A72 and the Lyne Water. The current building dates back to 1888 but there have been earlier church buildings on this site. Photo by **Walter Baxter**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lyne_Parish_Church_-_geograph.org.uk_-_992341.jpg

(423) **DeLorean.** *DeLorean DMC-12*. **Photographer's notes:** Delorean DMC-12 with doors closed. Photographed by Kevin Abato www.grenexmedia.com. Photo by **Kevin Abato** (**Grenex** at **English Wikipedia**), via Wikimedia Commons, licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:DeLorean_DMC-12_(9979)_(cropped).jpg

(424) **Wind-blown Hawthorn Tree in Bloom.** *On Humphrey Head – Wind blown hawthorn tree – Geograph 3284223*. Photo by **Colin Park**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:On_Humphrey_Head_-_Wind_blown_hawthorn_tree_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3284223.jpg

(425) **Still Standing.** AI-generated illustration created in collaboration with ChatGPT (OpenAI), based on prompts by the Author. This is an original AI-generated image created by the Author using ChatGPT, with full rights for publication.

Part 7: Acknowledgements: Standing on the Shoulders of Giants

(426) **White Meldon from the South**. *White Meldon from the south – Geograph 7222424*. Photo by **Alan O'Dowd**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:White_Meldon_from_the_south_-_geograph.org.uk_-_7222424.jpg

(427) **Valley of the Lyne Water.** *Valley of the Lyne Water – Geograph 3290532*. Photo by **Jim Barton**, via Wikimedia Commons (Geograph Britain and Ireland), licensed under CC BY-SA 2.0. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Valley_of_the_Lyne_Water_-_geograph.org.uk_-_3290532.jpg

APPENDIX

First Charter, dated 1164-1774

Carta Simōis de Sc°ggis ad đđ data ·

85 Sciant tam p̄ſentes q^a^m futuri q ego dauid de Line dedi ⁊ cōceſſi ⁊ hac p̄ſenti carta mea confirmaui Simōi fil̄ Roƀi de Sc°ggas t̄ram de Sc°ggeſ ꝑ dimidia carucata t̄re ꝑ haſ diuiſas · ſcilicȝ a dintello de Weſterdeñ deſuꝑ Holmedun uſq; ad aq^a^m line ⁊ de ſurſo de Weſterden ent^a^uerſ uſq; ad ſurſū · dintelli de Gilmimenerdeñ ⁊ de ſurſo de Gilmimenerdeñ uſq; ad aquam line p̄t̄ boſcū de Gilmimenderdeñ q in manu mea teneo · Sȝ p̄dc̄s Simō ī p̄dc̄o boſco habebit aiſiam̄tū · scilicȝ ī paſtura ⁊ in t̄ra ſua edificanda · Tenendo s^ı^ ⁊ h̄edibȝ ſuis de me ⁊ de h̄edibȝ meis · lib̄e ⁊ q^ı^ete ⁊ honorifice Reddendo inde m^ı^ ⁊ h̄edibus meis ip̄e ⁊ h̄edeſ ſui annuatim · xij denar̄ · scilicȝ ad feſtū sc̄i martini · Predc̄s u° Simō ⁊ hoīes ſui venient ad molendinā meam · hoīes ſui dabunt multuram ⁊ dom^9^ p̄dc̄i Simōis quieta erit · hoīes Simōis venient ad opac̄ōm molendiñ · ip̄e v° lib̄ erit · Si foriffc̄m veniat ꝑ Simōem ⁊ [dabit] xij · đ · si blotwite · ij · s̄ · Si hoīeſ p̄dc̄i Simōis delinq^a^nt ⁊ Simō habebit foriffc̄m ego aū nichil habebo · Ꝑt̄ea Simō habebit aiſiamenta tocius feudi mei · Scilicȝ ī p^a^to ⁊ campo ⁊ in boſco ⁊ in plano · sepedc̄s enī Simō ibit mecū ſuꝑ [equum] ſuum ad forīſeca regis ſuicia facienda · Ego u° dum mecū ſit s^ı^ ⁊ equo ſuo om̄ia neceſſaria īueniam · Et si equuſ ſuus ī meo ſuicio moriatur ego illi aliū reddam · Et ſi contig̃it q ip̄e mecū ire nō pot̄it aliū in loco m^ı^ īueniet · Et ideo tam lib̄e hāc t̄ram de Sc°gges dedi q pat̄ ſuus vitam ſuam ꝑdidit ī meo ſuicio · Hiis teſtibȝ · decano de Stubhoc̄ ⁊ dauid fil̄ eiuſ · Simōe fr̄e Ep̄i · Norman beloc̄ ⁊ vc̄ting̃ fil̄ eius · Ric̄o diacoñ de pebliſ̄ ⁊ Henr̄ fr̄e eiuſ · ⁊ Edgar fil̄ Henr̄ · Roƀ Ꝺkide · Rađo fr̄e Roƀi ⁊ Wiłło cl̄ico ⁊ aliis multis ·

K

Second Charter, dated circa 1200

74 REGISTRUM REG. WIL.

De ꝑra de Scrogges ·

86 Sciant ꝑſentes ꝛ futᶜi q ego Roƀs de Line conceſſi ꝛ hac carta mea cõfirmaui Simõi fit Roƀi de Scrogges ꝑram de Scrogges ꝑ dimid carucata ꝑre ꝑ has diuiſas · s · a dintello de Weſtdene deſus homeldoñ uſq; ad aqᵉm de Line · ꝛ deſurſo de Wefterdeñ entᵉuers uſq; ad furſum dintelli Gilleminefdeñ · ꝛ deſurſo de Gilleminefdeñ uſq; ad aqᵉm de Line ꝑter boſcum de Gilleminefdeñ qd ī manu mea teneo · Sꝫ ꝑdcs Simon in ꝑdco Boſco habebit aiſiamentũ · Scilicꝫ in paſtura ꝛ in ꝑra ſua edificanda · Tenend sᵗ ꝛ hedibus ſuis de me ꝛ hedibus meis liƀe ꝛ quiete · plenarie ꝛ honorifice · et Ita liƀe ſicut carta dauid de Line patᵗs mei teſtatur · Reddendo inde mᵗ annuatim ꝛ hedibus meis ipe ꝛ hedes ſui duodecim denar ad feſtum sci martini · Prefatᵘ uᵒ Simon ꝛ hoes ſui venient ad molendinũ meum · Hoef ſui dabũt multuram · Domus ꝑdci Simõis quieta erit · hoes Simõis venient ad opacõm molendini · Ipe uᵒ Simon lib erit · Si foriffcm veniat ꝑ Simõem ⁊ dabit duodecim denar · Si blodwite ⁊ duoſ ſolid · Si uᵒ hoes ꝑnõinati Simõis delinqᵉnt ⁊ Simon habebit foriffcm ⁊ Ego nichil habebo · Ꝑtea Simon habebit aiſiamenta tocius feodi mei uidelicꝫ ī prato in campo in boſco ꝛ plano · Sepedcs ã ſimon ibit mecũ ſuꝑ equũ ſuũ ad forinſeca ſuicia regis facienda · Ego uᵒ dum mecũ fuit sᵗ ꝛ equo ſuo oĩa necᵉria iueniam · Et si equuſ ſuus ī ſuicio ſuo [meo] moriatur ⁊ ego illi aliũ reddam · Et si ita contigit q ipe mecũ ire nõ potuit aliũ ī loco ſuo mecũ iueniet · Et ideo tam liƀe hanc ꝑram de Scᵒgges ei conceſſi ⁊ qꝛ patꝰ ſuus in ſuicio ꝑris mei dauid de line vitam ſuam ꝑdidit · Hiis teſtibꝫ ⁊ Benedco capłano · Rico Capłano · magro Wiłło de line · Waldeuo ꝑſona · Rado de Grahᵉm · Walꝰo fit edgari · Henr de Laodoñ · malcolmo · petro clico · Pho de Euermele · Heruico fre Waldeui ꝑſone · Arkillo ꝑpõito · Roƀo fit Rici · Wiłło ſuiente ·

Third Charter, dated 1208-1216

Conf'macõ R · de t̃ra de Sc°ggeſ ·

87 Om̄ibꝫ amicis ſuis ⁊ hõibꝫ ⁊ om̄ibꝫ qui cartam iſtam uiderint uł audierint ⁊ Rob̄s de Line salut̃ · Sciant p̄ſentes ⁊ futuri me conceſſiſſe ⁊ hac carta mea cõfirmaſſe deo ⁊ eccłe Glaſg̃ ⁊ đno Walt̃o Ep̄o ⁊ succeſſoribꝫ ſuis inppetuū t̃rā de Sc°gges ꝑ dimidia carucata t̃re ꝑ has diuiſas scilicꝫ a dintello de Weſt̃dene deſurſum hameldun uſq; ad aquam Line · et deſurſum Weſt̃deñ ꝑ t^ar^nſu̅ſum uſq; ad ſurſum dintelli Gillemuneſdeñ · Et deſurſo Gillemuneſdeñ · uſq; ad aq^ar^m Line · p̄t̃ boſcum de Gillemuneſdeñ ⁊ q m' retinui · sꝫ Ep̄c̄ ⁊ hii q'bus ip̄e uł succeſſores ſui aſſignau̅int ⁊ habebūt aiſiamēta in p̄dc̄o boſco scił paſturam ⁊ mat̃iem ad edificia in t̃ra ſua facienda · Tenenđ īppetuū de me ⁊ h̄edibꝫ meis s' et hiis quibus ip̄e uł succeſſores ſui t̃ram illā aſſignau̅int ⁊ eorumđ h̄edibus · lib̄e · quiete · plenarie ⁊ honorifice · reddendo inde m' ⁊ h̄edibuſ meis annuatim duodecim denar̃ ad feſtū sc̄i Martini · Et hoīeſ in t̃ra illa manentes venient ad molendinū meū · domuſ ã Ep̄i uł eiuſ cui ip̄e t̃ram illam aſſignau̅it ⁊ quieta erit a multura · ſet hoīes ſui dabūt multuram · Et similit̃ ip̄i hoīes uenient ad opac̄om molendini · sꝫ ep̄c̄ uł iſ qui de illo t̃ram illam tenuerit ⁊ lib̄ erit · si foriff̄c̄m veniat ꝑ illum qui de ep̄o tenuerit ⁊ duodecim denar̃ dabit · si blodwite ⁊ duos soliđ · si hoīes in t̃ra illa manentes deliquerīt ⁊ ep̄c̄ uł iſ cui ip̄e aſſignau̅it ⁊ habebit foriff̄c̄m · Ego aũ nichil accipiam · Pt̃ea ep̄c̄ uł eiuſ aſſignat⁹ habebit aiſiamenta tocius feudi mei · scił in p^ar^to in campo · in boſco ⁊ in plano · Ille aũ qui de ep̄o t̃ram illam tenuerit ⁊ mecū ibit ſuꝑ equū ſuū ad forinſeca regis s̄uicia facienda · Et ego q^ar^mdiu mecū erit ⁊ ei ⁊ equo ſuo om̄ia nec^ar^ria īueniam · Et ſi equuſ ſuuſ ī s̄uicio meo mortuuſ fu̅it ⁊ ego ei alium reddam · Et si ille qui t̃ram illam tenuerit mecū ire nō potuerit ⁊ aliū m' loco ſuo īueniet · Et scienđ q Simon de Sc°gges qui t̃ram p̄dc̄am p'uſ de me tenuit ⁊ ip̄am t̃ram ꝑ conſenſū ⁊ conceſſionē meā đno Walt̃o ep̄o ad opus eccłe fue ⁊ ſuū ⁊ ſucceſſoꝝ ſuoꝝ vendidit ⁊ quietam clamauit · ⁊ cartas p̄ris mei ⁊ meam quas

Third Charter, dated 1208-1216 (page 2)

& Fourth Charter, dated 1218-1219 (page 1)

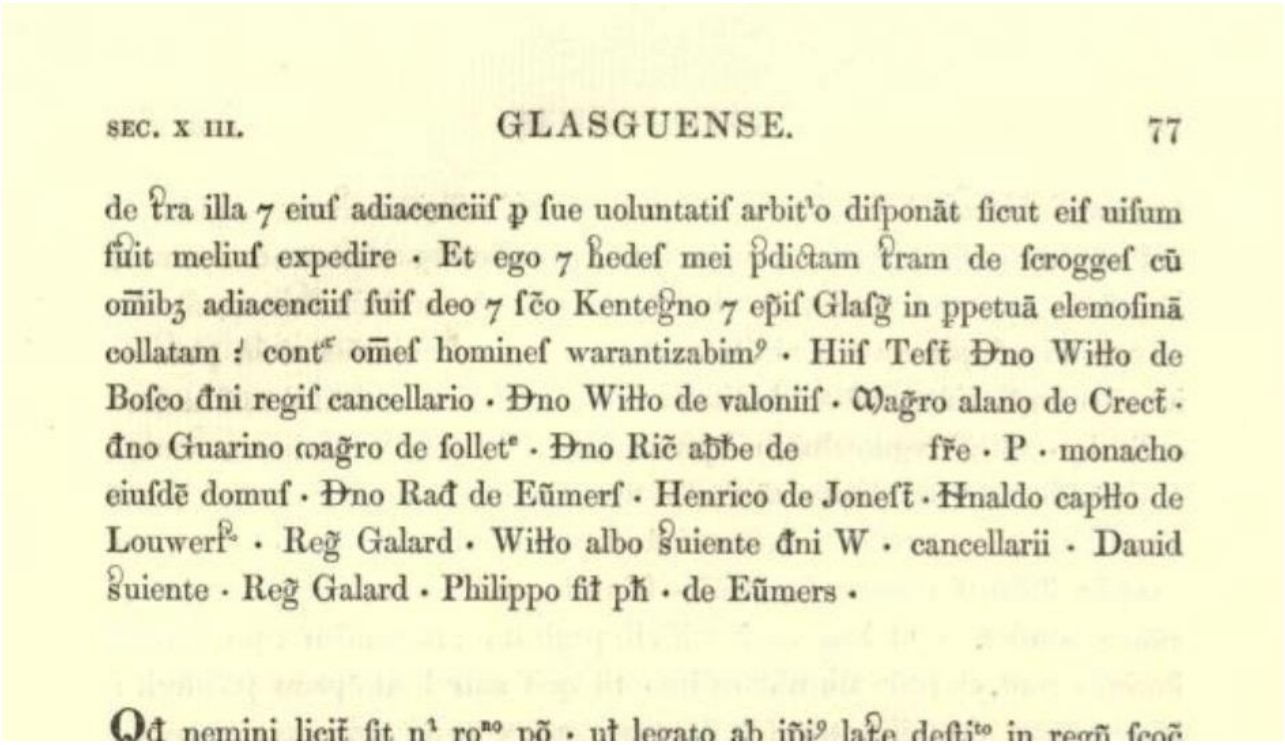
76 REGISTRUM REG. WIL.

inde habuit eidem ep̃o reddidit · Et ip̃e Simon ⁊ fr̃es ſui Wiłłs ⁊ Huc̃tinḡ ꝑ ſe ⁊ ꝑ om̄ibꝫ ħedibus ſuis p̃dc̃am t̃ram ⁊ totū ius q̧ in ea habuerūt uł habere potuerūt inꝑpetuū abiurau̅unt · Quare volo ut p̃dc̃s Epc̃ ⁊ eius succeſſores ⁊ eoꝝ aſſignati eoꝝq̧ ħedes p̃dc̃am t̃ram ꝑ p̃noĩatas diuiſas cū aiſiam̃tis p̃ſc'ptis ⁊ de me et ħedibus meis lib̃e ⁊ quiete · īꝑpetuū teneant ⁊ poſſideant · Hiis teſtibus · dn̄o Gwarino mag̃ro de Soltre · Pat'cio de Craneſt̃ · Waldeuo ꝑſona de Ketħ · Malcolmo fr̃e eiuſ · Ernaldo Capłłano de Locweruer · Rob̃o ⁊ Heruico capłłanis de Soltre · Waldeuo pugile · Auguſtino hoĩe meo · Wiłło de Sc°gges · Huc̃tinḡ ⁊ Simōe fr̃ibꝫ · Hugōe cl̃ico de Soletre · Joħe de Hunteđ · Mag̃ro Wiłło de Edenham · Rob̃o capłłano de Line · Adam capłło ep̃i · Wiłło de Anesł Seneſcałł Ep̃i · Rob̃o de Tindale cl̃ico ep̃i . Warino pinc̃na ep̃i · Rob̃o de Crag̃ · Hug̃ Conoc̃ · Galfrido hoſtiar̃ ep̃i · Wiłło de Walepoł · Heruico panetar̃ ep̃i · Gilb̃to de Arches · Adam mareſcałł Ep̃i · Wiłło Staggarđ · Huc̃tinḡ de morauia · Hamone coco · Hudardo · Wiłło de Tindał · Ric̃o tuſchard · Elẏa · Joħe · et multis aliis ·

De terra de Scrogges ·

88 Om̄ibuſ ſc̃e matriſ eccłie filiiſ haſ literaſ uiſuriſ uł audit²iſ Rob̃ de Line filiuſ đđ de Line 7 hereſ legitimuſ Sałt · Nou̅it uniu̅ſitaſ ur̃a me intuitu đi dediſſe conceſſiſſe 7 hac carta mea confirmaſſe in purā 7 ꝑpetuā elemoſinā 7 lib̃am 7 quietam ab om̄i exaccione ſeculari · deo 7 eccłie Glaſḡ 7 ep̃iſ ei⁹dē eccłie quicquid iuriſ habui in terra de ſcroggeſ 7 eiuſ adiacenciiſ · cū omnimoda lib̃tate 7 omnim°iſ aiſiamentiſ nomīatiſ in carta đđ . de Line patriſ mei 7 mea · ſimoni de Scroggeſ aliq^ndo collatiſ · Tenenđ s' in ꝑpetuū lib̃e 7 quiete ſine om̄i exaccione ſeculari · ita qđ ego 7 ħedeſ mei ꝑ p̃dicta terra de om̄ibꝫ ſuiciiſ 7 conſuetudinibꝫ 7 exaccionibꝫ ſecularibꝫ 7 om̄ibꝫ forinceſis đno regi reſpondebim⁹ · Et ep̃i Glaſḡ et eoꝝ homineſ t̃ram illam tenenteſ

Fourth Charter, dated 1218-1219 (page 2)



SEC. X III. GLASGUENSE. 77

de t̃ra illa 7 eiuſ adiacenciiſ ꝑ ſue uoluntatiſ arbit'o diſponāt ſicut eiſ uiſum fuit meliuſ expedire · Et ego 7 h̃edeſ mei p̃dictam t̃ram de ſcroggeſ cū om̄ibꝫ adiacenciiſ ſuiſ deo 7 ſc̃o Kentegno 7 ep̃iſ Glaſg̃ in ꝑpetuā elemoſinā collatam ⁝ cont^ꝫ om̄eſ homineſ warantizabim⁹ · Hiiſ Teſt̃ Đno Wiłło de Boſco đni regiſ cancellario · Đno Wiłło de valoniiſ · Mag̃ro alano de Crect̃ · đno Guarino mag̃ro de ſollet^e · Đno Ric̃ ab̃b̃e de fr̃e · P · monacho eiuſdē domuſ · Đno Rađ de Eũmerſ · Henrico de Joneſt̃ · Hnaldo capłło de Louwerſ · Reg̃ Galard · Wiłło albo ſuiente đni W · cancellarii · Dauid ſuiente · Reg̃ Galard · Philippo fił ph̃ · de Eũmers ·

Qđ nemini licit̃ ſit n' ro^no pō · uł legato ab iñi⁹ lat̃e deſti^to in regñ ſcoc̃

GPS COORDINATES FOR SCROG PLACE NAMES

To anyone who ventures this deep, I salute you!

Barrow Scrogs (near Alwinton and Linbriggs in Northumberland, England; near the Scottish border)

- Barrow Scrogs (by the Valley of River Coquet): 55°20'59.36"N 2°09'05.19"W

Castle (Hill) Scrogs (near Langholm in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland)

- Castle Hill: 55°09'58.70"N 3°00'16.15"W
- **Castle (Hill) Scrogs**: 55°09'58.86"N 2°59'58.22"W

Daisy Hill & East Scrogs Local Nature Reserve – NOT PICTURED (near Sacriston in County Durham, England)

- **Daisy Hill** Local Nature Reserve (LNR): 54°49'53.50"N 1°36'43.59"W
  - Woodland Trust manages Daisy Hill LNR: https://www.woodlandtrust.org.uk/visiting-woods/woods/daisy-hill-lnr/
- **East Scrogs** (approximate): 54°49'58.12"N 1°36'27.97"W
  - Sign for Daisy Hill & East Scroggs LNR: https://www.flickr.com/photos/17328521@N00/7416611396

The Land of Scrogges (near Lyne and Peebles in the Scottish Borders council area, Scotland)

- Black Meldon (east peak): 55°40'10.38"N 3°15'49.32"W
- Crailzie Hill (peak nearest Land of Scrogges): 55°41'29.59"N 3°17'12.01"W
- **Hagging Hope** (approximate beginning): 55°40'19.91"N 3°17'42.33"W
- Hamildean Hill: 55°39'52.01"N 3°17'38.27"W
- Former Site of **House of Scroggs** (approximate): 55°39'56.47"N 3°18'02.96"W
- Harehope Hill at Harehope Rings (hillfort): 55°41'16.52"N 3°16'48.22"W
- Hogg Hill: 55°40'01.67"N 3°19'51.04"W
- **How Burn** (about 200-300 m before it flows into the Lyne Water): 55°40'10.91"N 3°18'39.06"W
- Larch Square: 55°39'54.04"N 3°18'47.64"W
- Lyne Kirk: 55°39'05.36"N 3°17'09.32"W
- Lyne Roman Fort (center): 55°39'06.16"N 3°17'32.70"W
- Lynesmill Bridge: 55°38'52.74"N 3°15'28.97"W
- Lynesmill Ruins (approximate): 55°38'47.75"N 3°15'31.27"W
- Pinkie's Hole (NOT PICTURED): 55°38'47.72"N 3°16'15.99"W
  - Unknown origin, possibly an old Roman quarry; dubious legends suggesting Druid sacrifices
  - Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/image/2961338 and https://www.trove.scot/place/51297

- **Scrog Dene** (around midpoint): 55°39'40.54"N 3°18'03.18"W
- **Scrog Hope** (approximate beginning): 55°40'04.38"N 3°17'41.86"W
- **Scrogs Field** (near center): 55°39'44.88"N 3°18'26.63"W
- **Sheep track** (northeast boundary, near center point): 55°40'10.54"N 3°17'29.47"W
- Sheriff Muir (near center): 55°38'54.71"N 3°16'09.09"W
    - Cairn Remains (NOT PICTURED): 55°38'56.64"N 3°16'13.24"W
        - Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/51545
    - Standing Stones (approximate): 55°38'50.91"N 3°16'16.17"W
- Spruce Funnel: 55°39'59.09"N 3°18'13.71"W
- Stevenson Hill (ridge towards southern side): 55°40'28.67"N 3°18'33.48"W
- Tor Hillfort: 55°39'16.24"N 3°18'44.55"W
- Torbank Hill: 55°38'52.00"N 3°18'26.99"W
- Wester Happrew (ancient settlement remains); 55°39'55.72"N 3°19'25.32"W
- Wester Happrew (farm settlement): 55°39'44.98"N 3°19'11.74"W
- White Meldon (peak): 55°40'22.07"N 3°14'34.07"W
- Wide Hope Shank (northeast peak): 55°41'21.69"N 3°17'48.61"W
- Wide Hope Shank (southwest peak): 55°41'06.17"N 3°17'56.73"W

Long Tongue Scrog Lane (Kirkheaton in West Yorkshire, England)

- **Sign** (at the **west end** of Long Tongue Scrog Lane, fork: Lane Side Lane): 53°39'04.59"N 1°43'01.76"W
- Footpath off of Long Tongue Scrog Lane: 53°39'01.18"N 1°42'47.11"W
- South Royd House (Ruins): 53°38'57.22"N 1°42'32.96"W
- **Deep in the Scrogs**, on the cobbled footpath section between South Royd and the paved street section that runs past Royd Farmhouse (approximate): 53°38'58.96"N 1°42'25.97"W
- **Royd Farmhouse**: 53°38'56.52"N 1°42'14.98"W
- **Maple Farm** (house): 53°38'58.25"N 1°42'12.41"W
- East end of Long Tongue Scrog Lane (at Healey Green Lane): 53°38'54.60"N 1°42'04.36"W

Nut Wood & Wauldby Scrogs (near Raywell in the East Riding of Yorkshire, England)

- Car Park: 53°45'43.71"N 0°29'48.75"W
- Entrance Sign: 53°45'43.04"N 0°29'48.91"W
- Northeast Entrance (near where Nut Wood & Constantine Wood collide): 53°45'41.77"N 0°29'54.48"W
- **Constantine Wood**: 53°45'40.03"N 0°29'51.00"W
- **Nut Wood**: 53°45'36.08"N 0°30'06.56"W

- Bluebells & Wild Garlic (approximate): 53°45'34.34"N 0°30'03.95"W
- Hazel & Ash: 53°45'33.27"N 0°30'20.11"W
- **Wauldby Scrogs**: 53°45'29.60"N 0°30'27.34"W
- Tree Arch over bridleway path: 53°45'28.51"N 0°30'41.00"W
- Braffords Farm: 53°45'39.50"N 0°30'53.51"W
- Braffords Clump: 53°45'37.73"N 0°31'17.25"W

Scrogend (later Houndwood) – NOT PICTURED (near Coldingham, Scottish Borders, Scotland)

- Houndwood (formerly **Scrogend**), an 18th century house: 55°51'55.69"N 2°14'48.19"W
  - Trove.Scot: https://www.trove.scot/place/231224 and https://www.trove.scot/designation/LB46636

Scrogs of Drumruck (near Gatehouse of Fleet in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland)

- Drumruck Farm: 54°56'51.99"N 4°13'13.45"W
- Rig (Ridge) of Drumruck (near its highest point & the scrogs): 54°56'10.45"N 4°13'44.06"W
- **Scrogs of Drumruck**: 54°56'21.45"N 4°13'15.22"W
- Little Water of Fleet (at a nearby point): 54°56'11.51"N 4°12'54.50"W

Scroggs Bridge – NOT PICTURED (near **Lockerbie** in Dumfries and Galloway, Scotland)

- **Scroggs Bridge** (over the **Water of Milk**): 55°07'03.73"N 3°18'48.73"W
- **Scroggs Cleuch (*exception: pictured*)** (north of the Bridge): 55°07'10.47"N 3°18'56.63"W
  - A "cleuch" is a hillside gully, ravine, or gorge that contains a burn (stream)
  - Scroggs Cleuch had a landslide in Dec 2006: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/279375609_Initial_report_on_the_Scroggs_Cleuch_landslide_Lockerbie_December_2006
- **Scroggs Bank** (west of the Bridge): 55°07'06.03"N 3°19'02.63"W
- Former site of **Scroggs Mill** (east of the Bridge): 55°07'05.68"N 3°18'45.33"W
- **Scroggs** (Farm / Settlement, south of the Bridge): 55°07'00.60"N 3°18'52.51"W

Scroggs Bridge (near **Staveley** in Cumbria, England)

- **Scroggs Bridge** (over the **River Kent**): 54°23'15.96"N 2°49'19.72"W
- Field North of Scroggs Bridge: 54°23'25.48"N 2°49'28.65"W (near Elfhowe cottages, lower Elfhowe area)

Scroggs Farm (near **Staveley** in Cumbria, England)

- **Scroggs Farm** (Staveley): 54°23'12.17"N 2°49'04.56"W
- Sheep pasture for Scroggs Farm: 54°23'13.32"N 2°49'09.00"W
- South Gate for Scroggs Farm: 54°23'05.61"N 2°48'59.98"W
- Listed separately: Scroggs Wood (with Elf Howe) & Scroggs Lane (with Scroggs Close & Scroggs Fold)

Scroggs Farm (near **Hunton** in North Yorkshire, England)

- **Scroggs Farm** (Hunton): 54°19'28.60"N 1°43'30.76"W
- **Low Scroggs House** & Outbuilding (NOT PICTURED – near **Great Crakehall**): 54°17'44.80"N 1°37'46.31"W

Scrogg House Farm (near **Sedbergh** in the Yorkshire Dales of England – within the historic boundaries of the West Riding of Yorkshire, also within ceremonial county of Cumbria)

- **Scrogg House Farm** (**Sedbergh**): 54°19'31.80"N 2°30'01.93"W
- The Crook in the Howgills (great view of Rawthey Valley): 54°20'11.03"N 2°30'57.60"W
- Roadside view of the Howgills (and Scrogg House Farm – barely): 54°18'57.38"N 2°28'17.09"W
- The current owners have written of the farm's long history on their website. Scrog House appeared on maps as early as 1568. They attribute the farm's name to scrub land or scrub-covered water meadows that bordered the property in early days: https://scrogghouse.farm/home/a-little-history/
- This Scrogg House Farm offers a charming cottage as an accommodation for rental guests: https://scrogghouse.farm/accommodations/
- Not to be confused with similarly named Scrogg House Farm near Scrog Wood in the Hutton Hang / Constable Burton area of North Yorkshire, which is also called the JEBairstow Esq. Scrogg House Farm (*see* Scrog Wood)

Scrog Hill (near Stuartfield in Aberdeenshire, Scotland)

- **Scrog Hill** (**Aberdeenshire**): 57°30'13.11"N 2°04'21.68"W
- Start of Farm Road from B9030 to Dens of Crichie: 57°29'34.96"N 2°03'43.63"W

Scrog Hill (near **Dunstanburgh Castle** and Craster in Northumberland, England)

- **Scrog Hill**: 55°29'14.06"N 1°36'01.56"W
- Cushat Knock: 55°29'10.97"N 1°35'44.59"W
- Dunstanburgh Castle: 55°29'22.56"N 1°35'41.61"W

Scrog Hill (near Brotherlee and **Stanhope** in County Durham, England)

- Camera location for photo of Scrog Hill (Stanhope): 54°43'56.10"N 2°06'30.09"W
- Western Hopeburn Farm visible in photo: 54°44'09.61"N 2°06'10.11"W

Scroggs Hill (near Dunedin and Brighton, **New Zealand**)

- **Scroggs Hill** (peak): 45°55'00.99"S 170°18'43.89"E
- **Suburb** of **Scroggs Hill**: 45°54'52.78"S 170°19'32.34"E
- **Scroggs Hill Road** (at a point near Brighton): 45°56'19.47"S 170°19'37.89"E
- Saddle Hill (the "seat", eastern peak: 473 m): 45°54'37.70"S 170°21'22.86"E
- Saddle Hill (the "saddle horn" aka Jaffray's Hill, western peak: 431 m): 45°54'46.12"S 170°20'48.42"E
    - Western peak damaged by quarrying, limited after court ruling in favor of Dunedin City Council

Scroggs Lane (near **Staveley** in Cumbria, England)

- **Scroggs Lane**: footpath/bridleway – at a point about 100 m northeast of Scroggs Bridge, near the west edge of Scroggs Wood, and northwest of Scroggs Farm by 300 m: 54°23'18.89"N 2°49'16.79"W
    - Photo (example): https://www.flickr.com/photos/a-s_jyelra/33263713235
- **Scroggs Close:** 54°22'45.61"N 2°49'04.01"W
- **Scroggs Fold:** 54°22'47.14"N 2°49'04.63"W
- St. James Church: 54°22'48.41"N 2°49'06.38"W

Scroggs Lane – NOT PICTURED (near **Castle Bolton** in **North Yorkshire**, England)

- **Scroggs Lane**, near the midpoint of the lane: 54°19'08.50"N 1°56'53.16"W
    - Photo: https://www.flickr.com/photos/sisterseagull/36950521495
    - A short rural lane (around 500 feet / 155 meters in length) that descends south/southwest the village of Castle Bolton from a fork in the road with Castle End and Scallow Bank Lane.
    - The lane remains notably lined with scrubby/scroggy vegetation, consistent with northern English and Scots "scrogs" meaning rough scrub, thorny brush, or coppice growth.

Scroggs Lane (part of B6268) – NOT PICTURED (rural road in **North Yorkshire**, England)

- **Scroggs Lane (B6268)**, point in parish of Snape with Thorp: 54°15'05.54"N 1°38'02.49"W
    - The B6268 is a secondary "B road" that links the A6108 area near Low Burton / Masham country with villages westward toward Snape and Bedale district roads.
    - A stretch of about 3-5 miles (5-8 km) of the B6268 bears the name "Scroggs Lane."
    - The "Scroggs Lane" portion of the B6268 seems to refer to the stretch around Thornton Watlass and Snape.
    - The road runs through classic Yorkshire agricultural countryside: hedgerows, scattered woodland, grazing fields, and small plantations.

Scrog Wood (near **Constable Burton / Hutton Hang** in North Yorkshire, England)

- Hedged Fields: 54°18'01.79"N 1°45'09.81"W
- **Scrog Wood**: 54°18'06.96"N 1°45'04.80"W
- **Scrogg House Farm**: 54°18'11.18"N 1°45'12.52"W
    - Also called the **J.E.Bairstow Esq, Scrogg House Farm**, Constable Burton, Leyburn DL8 5RL, UK, a working farm amidst the stunning landscapes of Yorkshire, beloved by both locals and tourists. *See* https://www.yorkshire.com/constable-burton/community/farms/jebairstow-esq-scrogg-house-farm
    - Not to be confused with the similarly named Scrogg House Farm near Sedbergh in Cumbria, England

Scrogs Wood (near **Sand Hutton** and Upper Helmsley in North Yorkshire, England)

- Track to **Scrogs Bottoms** (north end): 54°00'44.90"N 0°56'38.29"W
- **Scrogs Bottoms** (northwest side of Upper Helmsley Road): 54°00'42.09"N 0°56'43.79"W
- **Scrogs Wood** (east side of Upper Helmsley Road): 54°00'33.04"N 0°56'36.85"W
- **Scrogs Wood** (north of St. Peter's Church in Upper Helmsley): 54°00'33.04"N 0°56'36.85"W
- **Scrogs Wood** (northeast of St. Peter's Church in Upper Helmsley): 54°00'25.47"N 0°56'13.83"W

Scroggs Wood (near **Staveley** in Cumbria, England)

- Elf Howe (approximate peak): 54°23'21.11"N 2°49'05.96"W
- **Scroggs Wood (eastern lobe):** 54°23'22.62"N 2°48'53.42"W
- **Scroggs Wood (western lobe):** 54°23'18.36"N 2°49'11.25"W

Scroggs Wood & Scroggs Lane (**Helsington**, south of **Kendal** in Cumbria, England)

- **Scroggs Wood** & **Scroggs Lane** (west end): 54°18'35.19"N 2°45'24.52"W
- Hinge of the "L" at Scroggs Wood: 54°18'31.45"N 2°45'04.75"W
- **Scroggs Wood** (**riparian** edge, River Kent): 54°18'41.58"N 2°44'52.38"W
- **Scroggs Weir**: 54°18'29.04"N 2°44'59.31"W

Scroggs Wood (near **Burnley** in **Lancashire**, England)

- **Scroggs Wood** (near **Burnley**, **Lancashire**): 53°48'07.38"N 2°12'43.39"W
- South end of Scroggs Wood (Goit / Groit Wood on some maps): 53°47'57.62"N 2°12'49.80"W
- Netherwood (overlaps with Goit / Groit Wood on some maps): 53°47'50.72"N 2°13'01.23"W
- Netherwood Pond: 53°47'49.01"N 2°13'03.10"W
- Netherwood Farm: 53°47'57.58"N 2°12'33.89"W
- Cockden Bridge (over the River Don): 53°48'20.74"N 2°11'21.38"W

The Scrog(g) (near Castleside in County Durham, England)

- **The Scrogg (west side):** 54°49'36.80"N 1°55'15.33"W
- **The Scrogg (east side):** 54°49'38.40"N 1°55'05.96"W
- Birkhott Waterfall on Hisehope Burn (approximate): 54°49'13.69"N 1°56'33.82"W
- Ruins of West Goldhill: 54°49'23.30"N 1°55'14.77"W
- Goldhill Farm (east): 54°49'21.36"N 1°55'05.92"W
- Healeyfield Farm: 54°49'41.78"N 1°53'34.88"W
- Hisehope Bridge over Hisehope Burn: 54°49'51.30"N 1°55'33.76"W
- South Horsleyhope Burn (near photo locations): 54°49'24.50"N 1°54'03.40"W

<u>The Scroggs / New Scroggs SSSI – NOT PICTURED</u> (**Keepershield Quarry Site** in Northumberland, England)

- This "Scrog" site survives not as scrubby woodland, but as a **rescued botanical island inside an industrial quarry landscape**.
- Originally, "The Scroggs" was a Whin sill and limestone grassland bordering some woodland edges within an agricultural area. **Shining lady's mantle (*Alchemilla micans*)** occurring within the Scroggs **SSSI (Site of Special Scientific Interest)** is rare and only found at three locations in the UK.
- Industrial activity by a quarry expansion destroyed **"The Scroggs SSI" original site** in 1999.
- Fortunately, the site industrial owners (**Hanson Aggregates**, later acquired by German multinational corporation **Heidelberg Materials** in 2007) moved the vegetation and soil from The Scroggs SSI to a nearby (roughly adjacent) site that was since included in the SSSI boundary within **Keepershield Quarry**.
- A **"New Scroggs SSSI"** was established adjacent to the original site. The Whin sill and limestone grassland comprising the original Scroggs SSSI was relocated to an area of restored quarry in 1999. Over 100 hundred plants of **Shining lady's mantle (*Alchemilla micans*)** and some other species were moved as potted plants as part of the transfer of the Scroggs SSSI. Key transplanted plant species:
    - **Shining lady's mantle (*Alchemilla micans*):** designated endangered, locally scarce – successfully transplanted from the original Scroggs SSSI to the New Scroggs SSSI at Keepershield Quarry; estimated to be about 2,500 plants in 2016
    - **Knotted Clover (*Trifolium striatum*):** designated locally scarce – successfully transplanted from the original Scroggs SSSI to the New Scroggs SSSI at Keepershield Quarry
    - **Long-stalked Crane's-bill (*Geranium columbinum*):** designated locally scarce; transplanted from the original Scroggs SSSI to the New Scroggs SSSI; estimated at 20+ plants in 2007
    - **Annual Knawel (*Scleranthus annuus*):** designated endangered, locally scarce – possibly lost due to quarrying, *circa* 1999
    - **Northern Hawk's-beard (*Crepis mollis*):** designated vulnerable, locally scarce – was on a bank near the road near The Scroggs in 1995, possibly extinct in Northumberland now
- **Natural England** issued their intent to designate the transferred grassland as The New Scroggs SSSI in December 2010. This proposed SSSI (pSSSI) later became a full SSSI designation. The transplanted species continue to thrive in the New Scroggs SSSI, one of the reasons for designation of the new SSSI.
    - "Keepershield Quarry Site: Site Biodiversity Action Plan" (2013) by Hanson Heidelberg Cement Group, "Site Information - Keepershield" on page 1, "Site Layout" map on page 2, available at https://www.heidelbergmaterials.co.uk/sites/default/files/assets/document/bap-keepershield.pdf
    - *Northumbrian Naturalist: Transactions*, Vol. 90 (2021), by Natural History Society of Northumbria (www.nhsn.org.uk), at pages 24, 28, 30, 38, 50, 70, available at https://www.nhsn.org.uk/wp-content/uploads/2025/07/2893-NHSN-Northumbrian-Naturalist-Vol-90.pdf
- **New Scroggs (SSSI)** (at a point in the southwest of the transfer area): 55°02'56.72"N 2°10'16.12"W
    - Roughly 1-2 miles (2-3 km) northwest of the village of **Chollerford** in Northumberland, England
- Keeper Shield Quarry: 55°02'50.85"N 2°10'01.46"W
- Coatings Plant: 55°02'57.67"N 2°10'03.54"W

The Scrogs – NOT PICTURED (**Corbridge** in Northumberland, England)

- **The Scrogs** (**Corbridge**, ~1 acre wooded area, 40 m south of rail tracks): 54°57'56.27"N 2°01'08.93"W
    - Small remnant woodland patch surrounded by farmland to the south and railroad tracks, urban area to the north. Survival by inconvenience: the railway protected the northern edge while awkward field boundaries preserved the southern edge. Place-name for this surviving local woodland-edge has been preserved through local usage and Geograph documentation, but largely absent from formal modern mapping.
    - Ash trees (*Fraxinus excelsior*) appear dominant, probably with some Sycamore. Some of the slimmer stems could be Silver or Downy Birch. Hawthorn might be present at the edges.
    - Photo of footpath through The Scrog (Corbridge): https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Footpath_through_The_Scrogs_-_geograph.org.uk_-_1762650.jpg
    - Photo of farmland bordering The Scrog (Corbridge): https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Farmland_near_The_Scrogs_(2)_-_geograph.org.uk_-_2124137.jpg (taken about 400 m south of The Scrogs, looking north; treetops of the Scrogs appear in center of pic past the fields)
- Corbridge Station (north side of the rail tracks): 54°57'58.68"N 2°01'06.88"W

The "Lost" Footnotes

Due to a technical issue, several of the footnotes did not display properly in the main text. I have included these "lost" footnotes here.

Footnote 46 (page 14):

"Plantwatch: 'When gorse is out of bloom, kissing is out of season'" (2013) by Paul Simons on The Guardian, available at https://www.theguardian.com/science/2013/feb/22/plantwatch-spring-gorse-flowers

Footnote 202 (page 62):

"7.4 Routeways: Rivers and Roads" on ScARF (Scottish Archaeological Research Framework), available at https://scarf.scot/regional/sesarf/7-roman/7-4-routeways-rivers-and-roads/

Footnote 221 (page 70):

"Battle of Inab" on Wikipedia: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Inab

Footnote 222 (page 70):

"A Timeline of the Crusades" (2024) by MagellanTV, available at https://www.magellantv.com/articles/a-timeline-of-the-crusades

Footnote 223 (page 70):

"A Crusader's Mom" (2023) by Andrew Holt, Ph.D. (professor of history), available at https://apholt.com/2023/08/26/a-crusaders-mom/ (citing *Arab Historians of the Crusades* (1969) by Francesco Gabrieli).

Footnote 224 (page 70):

"'Treachery in the Remotest Territories of Scotland': Northern Resistance to the Canmore Dynasty, 1130-1230" (1999) by R. Andrew McDonald (University of College Cape Breton), in the *Canadian Journal of History*, Vol. 33, pages 161-192 (August 1999), posted by Sandra Alvarez in 2014 on De Re Militari: The Society for Medieval Military History, available at https://deremilitari.org/2014/06/treachery-in-the-remotest-territories-of-scotland-northern-resistance-to-the-canmore-dynasty-1130-1230/

Footnote 225 (page 70):

"The failure that led to the most chastening treaty in Scottish history" (2024) by Hamish MacPherson in The National, available at https://www.thenational.scot/culture/24450326.failure-led-chastening-treaty-scottish-history/

Footnote 226 (page 70):

"The Shaping of the Anglo-Scots Border: Tribes, Swords and Kings" (2025) by Genscu (Website Manager and Accomplice) on Discover Scottish Borders with Mark Nicol, available at https://discoverscottishborders.com/the-shaping-of-the-anglo-scots-border-tribes-swords-and-kings/

Footnote 229 (page 72):

"Use of Social Network Analysis to Explore the People of Medieval Scotland" (2014) by Cornell Jackson and Matthew Hammond, in the *Proceedings of the Digital Humanities Congress 2014*, edited by Clare Mills, Michael Pidd, and Jessica Williams, available at https://www.dhi.ac.uk/books/dhc2014/medieval-scotland/

ISBN (Hardcover): 979-8-234-12015-1

Internet Archive electronic edition: No ISBN Assigned